

GRAMMATICA LATINA
IN *Z. & L.*
USUM SCHOLARUM
ADORNATA. 8

Grammatices Lilianæ verbis, (quantum fieri licuit) retentis; multis ejus erroribus emendatis: minùs-necessariis amputatis; pluribus, quæ deficerent, suppletis; & omnibus Methodo faciliori ad tenellæ ætatis captum conformatâ dispositis.

Operâ & Studio CAROLI HOOLE, A.M. è C.L. Oxon. Scholarchæ olim Rotherhamiensis in agro Ebor. jam verò privatæ Scholæ Grammaticæ Institutoris in ædibus Arundellianis *Lothburiensibus* (officinâ olim quadrantaria) haud procul à Byrsa Regali, apud Londinates.

Adjecta est insuper (nè quid huic instituto desit) in juventutis gratiam, in adversâ paginâ, Anglicana interpretatio.

Editio secunda priori emendatior.

FRANC. PATRI.

Grammatica est omnium Disciplinarum Fundamentum.



LONDINI,

Typis Guil. Du-Gard; venciuntque apud Joannem Saywell
ad insigne Canis Leporarii in Parva
Britannia. Anno Dom. 1653.

11

623.a.12

THE GREAT
THE USE OF
THE USE OF
THE USE OF



THE
GRAMMAR
FITTED FOR
THE USE OF SCHOOLS.

Wherein the words of *Lilie's GRAMMAR*
are (as much as might bee) reteined;
many errors thereof amended; many
needless things left out: many necessaries,
that were wanting, supplied; and all things
ordered in a Method more agreeable to
Lilie's Children's Capacities.

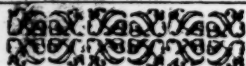
By *Charles Hoole*, Mr of Arts, of Lincoln-Col-
lege in *Oxford*, sometimes Schoolmaster of *Rotherham* in
Tork-shire; and now Teacher of a Private Grammar-
School in *Arundel* hous (heretofore the Token-
hous) in *Lothburie*, not far from the Royal
Exchange, *LONDON*.

And (that nothing might bee wanting to the purpose)
the English Translation is set down on the contrarie
page for the benefit of Yong-learners.

The second Edition corrected.

FRANC. PATRI.

Grammar is the Foundation of all Disciplines.



LONDON,

Printed by *William Du-Gard*; and are to bee sold by
John Saywell at the Sign of the Grey-hound in
Little Britain. *An. Dom. 1653.*

GRAMMATICA LATINA
IN 2.86
USUM SCHOLARUM
ADORNATA. 8

Grammatices Lilianæ verbis, (quantum fieri licuit) retentis; multis ejus erroribus emendatis: minùs-necessariis amputatis; pluribus, quæ deficerent, suppletis; & omnibus Methodo faciliiori ad tenellæ ætatis caput conformatâ dispositis.

Operâ & Studio CAROLI HOOLE, A.M. è C.L. Oxon. Scholarchæ olim Rotherhamiensis in agro Ebor. jam verò privatæ Scholæ Grammaticæ Institutoris in ædibus Arundellianis *Lothburiensibus* (officinâ olim quadrantaria) haud procul à Byrsa Regali, apud Londinates.

Adjecta est insuper (nè quid huic instituto desit) in juventutis gratiam, in adversâ paginâ, Anglicana interpretatio.

Editio secunda priori emendatior.

FRANC. PATRI.

Grammatica est omnium Disciplinarum Fundamentum.



LONDINI,

Typis Guil. Du-Gard; venciuntque apud Joannem Saywell
ad insigne Canis Leporarii in Parva
Eritannia. Anno Dom. 1653.

11/1



Dr Saunderson's Approbation of this
GRAMMAR.

I Have perused this present work, which which, Auto
to the great Commendation, hath been with
much care and judgement, that I cannot but warmly w
approve of it, as being both short and order, and clearest a
plainest for the use both of Masters and Scholars, and
with the least variation from the Common
GRAMMAR, of any Book that I have seen published
in this kind.

Robert Saunderson

Ita testor Edwardus Silus Silveste

Imprimatur

Dec. 18. 1648.

Jo. JONANOT

A 4 A 4

THE [illegible] [illegible]

[illegible] [illegible]

[illegible] [illegible]

[illegible] [illegible]

[illegible] [illegible]

[illegible] [illegible]

[illegible] [illegible]

[illegible] [illegible]

[illegible] [illegible]

[illegible] [illegible]

[illegible] [illegible]

[illegible] [illegible]

[illegible] [illegible]

[illegible] [illegible]

[illegible] [illegible]

[illegible] [illegible]

[illegible] [illegible]

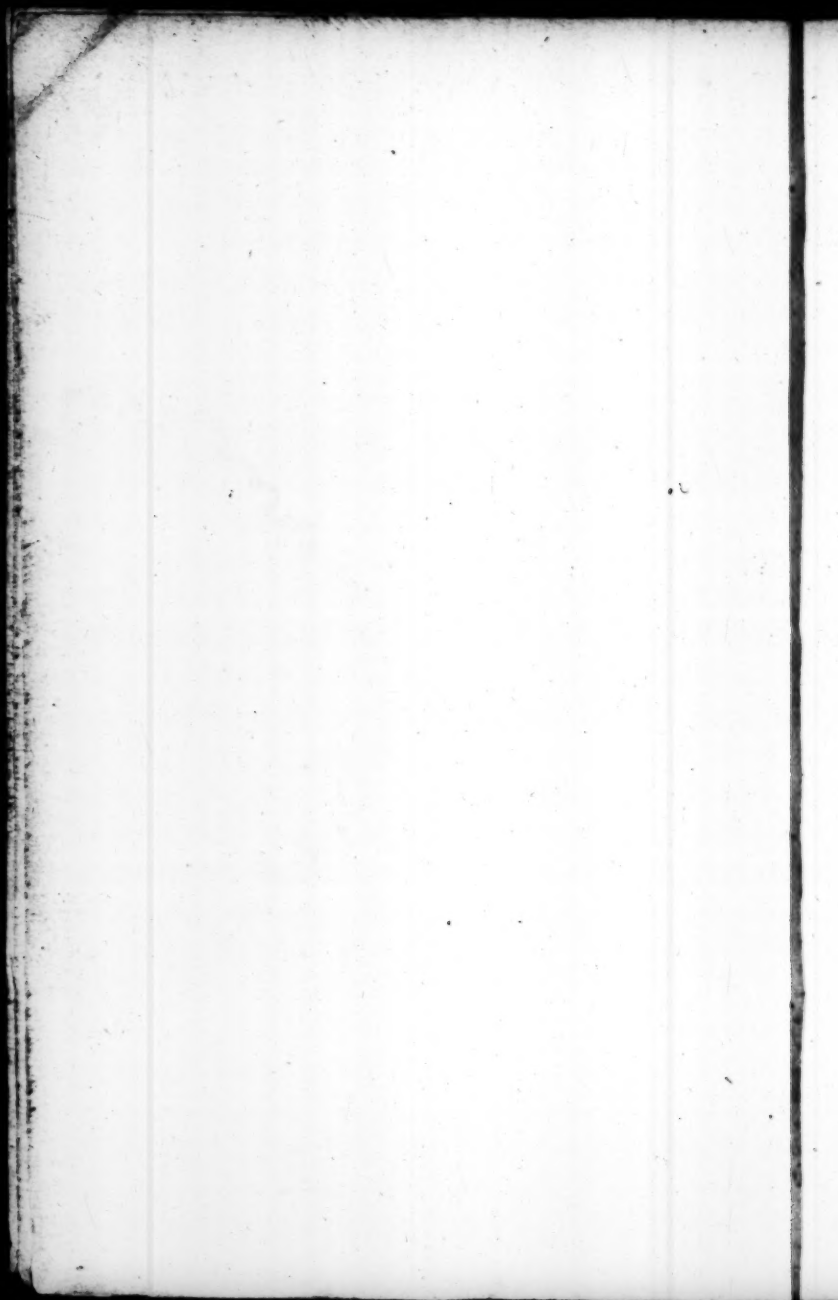
[illegible] [illegible]

[illegible] [illegible]

[illegible] [illegible]

[illegible] [illegible]

A



THE
LATINE GRAMMAR
FITTED FOR
THE USE OF SCHOOLS.

Wherein the words of *Lilie's* GRAMMAR
are (as much as might bee) reteined;
many errors thereof amended; many
needless things left out: many necessities,
that were wanting, supplied; and all things
ordered in a Method more agreeable to
Children's Capacitie.

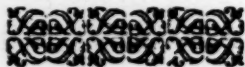
By *Charles Hoole*, Mr of Arts, of Lincoln-Col-
lege in *Oxford*, somtimes Schoolmaster of *Rotherham* in
York-shire; and now Teacher of a Private Grammar-
School in Gold-smith's Alley, not far from *Alderf-
gate* and *Cripple-gate*, L O N D O N.

And (that nothing might bee wanting to the purpose)
the English Translation is set down on the contrarie
page for the benefit of Yong-learners.

The second Edition corrected.

FRANC. PATRI.

Grammar is the Foundation of all Disciplines.



L O N D O N,

Printed by *William Du-Gard*; and are to bee sold by
John Saywell at the Sign of the Grey-hound in
Little Britain. An. Dom. 1653.

GRAMMATICA LATINA
IN
USUM SCHOLARUM
ADORNATA.

Grammatices Lilianae verbis, (quantum fieri licuit) retentis; multis ejus erroribus emendatis: minùs-necessariis amputatis; pluribus, quæ deficerent, suppletis; & omnibus Methodo faciliori ad tenellæ ætatis caprum conformatâ dispositis.

Operâ & Studio CAROLI HOOLE, A.M. è C.L. Oxon. Scholarchæ olim Rotherhamiensis in agro Ebor. jam verò privatæ Scholæ Grammaticæ Institutoris in Aurificum viculo, haud procul ab Alnorum & Clinicorum portis apud Londinates.

Adjecta est insuper (nè quid huic instituto desit) in juventutis gratiam, in adversâ paginâ, Anglicana interpretatio.

Editio secunda priorè emendatior.

FRANC. PATRI.

Grammatica est omnium Disciplinarum Fundamentum.



LONDINI,

Typis Guil. Du-Gard; veneuntque apud Joannem Saywell
ad insigne Canis Leporarii in Parva
Britannia. Anno Dom. 1653.



TO THE
LOVERS and PROFESSORS
OF

Grammar-learning.

More especially to
His most honored good Friends,
the Schoolmasters of his acquaintance
either in Citie or Countie.

Gentlemen!

I Have lately published some Helps
towards Grounding little ones in
the Latine-tongue: and find-
ing them (by my own and other's
Practice) to become successful; I more wil-
lingly go on to prosecute my begun design,
viz. to contrive (at vacant times) such ne-
cessarie Subsidiaries for everie Classis in
a Grammar-School, as may much facilitate
The good (though with some too tedious)
old way of Teaching by Grammar,
Authors, and Exercises.

The Epistle, &c.

And because our greatest cumber hitherto hath been Grammar, I have first begun with it, and endeavored to bring the Rules of that Art to the reach of Children's apprehensions; that in daily reading, writing, and speaking Latine, they may clearly see, and at once understand the Reason of what they do.

What I have don herein I most humbly submit to your candid judgments, and if, in your Opinions, I but seem to effect any thing, which may make our School-labor less troublesome, I have what I desire; and therefore rest,

Your truly devoted
friend, and humble
servant

From my School
in Gold-smith's
Alley, March, 26.
1651.

Charles Hoole.

M. FAB. Quintil. Instit. Orat. l. i. c. 4.



AC Professio—plus habet in recessu
quàm in fronte promittit—. Quò
minùs sunt ferendi, qui hanc Ar-
tem ut ieuem ac jejunam cavillan-
tur: quæ nisi Oratori futuro fun-
damenta fideliter jeterit, quicquid superstruxeris,
corruet: & quæ vel sola omni studiorum genere plus
habet operis, quàm ostentationis. Nè quis igitur
tanquam parua fastidiat Grammatices elementa;
non quia magnæ sit operæ, consonantes à vocalibus
discernere, ipsasque eas in semivocalium numerum,
mutarumque partiri: sed quia interiora velut sa-
cri hujus adeuntibus, apparebit multa rerum subti-
litas, quæ non modo acuire ingenia puerilia, sed ex-
ercere altissimam quoque eruditionem, ac scientiam
possit.

CICERO de Oratore. lib. 3.

PRæcepta latinè loquendi puerilis doctrina tra-
dit, & subtilior cognitio, & ratio literarum
alit; aut consuetudo sermonis quotidiani, ac do-
mestici libri confirmant, & lectio veterum Orato-
rum & Poëtarum.

Desid. ERASMUS Rotterodamus.

PROCLIVIVS est vel in triplici jure Doctōris no-
men, quàm semel boni Grammatici titulum pro-
meruisse.

GRAM-

THE LATINE GRAMMAR.

Of Grammar, and its Parts.

The Latine
Grammar
conceineth
Rules of
right
speaking
Latine.
It hath four
Parts,

Grammar is the Art of Writing and Speaking aright.

With the Latines in Latine.

There bee four Parts
of Grammar.

- | | |
|------------------|-----------|
| 1. Orthographie. | Lib. I. |
| 2. Etymologie. | Lib. II. |
| 3. Syntaxis. | Lib. III. |
| 4. Prosodia. | Lib. IV. |

Grammar hath its name from *letters*, which the Greeks call *grammata*, and imple's as much as *literature*; as if you should call it the *Letter Art*, or, *Skill in letters*: for this Art begin's with *letters*, of which *syllables* are made, and of *syllables*, *words*; and of *words*, a *speech*; which is either *Prose* or *Vers*.

Orthographie is spent about *Letters*; *Prosodia* about *Syllables*; *Etymologie* about *Words*; and *Syntaxis* about a *Speech*. The natural order therefore require's, that *Prosodia* should bee ranked in the second place; But wee, following the metho^d of the Common Grammar (because in deed the quantitie of *Syllables* cannot so well bee perceived before *Words* bee understood) thought good to set *Prosodia* in the last place.

Lib. I. of Orthographie.

1. Orthographie, which

Ortographie is the first part of Grammar, which teacheth with what letters any word is to bee spelled; as, *lectio* not *lexio*.

treateth

Orthographie }
treateth }
Of Letters.
Of Syllab'es.
Of Right Utterance.
Of Points of Sentences.

- | |
|----------|
| Chap. 1. |
| Chap. 2. |
| Chap. 3. |
| Chap. 4. |
| Chap. |

GRAMMATICA LATINA.

De Grammaticâ, & ejus partibus.



Grammatica est rectè Scribendi atque Lo-
quendi Ars.

Latinis Latinè.

Grammatica Latina rectè loquendi Latinè præcepta continet. Ejus quatuor sunt partes,

Grammaticæ quatuor sunt partes.

1. Orthographia.
2. Etymologia.
3. Syntaxis.
4. Prosodia.

Lib. I.
Lib. II.
Lib. III.
Lib. IV.

Nomen Grammaticæ impositum est à literis, quas grammata Græci vocant; sonâtque idem quod *literatura*, quasi *Artem Literariam* dicas; *litera* enim sunt prima hujus Artis initia, ex quibus fiunt *syllaba*; ex syllabis, *diæreses*; & è dictionibus, *oratio*; quæ *solus* vel *ligata* est.

Orthographia versatur in Literis, *Prosodia* in syllabis, *Etymologia* in dictionibus, & *Syntaxis* in Oratione. Ordo igitur naturalis postulat, ut *Prosodia* in secundo loco collocetur. Nobis autem methodum Vulgaris Grammatices observantibus (quippe, Syllabarum quantitas ante Vocum intelligentiam non tam facillè percipi queat) ultimum *Prosodia* locum assignare, visum est.

Lib. I. De Orthographia.

Orthographia est prima pars Grammatices, quâ docemur quibus quæque dictio sit formanda literis; ut, *lexio* non *lexio*.

Orthographia autem agit

- De Literis.
- De Syllabis.
- De Orthoëpia.
- De sententiarum punctis.

Cap. I.
Cap. II.
Cap. III. agit
Cap. IV.
Cap. I.

Chap. I. Of Letters.

1. of Letters,

A Letter is the least part of a Word.
 There bee 23 Latine letters. A B C D E
 F G H I K L M N O P Q R S T V X Y Z.
 Which are all contained in this Vers;

which are

Gaza frequens Lybicos duxit Karthago triumphos.

Three things } 1. The Name, whereby it is called.
 belong to } 2. The Figure, or Character, whereby
 every Letter. } it is known, or noted.
 3. The Force, or power, whereby it
 is pronounced or uttered.

Letters are distinguished, { Vowels,
 according to their } &
 sound, into } Consonants.

Vowels,

A Vowel is a letter which soundeth by it self; and
 they bee five, *a. e. i. o. u.* and *y* the Greek one:
 of which, beeing diversly placed, are made as many
 Diphthongs, *a. au. ei. eu. æ.* and *y*; as *Harpyia*.

and

A Consonant is a letter, which soundeth not, except
 it bee joyned with a Vowel, as, B. C. D. &c. Like-
 wise J and V becom consonants, when they are set
 before themselves, or other vowels in the same sylla-
 ble; as, *Juno, Jovis*; *voluntas, vultus*.

Consonants Of Con-
 sonants
 som are

1. Mutes, which have no sound of them-
 selves, and they are nine, *b. c. d. f. g. k. p. q. t.*
 in which the sound of the vowel follow's
 after.

For *f* answereth to *phi* the Greek let-
 ter, and *q* to make it sound take's *u* to it.
 2. Semivowels, which have som sound of
 themselves, & they are seven, *l. m. n. r. s. x. z*;
 in which the sound of the vowel goeth
 before.

Semi-

Cap. I. De Literis.

Litera est minima pars Dictionis.
Literæ Latinæ sunt viginti tres. A B C D E
F G H I K L M N O P Q R S T V X Y Z.

r. de Literis,

Quæ omnes in hoc versiculo continentur ;

Gaza frequens Lybicos duxit Karthago triumphos.

Tria accidunt { 1. *Nomen*, quo appellatur.
uniquæque literæ. { 2. *Figura*, quâ notatur.
3. *Potestas*, quâ pronuntiatur.

Distinguuntur Literæ { *Vocales*,
secundum sonum in { &
{ *Consonantes*.

quæ sunt

Vocalis est litera quæ per se sonat ; & sunt quin-
que, *a. e. i. o. u.* & *y* Græca : ex quibus variè dispo-
sitis totidem fiunt Diphthongi, *a. au. ei. eu. æ.* & *y* ;
ut, *Harpyia*.

Vocales,

Consonans est litera, quæ non, nisi cum vocali jun-
cta, sonat ; ut B. C. D. & c. J etiam & V consonan-
tes fiunt, cum vel sibi, vel aliis vocalibus in eadem
syllabâ præponuntur ; ut *Juno, Jovis ; voluntas, vultus*.

&

{ 1. *Mutæ*, quæ sonum nullum à seipsis
habent, & sunt novem, *b. c. d. f. g. k. p. q. t.*
in quibus sonus vocalis sequitur.

Cōsonantes

Consonan-
rium alia
sunt

{ Nam *f* respondet *q* Græcorum, & *q*
ut sonet semper sibi adsciscit *u*.

{ 2. *Semivocales*, quæ aliquid soni à seipsis
habent, & sunt septem, *l. m. n. r. s. x. z.* in
quibus sonus vocalis præcedit.

Semi-

The Latine Grammar.

Liquids, which do melt, or lose their force after a Mute in the same syllable ; as, *L.m.n.r.*
Double Consonants, which have the force of two letters, as *x. z.* and *j* between two vowels in single words. For in the word *jejunium*, the first *j* seem's to bee a single consonant, the second a double consonant, and the third a vowel.

S is neither a Liquid nor a Mute, but a letter of its own power or pronunciation ; which some therefore call *Monadicon*, or a letter, of whose sort there is but that one.

H is not properly a letter, but a note of aspiration ; as in *pulcher, homo, hiatus* ; which before *ie* in Hebrew words is seldom pronounced, for wee say *Hjeremias, Hjerosolyma*, as though they begun with *J* consonant ; but Greek words are pronounced as if they begun with *I* vowel, as, *Hierarchia*.

Great
and
Small.

Letters according to their shape are	<div style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle;"> <div style="font-size: 3em; vertical-align: middle;">{</div> <div style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle;"> <p>Great</p> <p>or</p> <p>Small</p> </div> </div>	<div style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle;"> <div style="font-size: 3em; vertical-align: middle;">{</div> <div style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle;"> <p>which are written with</p> </div> </div>	<div style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle;"> <div style="font-size: 3em; vertical-align: middle;">{</div> <div style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle;"> <p>Great characters, as <i>A. B. C.</i></p> <p>Small characters, as <i>a. b. c.</i></p> </div> </div>
--------------------------------------	--	--	--

- Great letters are written in the beginning of
1. Sentences ; as, *Deum time, Fear God. Regem honora, Honour the King.*
 2. Proper names ; as, *Carolus Charles. Londinum London. Thamisis the Thames.*
 3. The more eminent words in a sentence ; as, *Religionis Christiane fundamentum est Fides.*
Faith is the foundation of Christian Religion.
 4. Everie vers in a poëme ; as,
*Utendum est aetate ; cito pede praterit aetas ;
Nec bona tam sequitur, quam bona prima fuit.*
**Improve the time ; time passeth quickly on ;
Nor doth so good succeed, as that that's gone.**

Small

Grammatica Latina.

7

semi-
voca-
lium
aliaz sunt

Liquida, quæ post Mutam in eadem syllaba
liquescent, sive vim suam amittunt; ut,
l. m. n. r.
Duplices, quæ duarum literarum vim ha-
bent; ut *x. z. & j* inter duas vocales in
vocibus simplicibus. Nam in *jejunium*, pri-
mum *j* videtur esse consona simplex, se-
cundum duplex, & tertium vocale.

S nec Liquida est, nec Muta, sed suæ potestatis,
(sive pronuntiationis) litera; quam idcirco non-
nulli *Monadicon* appellarunt.

H propriè quidem non est litera, sed aspirationis
nota; ut *pulcher, homo, hiatus*; sed ante *ie* in Hebraïcis
dictionibus raro pronuntiatur; dicere enim solemus
Hjeremias, Hjerosolyma, quasi ab *J* consona inciperent;
sed Græcæ voces pronuntiantur tanquam inciperent
ab *I* vocali, ut *Hierarchia*.

Literæ quo- ad formam su- am sunt	{	<i>Majuscula</i> , quæ majusculis caracte- ribus scribuntur, ut <i>A. B. C.</i>	Majusculæ
		<i>Minuscula</i> , quæ minusculis caracte- ribus scribuntur, ut <i>a. b. c.</i>	Minusculæ

Majusculis inchoantur

1. Sententiæ; ut *Deum time. Regem honora.*

2. Propria nomina; ut, *Carolus. Londinum. Themi-
stis.*

3. Dictiones quælibet in oratione notari dignio-
res; ut,

Religionis Christiana fundamentum est Fides.

4. In Carminibus versus singuli; ut,

Utendum est atate; cito pede præterit atas;

Nec bona tam sequitur, quam bona prima fuit.

The Latine Grammar.

Small letters are commonly written in all other places, where of those are chiefly to be minded which have a double character as *i* and *j*; for *i* and *u* be vowels, but *j* and *v* be consonants which som call *j* and *u*. Likewise long *f* is alwaies written in the beginning or middle of a word, but short *f* in the end of it, as *scripsimus*.

which stand
for

A Word,

or

A Number.

When great
letters bee
set alone, or
but a few
together,
they do si-
gnifie or
stand som-
times for

[Whole words; as *M. T. C.* Mark Tullius
Cicero. S. P. D. Salutem plurimam dicitur
senderth much greeting. *A. M.* Anno
mundi. In the year of the World
A. D. Anno Domini, in the year of our
Lord. *R. P.* Respublica, the Common
wealth. *P. C.* Patres Conscripti, the Se-
nators. *HS.* or *LLS.* Duæ librae & se-
mis, two pound and a half (the note
of a silver coin worth 1. d. ob. ². q.)
N. B. nota bene, mark well.

A number; as, *I* one, *V* five, *X* ten,
L fiftie, *C* an hundred, *CC* two
hundred, *CCC* three hundred, *CCC* or *CCCC* four
hundred, *D* five hundred, *CCCC* or *CCCCC* five
hundred, *M* a thousand, *CCCCC* five thou-
sand, *CCCCC* ten thousand, *CCCCC* fiftie
thousand, *CCCCC* an hundred thou-
sand, *CCCCC* five hundred thousand,
CCCCC ten hundred thousand,
or a Million.

The lesser number set before take's away so much as
it self is from the greater; but beeing set after, it add's
so much to it; as, *IV* make's four, but *VI* six: *IX* nine, but
XI eleven.

A cross line made over a numeral letter implieth it
to signifie so many thousands, as otherwise it would
contein lesser sums; as *III* three thousand, *X* ten thousand,
and so of the rest.

Chap. 2. Of Syllables.

2. Of Syl-
lables,

A Syllable, is a taking letters together, and uttering
them with one breath; as, *vir-tus*. And

In reliquis locis maximâ ex parte Minusculæ scribuntur, & quibus istæ sunt præcipuè notandæ, quæ duplicem obtinent characterem, ut *i u & j*; nam *i & u* vocales sunt; *j* verò & *v* sunt consonæ, quas aliqui *ja & va* nominarunt. *j* longum semper in principio, vel mediò dictionis pingitur, sed *i* breve in fine; ut, *scripsimus*.

quæ signi-
ficant

Vocabulant

[Integralia vocabula; ut, *M.T.C. Marcus*

Tullius Cicero. S.P.D. Salutem plurimam dicit. A. M. Anno mundi. A.D. Anno Domini. R.P. Respublica. P.C. Patres Conscripti. HS. aut LLS. Duæ libra & semis (nota nummi sesteritii valentis asses duos cum semisse.) N.B. Nota bene:

aut

Literæ majusculæ cum solæ aut paucae scribuntur, significant aliquando

Numerum; ut, *I unum, V quinque, X decem, L quinquaginta, C centum, CC ducenti, D quingenti, M mille, CCCLXX decem millia, CCCCLXX centena millia, LXXX quingenta millia, CCCCLXXX decies centena millia.*

Numerum.

Minor numerus præpositus, tantundem demit majori sequenti; postpositus, verò tantundem addit: ut, *IV valet quatuor, VI verò sex: IX valet novem, at XI undecim.*

Linea transversa notis numericis superposita, easdem tot millia continere innuit, quot alioquì minores numeros continerent, ut *III tria millia, X decem millia*, & sic de cæteris.

Cap. 2. De Syllabis.

Syllaba est comprehensio literarum uno spiritu prolata; ut, *vir-tus*.

De Syllabis.

B

Estque

The Latine Grammar.

and

Of parting
and putting
them toge-
ther,

And it is { *Improper*, which consisteth of one onely vowel or diphthong ; as, *Æ-a-cus*.
Proper, which consisteth of one or more consonants taken together with a vowel or diphthong ; as, *Cæ-le-stis*.

Hee that would write rightly must learn, as hee write's to part syllables, and put them together.

Note therefore that

1. A Syllable in Latine doth not exceed the number of six letters ; as, *Stirps*, *Scrobs*.
2. In words of many syllables a cōsonant set between two vowels belong's to the later ; as, *Do-mi-nus*.
3. If a consonant bee doubled, the first belong's to the foregoing, and the later to the following syllable ; as, *An-nus*.
4. Consonants, which cannot bee joined in the beginning of a word, must bee parted in the middle of it ; as, *Sul-cus*.
5. Cōsonants which can bee joyned in the beginning of a word, must not bee parted in the middle, as, *no-ster*.

6. In simple words these letters always belong to the following vowel, viz.

bd	He-bdomas.	Bdellium.
cn	Te-chna.	Cneus.
et	Do-Eus.	Ctesipho.
gn	A-gnus.	Gnarus.
mn	A-mnis.	Mnemosyne.
phth	Na-phtha.	Phthisis.
ps	Scri-psi.	Psittacus.
pt	A-ptus.	Ptolomæus.
sb	Le-sbia.	Sbesis.
sc	Pi-scis.	Scamnum.
sm	Co-smus.	Smaragdus.
sp	A-sper.	Spero.
sq	Te-squa.	Squalor.
st	Pa-stor.	Sterto.
tl	A-tlas.	Tleptolemus.
tm	La-tmius.	Tmolus.
tn	Æ-tna.	Thnesko.

because we say

Estque

Impropria, quæ constat ex solâ vocali vel diphthongo; ut, *Æ-a-cus*.
Propria, quæ constat ex consonante unâ vel pluribus, cum vocali vel diphthongo comprehensis; ut, *Cæ-le-stis*.

Rectè scripturo discendum est syllabas, inter scribendum, aprè distinguere, atque connectere.

earundem
dist nōtione,
vel

Notandum igitur quòd

1. Syllaba apud Latinos numerum senarium litera connexionem non excedit; ut, *Stirps, Scrobs*.
2. In Polysyllabis consonans inter duas vocales posita ad posteriorem pertinet; ut, *Do-mi-nus*.
3. Si consonans geminetur, prior ad præcedentem, posterior ad sequentem syllabam pertinet; ut, *An-nus*.
4. Consonæ, quæ in initio vocis conjungi non possunt, in medio sunt distinguendæ; ut, *Sul-cus*.
5. Consonæ quæ in initio vocis conjungi possunt, in medio non sunt distinguendæ; ut, *No-ster*.

6. In simpli-
cibus vo-
cibus hæ-
literæ vo-
cali se-
quenti
semper
adhærent,
viz.

bd
cn
et
gn
mn
phth
ps
pt
sb
sc
sm
sp
sq
st
tl
tm
tn

He-bdomas.
Te-chna.
Do-ctus.
A-gnus.
A-mnis.
Na-phtha.
Scri-psi.
A-ptus.
Le-sbia.
Pi-scis.
Co-smus.
A-sper.
Te-squa.
Pa-stor.
A-tlas.
La-tmius.
Æ-tna.

quia dicitur

Bdellium.
Cneus.
Cresipho.
Gnatus.
Mnemofyne.
Phthisis.
Psittacus.
Ptolomæus.
Sbesis.
Scamnum.
Smaragdus.
Spero.
Squalor.
Sterto.
Tleptolernus.
Timolus.
Thnesko.

quia dicitur

ut

7. In words compounded every part must bee separated from another ; as, *Abf-con-do*.
8. In words compounded with a preposition, wee must respect the ear and good sound ; as, *Aufero*, not *Abfero* ; and *Abstuli*, not *Autuli* : and therefore it is that consonants are oftentimes put in ; as, *Redamo*, for *Reamo* ; *Ambigo* for *Amigo*.
9. *S* is rightly written after *X* in compound words, whose simples begin with *s* ; as, *Exscribo*, of *ex* and *scribo*, *exsul* of *x* and *solum* : but not in others ; as, *Exoro* of *Ex* and *oro* ; *Exigo* of *Ex* and *ago*.
10. *Ti* before a vowel is pronounced like *fi* ; as, *Oratio*. Except,
 1. In the beginning of a word, as, *Tiara*.
 2. When *s* goeth immediately before it, as, *Questio*.
 3. In poetical Infinitive Moods, as, *mitti*, for *mitti*.
 4. In words borrowed from other languages ; as, *Politia*.

Chap. 3. Of Right Utterance.

3. Of Right Uttering and amending the faults in Pronouncing.

O *Orthoëpie*, or Right Utterance, is the manner of right speaking out ; as, *Homo*, not *omo*.

Boies must neither over-hasten their speech, nor pause between every word, but must bee made to avoid the usual faults in pronouncing ; such as are

1. *Traulism*, when one stutrereth or stammereth ; as, *Cacacanit* for *canit*. Which fault may bee amended by quickly pattering over some ribble rabble made hard to pronounce on purpose ; as,

Arx, tridens, rostris, sphinx, præter, torrida, seps, strix.

2. *Pla-*

7. In compositis quæque pars ab alterâ separanda est ; ut, *Abs-con-do*.
8. In compositis cum præpositione auribus & *Euphonia* servendum est ; ut, *Aufero* non *Absfero*, & *abstuli* non *autuli* : ideòque Consonantes non rarò interferuntur ; ut, *Redamo* pro *Reamo*, *Ambigo* pro *Amigo*.
9. Post *X* in compositis, quorum simplicia incipiunt ab *S* rectissimè scribitur *s* ; ut, *Exscribo*, ab *ex* & *scribo* ; *exsul*, ab *ex* & *solum*, sed non in aliis ; ut *exoro*, ab *ex* & *oro* ; *exigo*, ab *ex* & *ago*.
10. *Ti* ante vocalem liquescit ; ut, *Oratio*.
Nisi ,
 1. In initio dictionis ; ut, *Tiara*.
 2. Quando *s* præcedit ; ut, *Quæstio*.
 3. In poëticis infinitivis ; ut *mittier*.
 4. In dictionibus mutuatitiis ; ut, *Politia*.

Cap. 3. De Orthoëpia.

O Orthoëpia est rectè Enunciandi ratio ; ut, *Homo* non *Omo*.

Pueri nec sermonem præcipitent, nec ad singulas quasque voces consulescant. Deterrendi sunt autem à vitiis sermonis vulgò propriis, cuiusmodi sunt

1. *Traulismus*, qui est hæsitantia vel titubantia oris ; ut, *Cacacanit* pro *canit*. Cui vitio facilè succurritur, si centones quosdam affectatæ difficultatis, quàm citissimè volvant ; ut,

Arx, *tridens*, *rostris*, *sphinx*, *præster*, *torrida*, *seps*, *strix*.

3. De Orthoëpia, & vitiis sermonis emendandi

2. *Plateasm*, when one speaketh too broadly; as, *Argo* for *Ergo*. *Mountes* for *Montes*, *Taibai* for *tibi*.

3. *Ischnotes*, when one speakerh too mincingly; as, *Nunc* for *nunc*. *Eliquis* for *Aliquis*. Or too lispingly; as, *Aputh* for *Apud*. *Amath* for *amat*.

Chap. 4. Of Points in Sentences.

4. of Points
in Sentences

A *Point* or *Pauf* is a note of distinction, signifying the space of breathing, or how long one may stay his breath. There bee eight of these especially to bee noted.

1. Comma,

1. A *comma* is an half circle, which staieth a sentence a little, by distinguishing its shorter parts; as, *Grammaticus, rhetor, geometres, pictor, aliptes, Graculus esuriens, in cælum, iusseris, ibit.*

2. Colon:

2. A *Colon* is two pricks, which suspend a sentence somewhat long, by dividing it in the midst; as, *Uendum est atate: cito pede praterit atos.*

3. Semi-
colon;

3. A *Semicolon* is a prick with a *Comma* under it, staying a sentence longer then a *Comma*, and not so long as a *Colon*; as, *Tu, quid divitiæ possint, consideras; quid virtus, non item.*

4. Period.

4. A *Period* is a full prick after a perfect sentence; as, *Deum time. Regem honora.*

5. Parenthe-
sis ()

5. A *Parenthesis* is two half Moons including a sentence, which, though it bee taken away, the speech nevertheless will bee whole; as,

—— *Princeps (quia bella minantur,
Hostes) militibus urbes premunit et armis.*

6. Interro-
gation?

6. An *Interrogation* mark's a question with two pricks, whereof the higher hath a tail upward: as, *Quomodo vales?*

7. Exclama-
tion!

7. An *Exclamation* is marked with two pricks, whereof the upper is a line coming down upon a point; as, *O tempora! O mores!*

8. Hyphen

2. *Plateasmus*, est iusto crassior pronuntiatio ; ut, *Argò pro Ergò. Mountes pro Montes. Taibai pro Tibi.*

3. *Ischnotes*, est iusto exilior pronuntiatio ; ut, *Nync pro Nunc. Eliquis pro Aliquis. Aut blæsius, ut, Aputh pro Apud. Amath pro Amat.*

Cap. 4. De Sententiarum Punctis.

Punctum sive Pausa est nota distinctionis, respirandi intervallum significans. Horum octo sunt præcipuè notanda

1. *Comma* est semi-circulus, sententiam sustinens, breviores ejus clausulas distinguendo : ut,

Grammaticus, rhetor, geometres, pictor, aliptes, Graculus esuriens, in cælum, jusseris, ibit.

2. *Colon* sunt duo puncta, quæ sententiam diutius suspendunt, medias ejus partes dirimendo : ut,

Utendum est ætate : cito pede præterit ætas.

3. *Semicolon* est punctum cum Commate subiecto, sententiam diutius paulò sustinens quàm *Comma* : colon ; minùs diu verò quàm *Colon* : ut, *Tu, quid divitiæ possint, consideras : quid virtus, non item.*

4. *Periodus* est punctum plenum post perfectam sententiam : ut, *Deum time. Regem honora.*

5. *Parenthesis* sunt duæ semilunulæ sententiam includentes, quâ remotâ sermo tamen manet integer : sic () ut,

——— *Princeps (quia bella minantur Hostes) militibus urbes præmunit, & armis.*

6. *Interrogatio* signat quæstionem duobus punctis, quorum superius est caudatum ; ut, *Quomodo gatio vales ?*

7. *Exclamatio* item notatur duobus punctis, quorum superius est lineola in punctum descendens ; ut, *O tempora ! O mores !*

B 4

8. *Hyphen*

8. *Hyphen* - 8. *Hyphen* is a little stroke interposed in a word divided at the end of a line ; as, *Humanifimé*: or, in words that are united, but not compounded ; as *Res-publica*, a Common-wealth.



B O O K I I.

Of Etymologie.

Etymologie

treateth



ETIMOLOGIE is the second part of Grammar, which teacheth how to know the difference of words, duly considering the properties or things belonging to every one of them.

Now, a word is a part or piece of a Speech, which it self doth signifie something, but cannot bee divided into parts that signifie : as, *Pi-e-tas* Godlinefs.

Chap. 1.

Of the eight Parts of Speech, and their general Accidents.

Of the eight
Parts of
Speech ;
which are

There
bee
eight sorts
of words :

1. A Noun.
2. A Pronoun.
3. A Verb.
4. A Participle.
5. An Adverb.
6. A Conjunction.
7. A Preposition.
8. An Interjection.

- Chap. 2.
- Chap. 23.
- Chap. 24.
- Chap. 39.
- Chap. 40.
- Chap. 41.
- Chap. 42.
- Chap. 43.

And

ord
anif-
nd-

8. *Hyphen* est lineola interposita voci s. *Hyphen* :
assectæ in fine lineæ ; ut , *Humanif-*
me : aut in vocibus unitis , sed non compositis ;
t, *Ref-publica*.

es:



LIB. II.

De Etymologia.

art
ow
lu-
or
of



ETIMOLOGIA est secunda pars
Grammaticæ, quæ docet dictionum
discrimina, singularum proprietates,
sive Accidentia diligenter expen-
dens. Etymologia

ch
vi-

Est autem dictio sive vox, pars ora-
tionis, quæ ipsa aliquid significat, sed in partes signi-
cantes dividi non potest : ut, *Pi-e-tas*. agit

Cap. 1.

De octo Partibus Orationis, & earum Acci-
dentibus generalibus.

2.
.
4.
.
.
.
.
.
.
d

O Cto
sunt
vorum ge-
nera :

1. *Nomen*.
2. *Pronomen*.
3. *Verbum*.
4. *Participium*.
5. *Adverbium*.
6. *Conjunctio*.
7. *Præpositio*.
8. *Interjectio*.

Cap. 2.

Cap. 23.

Cap. 24. De octo
Cap. 39. Partibus
Cap. 40. Orationis,
quæ sunt

Cap. 41.

Cap. 42.

Cap. 43.

Atque

And these bee commonly called *Parts of Speech*, becauf of them every speech is made ; though they are seldom all to bee found in one Speech.

Declined or Undeclined	The four	{ first later	of these are	{	Declined, which change their endings.
					Undeclined, which change not their endings.

There belong to every Part of Speech

1. Species, or Kinde,	{	according to which a word is	{	Primitive, which is not derived of any other word ; as, <i>Arbor</i> , <i>Amo</i> .
				Derivative, which is derived from another word ; as, <i>Arbustum</i> , <i>Ami- cus</i> .
				Simple, or single ; which is not co- pounded with another ; as, <i>Ami- cus</i> , <i>Amo</i> .
				Compound, or mixt ; which is made of two or more words ; as, <i>Inimi- cus</i> , <i>Redamo</i> .

2. Figure,
or
Form,

To which
belong,

There belong to words *Declined*

1. *Analogie*, when a word agree's with a Common Rule ; as, *Musa*, *Amo*.
2. *Anomalie*, when a word swerv's from the Common Rule ; as, *Filia*, *Fero*.

Two
Numbers,
Singular,
and Plural.

3. Two Numbers, {
whereof { The Singular speaketh but of one ;
as, *Lapis* a Stone.
The Plural of more then one ; as,
Lapides Stones.

Three
Persons,
The first.
The Second
The Third.

4. Three {
Persons. { The first speaketh of himself ; as, *Ego nu-
gans puer ludo*. I trifling boy do play.
The second is spoken to ; as, *Tu nugans
puer ludis*. Thou trifling boy plaicst.
The third is spoken of ; as, *Ille nugans puer
ludit*. Hee trifling boy plaieeth.

Ego and *Nos* bee alwaies of the First Person.

Tu and *vos*, and every Vocative case of the Second.

All

Atque hæc vulgò vocantur *Partes Orationis*, quòd ex hisce omnis oratio conficiatur; etsi omnes in una oratione rarò admodum occurrant.

Harum quatuor	priores	sunt	Declinabiles, sive variabiles, quæ in fine possunt variari.	Declina-
	posteriores		Indeclinabiles, sive invariables, quæ in fine non possunt variari.	Indeclina-

Accidunt cuique Parti Orationis

- | | | |
|-------------|---------------------------|--|
| 1. Species, | secundum quam vox dicitur | Primitiva, quæ aliunde non trahitur; ut, <i>Arbor, Amo.</i> |
| | | Derivativa, quæ aliunde formatur; ut, <i>Arbustum, Amicus.</i> |
| | | Simplex, quæ cum alia non componitur; ut, <i>Amicus, Amo.</i> |
| | | Composita, quæ à duabus vel pluribus fit; ut, <i>Inimicus, Redamo.</i> |

Accidunt vocibus Declinabilibus

- | | |
|---|--------------------|
| 1. Analogia, cum dictio convenit Communi Regulæ; ut, <i>Musa, Amo.</i> | Quitus
accidunt |
| 2. Anomalia, cum dictio recedit à Communi Regulâ; ut, <i>Filia, Fero.</i> | |

- | | | | | |
|-----------------------------|------------|---|----------------------------------|---|
| 3. Numeri
duo,
quorum | Singularis | loquitur | de uno; ut, <i>Lapis.</i> | Numeri
duo,
Singularis
& Pluralis; |
| | Pluralis | | de pluribus; ut, <i>Lapides.</i> | |
| 4. Personæ
tres, | | Prima, quæ loquitur de se; ut, <i>Ego nugans puer ludo.</i> | | Personæ
tres.
Prima.
Secunda.
Tertia. |
| | | Secunda, ad quam loquimur; ut, <i>Tu nugans puer ludis.</i> | | |
| | | Tertia, de quâ loquimur; ut, <i>Ille nugans puer ludit.</i> | | |

Ego & Nos sunt semper Primæ personæ.
Tu & Vos, & omnes Vocativi Secundæ.

Cætera

All other Nouns, Pronouns, and Participles bee of the Third, unless *Ego* or *Nos*, *Tu* or *Vos* bee exprest or understood.

Chap. 2.

Of a Noun, and its proper Accidents.

A Noun nameth a thing, and is Substantive,

A Noun is a Part of Speech which nameth a thing, without any difference of Time or Person ; as, *Manus* a Hand, *Domus* a House.

or
Adjective.

And it is either

Substantive, which may stand by it self in a Speech, and requireth nothing to bee added to declare its signification ; as, *Homo* a Man.

Adjective, which stand's in need of a Substantive to declare its signification ; as, *Bonus* good.

A Substantive sheweth what a thing is ; as, *Equus* a Horse.

An Adjective sheweth what alike the thing is ; as, *Albus* White.

Proper,

or

Common.

Both which are

Proper, which is spoken of som one thing only ; as, *Carolus* Charles, *Londinum* London, *Thamisis* the Thames, *Anglus*, English, *Scotus* Scotch.

Common, which signifieth a thing comon to many ; as, *Homo* a Man, *Urbs* a Citie, *Fluvius* a River, *Regio* a Countrey, *Magnus* Great.

It hath

There belong to a Noun, Pronoun, and a Participle

{ Case.
Gender.
Declension.
Comparison.

Chap. 3.
Chap. 4.
Chap. 11.
Chap. 17.

Chap. 3.

Cetera Nomina, Pronomina, & Participia sunt
Tertiz personæ, nisi *Ego* vel *Nos*, *Tu* vel *Vos* expri-
mantur vel subintelligantur.

Cap. 2.

De Nomine, & ejus Accidentibus specialibus.

Nomen est Pars Orationis quæ rem nominat, sine Nomen rem
ulla Temporis aut Personæ differentiâ; ut, nominat,
Manus, *Domus*.

Estque **S**ubstantivum, quod per se in Oratione estque
subsistit, & nihil addi postulat ad suam Substanti-
vum,
significationem exprimendam; ut, *Homo*.
Adjectivum, quod Substantivo indiget ad Adjectivum
suam significationem exprimendam; ut, *Bonus*.

Substantivum indicat quid sit rei; ut, *Equus*.

Adjectivum indicat quale sit rei; ut, *Albus*.

Proprium, quod rem uni individuo pro- *Proprium*,
priam significat; ut, *Carolus*, *Londinum*,
Thamisis, *Anglus*, *Scotus*.
Quorum *vel*
utrunque

Commune, sive Appellativum, quod rem *Commune*,
multis communem significat; ut, *Ho-*
mo, *Urbs*, *Fluvius*, *Regio*, *Magnus*.

Accidunt Nomini, **C**asus.
Pronomini, & **G**enus.
Participio, **D**eclinatio.
Comparatio.

Cap. 3.

Cap. 4.

Cap. 11. Ejus sunt

Cap. 17.

Cap. 3.

Chap. 3. Of Case.

A Case is the special ending of a Noun, Pronoun, or Participle.

Six Cases.

The Nominative.

There bee Six cases in both numbers.

1. The *Nominative* case is the first word whereby wee name any thing; and it goeth before the Verb, and answereth to the question *Who*, or *What*? as, *Magister docet*, The Master teacheth.

Genitive.

2. The *Genitive* case signifie's whose a thing is; and answereth to this question *Whose*, or *Whereof*? as *Doctrina Magistri*, the learning of the Master, or The Master's learning.

Dative.

3. The *Dative* attribute's, or give's something to one; and answereth to the question *to Whom* or *to what*; as, *Do librū Magistro*, I give a book to the Master.

Accusative.

4. The *Accusative* case follow's the Verb, and signifie's whereunto the Action of the Verb referreth; and answereth to the question *Whom* or *What*? as, *Amo Magistrum*, I love the Master.

Vocative.

5. The *Vocative* case is used in calling or speaking to; as, *O Magister*, O Master.

Ablative.

6. The *Ablative* case is commonly joined with a Preposition that serveth thereunto; and answereth to the question *from whom*, or *from what*? and the like; as, *Accepi librum à Magistro*, I received a book from the Master.

The *Nominative* case is sometimes called the *right*, or *straight* case, and the rest *oblique*, or *thwart* cases, becaus their endings swerv from the *Nominative*.

Chap. 4. Of Gender.

Gender is the differencing of Sex in respect of Speech.

For

Cap. 3. De Casu.

Casus est specialis Nominis, Pronominis, aut Participii terminatio.

Sunt autem *Sex casus* in utroque numero.

Sex Casus.

1. *Nominativus* est prima vox, quâ rem aliquam nominamus: præcedit autem Verbum, & respondit quæstioni *Quis*, aut *Quid*? ut, *Magister docet.*

Nominativus.

2. *Genitivus* significat cuius sit res quæpiam, & respondet quæstioni *Cujus*? ut, *Doctrina Magistri.*

Genitivus.

3. *Dativus* quid cuipiam attribuit, & respondet quæstioni *Cui*? ut, *Do librum Magistro.*

Dativus.

4. *Accusativus* sequitur Verbum, utpote in quem actio Verbi immediatè transit, & respondet quæstioni, *Quem*, vel *Quid*? ut, *Amo Magistrum.*

Accusativus.

5. *Vocativus* vocandis compellandisve personis accommodatur; ut, *O Magister.*

Vocativus.

6. *Ablativus* conjungitur ferè Præpositioni Ablativo inservienti; & respondit quæstioni *à quo*; & similibus, ut, *Accepi librum à Magistro.*

Ablativus.

Nominativus aliquando *Rectus Casus* dicitur: cæteri verò *Obliqui*, quòd eorum terminationes flectant à *Nominativo*.

Cap. 4. De Genere.

Genus est Sexus discretio ratione sermonis.

Discernit

The Latine Grammar.

For it make's a difference betwixt Nouns that are used as *Hees* or *Shees*, ther, by to know the agreement of the Substantive or Adjective.

Seven
Genders.

Genders of Nouns bee seven ; whereof the three first may not unfitly bee termed *Simple*, and the four last *Compound* Genders.

They are known by their Articles(or notes)which are borrowed of the Pronoun, and bee thus declined.

Singulariter		Malc.	Fœm.	Neutr.	Pluraliter	Malc.	Fœm.	Neutr.
	Nom.	Hic	Hæc	Hoc		Hi	Hæ	Hæc
	Gen.	Huius	Huius	Huius		Horum	Harum	Horum
	Dat.	Huic	Huic	Huic		His	His	His
	Acc.	Hunc	Hanc	Hoc		Hos	Has	Hæc
	Voc.							
	Abl.	Hoc	Hac	Hoc		His	His	His

Masculine.

1. The *Masculine* gender is of Nouns which are given to *Hees* ; and is declined with *Hic* ; as, *Hic vir*, a Man.

Feminine.

2. The *Feminine* gender is of Nouns which are given to *Shees* ; and is declined with *Hæc* ; as, *Hæc mulier*, a Woman.

Neuter.

3 The *Neuter* is of Nouns which are given to things that are accounted neither *Hees* nor *Shees*; and is declined with *Hoc* ; as, *Hoc Saxum*, a Stone.

Common
of two.

4. The *Common of two* is made of the Masculine and the Feminine joined together ; and is declined with *Hic* and *Hæc* ; as, *Hic & Hæc Parens* a Parent.

Common
of three.

5. The *Common of three* is made of all three simple Genders

Discernit enim inter ea nomina, quæ tanquam mares aut fœminæ construuntur, propter convenientiam Substantivi & Adjectivi cognoscendam.

Genera Nominum sunt septem: quorum tria prima Genera non ineptè *Simplicia*, quatuor verò postrema *Com-* ^{septem.} *posita* dici queant.

Dignoscuntur autem suis Articulis (sive notis) qui à Pronominibus accipiuntur, & in hunc modum variantur.

Singulariter	Masc.	Fœm.	Neut.	Pluraliter	Masc.	Fœm.	Neut.
	Nom. <i>Hic</i>	<i>Hæc</i>	<i>Hoc</i>		<i>Hi</i>	<i>Hæ</i>	<i>Hæc</i>
	Gen. <i>Hujus</i>	<i>Hujus</i>	<i>Hujus</i>		<i>Horum</i>	<i>Harum</i>	<i>Horum</i>
	Dat. <i>Huic</i>	<i>Huic</i>	<i>Huic</i>		<i>His</i>	<i>His</i>	<i>His</i>
	Acc. <i>Hunc</i>	<i>Hanc</i>	<i>Hoc</i>		<i>Hos</i>	<i>Has</i>	<i>Hæc</i>
	Voc.						
	Abl. <i>Hôc</i>	<i>Hæc</i>	<i>Hôc</i>		<i>His</i>	<i>His</i>	<i>His</i>

1. *Masculinum* genus maribus attribuitur; cuius ^{Masculi-} nota est *Hic*; ut, *Hic vir*. ^{num.}

2. *Fœmininum* fœminis attribuitur; cuius nota est ^{Fœmini-} *Hæc*; ut, *Hæc mulier*. ^{num.}

3. *Neutrum* nec maribus, nec fœminis attribuitur; *Neutrum* cuius nota est *Hoc*; ut, *Hoc saxum*.

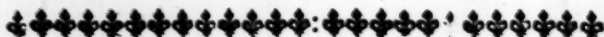
4. *Commune duorum* ex Masculino & Fœminino ^{Commune} componitur; cuius nota est *Hic* & *Hæc*; ut, *Hic* & ^{duorum.} *Hæc Patris*.

5. *Commune trium* ex omnibus simplicibus generi- ^{Commune} bus ^{trium.}

Genders joined together ; and is declined with *Hic, Hac, and Hoc* ; as, *Hic, Hac & Hoc Felix* Happie.

Doubtful. 6. The Doubtful may bee either the Masculine or the Feminine ; and is declined with *Hic vel Hac* ; as, *Hic vel Hac Dies* a Day.

Epicene. 7. The Epicene comprehendeth both Sexes under one Article ; as, *Hic Passer* a Sparrow. And in this Gender, to avoid ambiguitie, wee use to expresse the Sex by Hee, or Shee ; as *Passer mas* a Hee, or Cock-sparrow : *Passer femina* a Shee, or Hen-sparrow.



Propria quæ Maribus :

OR,

**WILLIAM LILIE's Rules
OF THE
GENDERS of NOUNS.**

Rules of the
Genders of
Nouns are

1. General.

1. Of Sub-

stantives

proper.

1. Proper

names.

1. Of Gods,

2. Of Men.

3. Of Rivers

4. Of Months

5. Of Winds

are of the

Masculine

Gender.

CHAP. 5.

Of the General Rules of Proper Names.

ALL Proper Names which are given to Males, or Hees, are Masculines : As 1. Of Gods, as Bacchus, chus, chii. Mars, tis. Apollo, mis. 2. Of Men, as Cato, tōnis. Virgilius, ill. 3. Of Rivers, as Tybris, bris. Orontes, tis. 4. Of Months, as October, bris. 5. Of Winds, as Lybs, ybis. Notus, ti. Auster, stri, the South-winde.

II. Proper

bus componitur; cuius nota est *Hic, Hac & Hoc*; ut, *Hic, Hac & Hoc Felix.*

6. *Dubium* aut Masculinum aut Fœmininum Articulus indifferentem assumere potest; cuius nota est *Hic vel Hac*; ut, *Hic vel Hac Dies.*

7. *Epiconum* sub uno Articulo utrumque sexum *Epiconum* complectitur; ut, *Hic Passer.* Hoc autem in genere, ad vitandam ambiguitatem, sexum exprimere solemus per marem & fœminam; ut, *Passer mas, Passer fœmin.*



Propria quæ Maribus :

VEL,

GUILIELMI LILII Regulæ

DE

GENERIBUS NOMINUM.

CAP. 5.

De Regulis Generalibus Propriorum.

Propria, quæ maribus tribuuntur, Mascula dicas :

Ut sunt 1. *Divitiarum*; Mars, Bacchus, Apollo. 2. *Virorum*;

Ut, Cato, Virgilius. 3. *Fluviorum*; ut, Tiberis, Orentes.

4. *Mensium*; ut, October. 5. *Ventorum*; ut, Lybs, Notus, Au-

(ster.

Regulæ de
generibus
nominum.

1. Generales

I. Substan-

tivorum

Propriorum.

1. Propria,

1. Deorum,

2. Virorum,

3. Fluviorum,

4. Mensium.

5. Ventorum

mascula sunt

Propria

C

2. Proper Names,
1. Of God-
desses,
2. Of Wo-
men,
3. Of Cities,
4. Of Re-
gions,
5. Of
Islands,
are Femi-
nines.

II. **P**roper Names shewing the female kinde are Fe-
minines; as, 1. Of Goddeses, as Juno, nōnis. Ve-
nus, nēris. 2. Of Women, as Anna, nē. Philoris, lorī-
dis. 3. Of Cities, as Elis, lidis. Opus, puntis. 4. Of
Regions, as Græcia, æ. Persis, idis. 5. Of Islands,
as Creta, tæ. Britānnia, niz. Cyprus, pri.

But som names of Cities are excepted, as 1. These
Masculines, Sulmo, mōnis. Agragas, gantis. 2. Som
Neuters, as Argos, gi. Tibur, būris. Prænestē, stis, and
3. Auxur, xūris, which is both of the Masculine and
Neuter gender.

Chap. 6.

Of the General Rules of Common Names.

II. General
of Common
Names.
Common
Names of
Trees are
Feminines.

I. **C**ommon names of Trees are of the Feminine
gender, as, *Alnus*, ni, an Alder. *Cupressus*, fi, a
Cypress. *Cedrus*, dri, a Cedar. But *Pinus*, ni, a Pine.
Oleaster, stri, a wilde Olive, are Masculines. *Siler*,
lēris, an Olive. *Suber*, bēris, a Cork tree. Thus, *uris*,
the Frankincense tree. *Robur*, ōris, an Oak, and *Acer*,
cēris, a Maple, are Neuters.

2. Common
names of
Birds,
Beasts, and
Fish bee
Epicenes.
3. All that
end in um,
and that
change not
their end-
ing, are
Neuters.

II. **T**he names of Birds, as, *Passer*, ēris, a Sparrow.
Hirundo, dīnis, a Swallow. Of Beasts, as *Ti-*
gris, grīdis, a Tiger. *Vulpes*, is, a Fox. And of Fishes,
as, *Ostrea*, æ, an Oyster. *Cetus*, ti, a whale, are of the
Epicene gender.

III. But here is to bee noted, that of all the
Nouns afore-mentioned, Everie Noun (except pro-
per names of Men, and Women) in um is of the
Neuter gender. And so are Nouns that change not
their ending.

Also al nouns But
ending in on of the second
declension are of the neuter

Propria fæmineum referentia nomina sexum,
Fæmineo generi tribuuntur: sive 1. Dearum
Sunt; ut, Juno, Venus: 2. Mulierum; seu, Anna, Philotis.
3. Urbium; ut, Elis, Opus. 4. Regionum; ut, Græcia, Persis.
5. Insula item nomen; ceu, Creta, Britannia, Cyprus.

2. Propria,
1. Dearum,
2. Mulierum,
3. Urbium,
4. Regionum,
5. Insularum, Fæminina sunt.

Excipienda tamen quadam sunt Urbium; ut, ista
1. Mascula, Sulmo, Agragas: 3. quædã neutralia; ut, Argos,
Tybur, Prænestes: & genus Anxur quod dat utrumque.

Cap. 6.

De Regulis Generalibus Appellativorum.

I. **A**ppellativa arborum erunt muliebria; ut, Alnus,
Cupressus, Cedrus. Mas pinus, mas oleaster.
Et sunt neutra, filer, suber, thus, robur, acérque.

II. Generales Appellativorum.
1. Appellativa Arborum sunt fæminina.

II. **S**unt etiam volucrum; ceu, passer, hirundo: ferarum;
ut, Tygris, Vulpes: & piscium; ut, ostrea, cetus,
Difsa Epicæna: quibus vox ipsa genus feret aptum.

2. Appellativa volucrum, ferarum, & piscium Epicæna sunt.

III. Attamen ex cunctis, quæ diximus antè notandum,
Omne quod exit in um, (si hominum modo Propria tollas)
Esse genus neutrum: sic invariabile nomen.

3. Omne in um, & invariabile sunt neutra.

2. Special Rules of common names are three.

But now will I speak in order touching all other Common Names, or which are as Common-names; for in these the Gender is alwaies known by the Genitive case: as the Three Special Rules following will shew.

Chap. 7.

Of the First Special Rule.

1. A Noun not encreasing in the Genitive sing. is Feminine.

A Noun not encreasing in the Genitive case singular, is of the Feminine Gender; as, *Caro, Carnis, flesh. Capra, Caprae, a shee Goat. Nubes, Nubis, a Cloud.*

Except Masculines.

1. **M** Any Names belonging to Men, ending in *a*, are of the Masculine gender; as, *Scriba, bae, a Scribe. Affecta, clae, a Page. Scutria, tae, a Scot-fer. Rabula, lae, a Rascal. Lixa, xae, a Scullion. Lanista, tae, a Fencer.* 2. Such as com from the first Greek Declension and ends in *as*; as *Satrapas, pae, a Pectr.* Or in *es*; as *Athletes, tae, a Wrestler.* And such as are made of them in *a*; as *Satrapa, pae, Athleta, tae.* 3. Likewise *verres, ris, a boar-pig. Natalis, lis, a birth-date. Aqualis, lis, an ewer.* 4. Words that are compounded of *as* (and signifie more then *as*) **a pound weight**; as *centussis, sis, an hundred pound weight.* 5. Add to these, *Lienis, nis, the milt. orbis, bis, a roundle. Callis, lis, a path. caulis, lis, a stalk. follis, lis, a pair of bellows. collis, lis, a little hill. mensis, sis, a month. ensis, sis, a sword. fustis, sis, a club. funis, nis, a rope. panis, nis, bread. penis, nis, a man's yard. crinis, nis, hair. ignis, nis, fire. cassis, sis, a net. fascis, scis, a faggot. torris, ris, a firebrand. sentis, tis, a thorn. piscis, scis, a fish. unguis, guis, a nail, or hoof. vermis, mis, a worm. vestis, sis, a doo-bar. postis, sis, a post, and axis, xis, an axle-tree.* 6. Nouns ending in

1	{	er,		{	<i>Venter, tris, a bellie;</i>	} are of the Masculine gender.
in	{	os,	as,	{	<i>Logos, gi, a word;</i>	
2	{	us,		{	<i>Annis, ni, a year;</i>	

Yet

Sed nunc de reliquis, quæ Appellativa vocantur,
Aut quæ sunt tanquam Appellativa, ordine dicam:
Nam genus hiis semper dignoscitur ex Genitivo:
Infra ut monstrabit Specialis Regula triplex.

Regulæ spe-
ciales Ap-
pellativo-
rum sunt
tres.

Cap. 7.

De Prima Regula Speciali, & ejus
Exceptionibus.

Nomen non crescens genitivo, ceu, caro, carnis;
Capra, capræ; nubes nubis; genus est muliebre.

I.
Nem n non
crescens, est
Muliebre.

I. **M**ascula nomina in a dicuntur multa virorum;

Exipiuntur
Masculina.

ut, Scriba, assecla, scurra, & rabula, lixa, lanista.

2. Mascula Græcorum quot declinatio prima

Fundit in as & in es, & ab illis quot per a fiunt;

Ut, Satrapas, Satrapæ; Athletes, Athleta. 3. Leguntur

Mascula item verres, natalis, aqualis. 4. Ab asse

Nata; ut, centussis. 5. Coniunge lienis, & orbis,

Callis, caulis, follis, collis, mensis, & ensis,

Fustis, funis, panis, penis, crinis, & ignis,

Cassis, fascis, torris, sentis, piscis, & unguis,

Et vermis, vectis, postis, societas & axis.

6. Mascula in i. er, ceu venter; in os, vel 2. us, ut lo-
(gos, annus.

Y Et these are Feminines. 1. *Mater, tris*, a mother. 2. *Humus, mi*, the ground: *domus, mi, mūs*, an house, or home: *Alvus, vi*, a panch: *colus, ti, lūs*, a distaff: *ficus, ci, cūs*, a fig: *acus, cūs*, a needle: *porticus, cūs*, a gallerie: *tribus, būs*, a tribe: *socrus, cri*, a mother in law: *nurus, rūs*, a daughter in law: *manus, nūs*, a hand: *idus, iduum*, the Ides of the month: *anus, nūs*, an old woman: *vannus, ni*, a van. 3. To these you may add Greek words which turn or into us, as *papyrus, ri*, paper: *antidotus, ti*, an antidote: *costus, sti*, the herb cost: *Marie: diphthongus, gi*, a diphthong: *byssus, fi*, fine flax: *abyssus, fi*, an abyss: *crystallus, li*, crystal: *Synodus, di*, a Synod: *sapphirus, ri*, a Sapphire: *eremus, mi*, a wilderness: *arctus, ti*, Charles-wain: with many more, which would bee long to set down.

Neuters:

II. Nouns ending in e, whose Genitive make's is, are of the Neuter gender; as, *Mare, is*, the sea: *rete, tis*, a net. And 2. Nouns that end in on; as *barbiton, ti*, a lute: or in um; as *ovum, vi*, an egg. 3. *Hippomanes, nis*, Mare-poison: *cacoëthes, this*, an evil custom: *virtus, posson*: *pelagus, gi*, the sea. But 4. *Vulgus, gi*, the common people, is sometime Masculine, sometime Neuter.

Doubtfuls.

III. These Nouns are of the Doubtful gender; *Talpa, ps*, a mole: *dama, ma*, a fallow-deer: *canalis, lis*, a Channel: *Balanus, ni*, mast: *finis, nis*, an end: *clunis, nis*, a buttock: *restis, stis*, a rope: *penus, ni, nūs*, vitualls: *amnis, amnūs*, a river. *Pampinus, ni*, a vine-leaf: *corbis, bis*, a basket: *linter, tris*, a cock-boat: *torquis, quis*, a gold-chain: *specus, cūs*, a den: *anguis, guis*, a snake: *ficus, ci*, a ptis: *phaselus, li*, a barge: *Lecythus, thi*, an oil-glass: *pharus, ri*, a watch-tower: and *Paradisus, fi*, Paradise.

IV. Nouns

Feminei generis sunt 1. mater, 2. humus, domus, alvus,

Et colus, & quarta pro fructu ficus, acúsque

Porticus, atque tribus, focrus, nurus & manus, idus ;

Huc anus addenda est, huc mystica vannus Iacchi.

3. Huiusmodi os in us vertentia Græca, Papyrus,

Antidorus, costus, diphthongus, byssus, abyssus,

CrySTALLUS, Synodus, sapphirus, eremus, & arctus,

Cum multis aliis quæ nunc perscribere longum est.

II. **N**eutrum nomen in e, si gignit is ; ut, mare, rete, Neutra.

2. Et quot in on vel in um fiunt ; ut, barbiton, ovum.

3. Est neutrum hippomanes genus, & neutrum cacoëthes,

Et virus, pelagus. 4. Neutrum modò, mas modò vulgus.

III. **I**ncerti generis sunt talpa, & dama, canalis, Dubia.

Et balanus, finis, clunis, restis, penus, amnis.

Pampinus, & corbis, linter, torquis, specus, anguis,

Pro morbo ficus, fici, dans ; atque Phaselus,

Lecythus, ac atomus, grossus, pharus, & Paradisus.

IV. Compositum

Commons
of two.

IV. **N**Ouns derived of Verbs, and ending in *a* are of the Common-of-two-Gender; as, *Grægenæ, næ*, a *Græcian-boyn*, of *gigno* to beget; *Agricola, læ*, an *husband-man*, of *colo* to till: *advenans, a* *stranger*, of *venio* to com. To these add *Senex, nis*, an *old man*; *auriga, æ*, a *waggoner*; *verna, næ*, a *bondslave*; *sodalis, lis*, a *companion*: *vates, tis*, a *Prophet*, *extorris, ris*, a *bentled man*; *Patruelis, lis*, an *Uncle's son*; *Perduellis, lis*, an *enemie in war*; *Affinis, nis*, a *kinsman*: *juvenis, nis*, a *youth*: *testis, sis*, a *witness*: *civis, vis*, a *citizen*: *canis, nis*, a *dog*: *hostis, sis*, a *for, or enemy*.

Chap. 3.

Of the second Special Rule, and its Exceptions.

II.
A noun
encreasing
long is
Feminine.

IF the last syllable but one of the genitive case singular encreasing, sound long, a noun is of the Feminine gender; as, *Pietas, pietatis*, *godliness*; *virtus, virtutis*, *virtue*.

Except
Masculines.

I. **C**ertain nouns of one syllable are Masculines; as, *Sal, salis*, *salt*: *sol, solis*, the *Sun*: *ren, renis*, the *kidney*: *splen, splenis*, the *spleen*: *Car, caris*, a *man of Caria*: *Ser, Seris*, a *man of Seres*: *vir, viri*, a *man*: *vas, vasis*, a *measure*: *as, assis*, a *pound weight*: *mas, maris*, a *male*: *Bes, beasis*, *eight ounces*: *præs, prædis*, a *measure*: *pes, pedis*, a *foot*: *glis, gliris*, a *mouse*: *mos, moris*, a *manner*: *flos, floris*, a *flower*: *ros, roris*, *dew*: *Tros, Trois*, a *Trojane*: *mus, muris*, a *mouse*: *dens, dentis*, a *tooth*: *mons, montis*, a *mountain*: *pons, pontis*, a *bridge*: *fons, fontis*, a *spring*: *Seps, sepis*, a *serpent*: *gryps, gryphis*, *gryphon*: *Thrax, Thoracis*, a *Thracian*: *Rex, Regis*, a *king*: *grex, gregis*, a *stock*: and *Phryx, Phrygis*, a *Phrygian*. 2. Nouns of many syllables in *n*; as, *Acarman, nânis*, one of *Acarmania*; *lichen, chénis*, *liverwort*: *dolphin, phinis*, a *dolphin*. 3. Nouns that end in *o*, and signifie a bodie; as, *Leo, ónis*, a *lion*: *curculio, ónis*, a *weevil*: so also *senio, ónis*, *age*: *ternio, ónis*, *trip*: *fermo, mónis*, *speech*. 4. Nouns

IV. *Compositum à verbo dans a commune duorum est,*

Communia.

Excipe hæc

Puerpera.

Grajugena, à gigno; agricola, à colo; id advena monstrat,

A venio: adde senex, auriga, & verna, sodalis,

Vates, extorris, patruelis, pèrque duellis,

Affinis, juvenis, testis, civis, canis, hostis.

Cap. 3. De secundâ Speciali Regulâ, & ejus Exceptionibus.

II.

Nomen

acutè

crescens est

muliebre.

Nomen, crescentis penultima si genitivi
Syllaba acuta sonat, velut hæc pietas, pietatis,
Virtus, virtutis monstrat, genus est muliebre.

Exciuntur
Masculina.

Mascula dicuntur monosyllaba nomina quadam,

Sal, sol, ren, & splen, Car, Ser, vir, vas- vadis, as, mas,

Bes, Cres, præ, & pes, glis- gliris habens genitivo,

Mos, flos, ros, & Tros, mus, dens, mons, pons,
simul & fons,

Scps pro serpente, gryps, Thrax, Rex, grex- gregis, &
Phryx.

2. Mascula sunt etiam polysyllaba in n, ut, Acarnan,

Lichen, & delphin: 3. & in o signantia corpus,

Ut leo, curculio, sic senio, ternio, sermo.

4. Mascula

4. Nouns that end in $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} er, \\ or, \\ os, \end{array} \right\}$ as $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} crater, t\acute{e}ris, a goblet, \\ conditor, t\acute{o}ris, a builder, \\ Heros, r\acute{o}is, a Nobleman, \end{array} \right\}$ are masculine

5. So are also *torrentis, rentis, a brook*; *nefrens, entis, & dis, a pig*; *Oriens, enis, the East*: with many in *dens*; as, *bidens, dentis, a two grained fork*. 6. Add to these, *gigas, gantis, a giant*: *Elephas, phantis, an Elephant*; *adamas, mantis, an adamant*: *Garamas, mantis, one of Garamaria*: *tapes, p\acute{e}tis, tapestry*: *lebes, b\acute{e}tis, a cauldron*: *Cures, r\acute{e}is, one of Cures*: *Magnes, n\acute{e}tis, a loadstone*: *meridies, di\acute{e}i, noon*. 7. Nouns compounded of *as*, and signify part of *as*; as, *dodrans, antis, nine ounces*: *semissis, issis, half a pound*: 8. To these add, *Samnis, n\acute{e}tis, a Samnite*: *hydrops, dr\acute{o}pis, the drop*: *nycticorax, r\acute{a}cis, a night-raven*: *vervex, v\acute{e}cis, a swether*: *phoenix, n\acute{e}cis, a Phoenix*: *bombyx, bycis, a silk-worm*: Yet of these, *Syren, r\acute{e}is, a mermaid*; and also *soror, \acute{o}ris, a sister*: and *uxor, \acute{o}ris, a wife*, are feminines.

Neuters.

II. **T**Hese nouns of one syllable bee of the neuter gender, *mel, mellis, honte*: *fel, fellis, gall*: *lac, lactis, milk*: *far, farris, bread-corn*: *ver, veris, the spring*: *cor, cordis, a heart*: *vas, vasis, a vessel*: *os, ossis, a bone*: and *os, oris, a mouth*: *rus, rutis, the countrie*: *thus, thuris, frankincense*: *ius, juris, right*: *crus, cruris, the leg*: *pus, puris, corrupt matter*. 2. Nouns in *al* as, *capital, talis, a quoff*. And in *ar*, as, *laquear, aris, a vault*. 3. *Halec, lecis, an herring*, is of the feminine and neuter gender.

III. These

W. B. Lloyd Jones
~~not B. Lloyd Jones~~
 Mascula in er, or, & os; ceu crater, conditor, heros.

Sic torrens, nefrens, oriens, cum pluribus in dens;

quale bidens, quando pro instrumento reperitur.

Adde gigas, elephas, adamas, Garamásque, tapésque,

aque lebes, Cures, magnes, unumque meridi-

is, nomen quinta. 7. Et quæ componuntur ab asse,

et dodrans, semis. 8. Jungantur Mascula Samnis,

hydrops, nycticorax, thorax, & mascula vervex,

phenix, & bombyx, pro vermiculo. Attamen ex his

est muliebre genus, Syren, nec non soror, uxor.

Sunt neutralia & hæc monosyllaba nomina, mel, fel, Neutra:

ac, far, ver, cor, æs, vas-vasis, os-offis, & oris,

us, thus, jus, crus, pus. Et in al polyssyllaba in árque,

et capital, laquear. Neutrum halec, & muliebre.

Doubtfuls.

III. **T**Hese nouns bee of the Doubtful gender, *Pythion, ònis, a spirit of Prophecie: scrobs, bis, ditch: serpens, pentis, a serpent: bubo, bônis, an owl rudens, dentis, a cable: grui, gruis, a crane: Perdix, dicis, a partridge: lynx, cis, a spotted beast: limax, mácis, a snail stirps, pis, a stock: calx, cis, an heel: dies, dièi, a day* is onely masculine in the plural number.

Commons.

IV. **T**Hese nouns bee of the Common-of-two-gender: *Parens, rentis, a parent: author, tóris, a Father: infans, fantis, a babe: adolescens, scentis, a youth: dux, ducis, a leader: illex, légis, a lawless person: heres, rédis, an heir: exlex, légis, an outlaw: Word compounded of frons, tis, a forehead: as, bifrons, tis, one having two foreheads: custos, stódis, a keeper: bos, bovis, a neat: fur, furis, a thief: sus, suis, a swine: sacerdos, dotis, a Priest:*

Chap. 9.

Of the third Special Rule, and its Exceptions.

III.
A noun increasing short is of the Masculine gender.

A Noun is of the masculine gender, if the last syllable but one of the genitive case singular is increasing, sound short; as, *sanguis, sanguinis, blood.*

Except
Feminines.

I. **A** Noun of more then two syllables, ending in *do*, which make's *dinis*, as, *dulcédo, dinis, sweetness*; and in *go* which make's *ginis*; as, *compágo, ginis, a joint*, are of the feminine gender. 2. Add *Virgo, ginis, a maid*; *grando, dinis, hail*; *fides, dei, faith*; *compes pedis, fetters*; *reges, getis, a mat*; *seges, getis, standing corn*; *arbor, boris, a tree*; *hyems, emis, winter*; *baccharis, charis*.

III. **S**unt dubia hac Python, scrobs, serpens, bubo, Dubia.
rudens, grus.

Perdix, lynx, lymax, stirps pro trunco, pedis & calx.

Adde dies numero tantum mas esto secundo.

IV. **S**unt Commune, parens, autorque, infans, adoles- Communia;
scens.

Dux, illex, hæres, exlex; à fronte creata,

Ut bifrons; custos, bos, fur, sus, atque sacer dos.

Cap. 9.

De tertiâ Speciali Regulâ, & ejus exceptionibus.

Nomen, crescentis penultima si genitivi
Sit gravis, ut sanguis, genitivo sanguinis, est mas.

III.
Nomen
gravier
crescens, est
mascu-
linum.

I. **F**œminei generis sit hyperdissyllabon in do,
Quod dinis; atque in go, quod dat ginis in genitivo.
Id tibi dulcedo faciens dulcedinis, idque
Monstrat compago, compaginis. 2. Adjice virgo,
Grando, fides, compes, teges, & seges, arbor, hyemsque.

Excipion-
tur Fœmi-
nina.

Sic

charis, the herb *Radie's-globe* or *clown's-sphe-*
nard: *findon*, *dōnis*, *fine linen*: *Gorgon*, *gōnis*, the mon-
 ster *Gorgon*: *icon*, *cōnis*, an image: *Amazon*, *zōnis*,
 an Amazon. 3. Greek nouns ending in *as*, *as*, *lampas*,
pādis, a lamp. Or in *is*, *as*, *laspis*, *spīdis*, *jasper*: *cas-*
sis, *sīdis*, an helmet: *cussis*, *spīdis*, a spear-point.
 4. One word in *us*, *as*, *pecus*, *cūdis*, small-cattle. 5. To
 these add, *forfex*, *ficis*, a pair of shears: *pellex*, *licis*, an
 harlot: *carex*, *ricis*, *sedg*: *supellex*, *lectilis*, household-
 stuff: *appendix*, *dicis*, an apprentice: *Histris*, *stricis*,
 an hedgehog: *coxendix*, *dicis*, an hip: *filix*, *licis*, fern.
 6. *Halcyon*, *onis*, a King's fisher: and *mulier*, *līeris*, a
 woman may bee put in this rank, or rule.

Neuters.

II. **A** Noun, signifying a thing without life, is of
 the neuter gender, if it end in *a*; as, *Problēma*,
māis, a probleme: In *en*; as, *omen*, *mīnis*, luck: In *ur*;
 as, *jubar*, *bāris*, the sun-beam: In *ur*; as, *jecur*, *cōris*,
 the liver: In *us*; as, *onus*, *nēris*, a burden: In *ut*;
 as, *occiput*, *cipitis*, the hinder part of the head. 2. Yet
 of these, *pellēs*, *stinis*, a comb: *furfur*, *fūris*, *hyan*, are
 masculines. 3. These are neuters, *Cadaver*, *vēris*, a car-
 cass: *verber*, *bēris*, a stripe: *iter*, *tinēris*, a journe: *uber*,
bēris, *coch*: *tuber*, *bēris*, a toad-stool: *uber*, *bēris*, a dug:
gingiber, *bēris*, *ginger*: *laser*, *seris*, the herb *Benjamin*:
cicer, *ceris*, a vetch: *piper*, *pēris*, *pepper*: *papāver*, *vēris*,
popple: *fiser*, *seris*, a parsnip: *filer*, *leris*, an oser.
 4. *Æquor*, *ōris*, the sea: *marmor*, *ōris*, a marble: and *ador*,
dōris, *wheat*, are neuters. 5. And so is *pecus*, cattle
 when it make's *pecōris*.

Doubtful.

III. **T**Hese nouns are of the Doubtful gender, *cār-*
do, *dinis*, the hinge of a door: *margo*, *ginis*, a
 margent: *cinis*, *nēris*, *ashes*: *obex*, *bicis*, a bolt:
pulvis,

Sic bacchar, findon, Gorgon, icon, & Amazon.

3. Gracula in as vel in is finita ; ut, Lampas, Iaspis.

Et cassis, cuspis. 4. Vox una pecus pecudis dans.

5. His forfex, pellex, carex, simul atque supellex,

Appendix, histrix, coxendix, adde filixque.

6. Halcyon, & mulier possunt hac classe reponi.

II. **E**st neutralia genus signans rem non animatam,

Neutra,

Nomen in a ; ut, probléma ; en, ut omen ; ar, ut jubar ;
ur dans,

Ut jecur ; us, ut onus ; put, ut occiput. 2. Attamen ex his

Mascula sunt pecten, furfur. 3. Sunt neutra cadaver,

Verber, iter, suber, pro fungo tuber, & uber,

Gingiber, & laser, cicor, & piper, atque papaver,

Et fiser, atque filer. 4. Neutra æquor, marmor, adórque!

Atque pecus, quando pecoris facit in genitivo.

I. **S**unt dubii generis cardo, margo, cinis, obex,

Dubii,

D

Pulvis,

pulvis, veris, dust : *adeps, dipis*, fat : *forceps, cipis*, a pair of tongs : *pumex, micis*, a pumice-stone : *ramex, micis*, burtness : *anas, natis*, a duck : *imbrix, bricis*, a gutter-tile : *culex, licis*, a gnat : *natrix, tricis*, a water-snake ; *onyx, nychis*, the nail of one's hand ; with its compounds, and *flex, licis*, a flint ; though these bee rather used as masculines.

Commons. IV. **T**Hese nouns bee of the Common of two-gender. *vigil, gilis*, a watchman ; *pugil, gilis*, a champion ; *exsul, sulis*, a banished man ; *praesul, sulis*, a superintendent ; *Homo, minis*, a man ; *nemo*, want's the Genitive case, and in the Dative make's *nemini*, no bodie ; *martyr, tyris*, a martyr ; *Ligur, guris*, one of Liguria ; *augur, guris*, a soothsayer ; *Arcas, cadis*, an Arcadian ; *Antistes, stitis*, a President ; *miles, litis*, a souldier ; *pedes, ditis*, a footman ; *interpretes, pretis*, an interpreter ; *comes, mitis*, a companion ; *hospes, stitis*, an host, or ghest ; *ales, litis*, a bird of wing ; *Prases, fidis*, a President ; *Princeps, cipis*, a Prince ; *auceps, cupis*, a fowler ; *eques, quitis*, an horseman ; *obses, fidis*, an hostage. 2. And many other nouns derived of verbs, as, *conjug, jugis*, an husband of a wife ; *judex, dicis*, a judg ; *vindex, dicis*, a revenger ; *opifex, ficis*, a workman ; and *aruspex, spicis*, a soothsayer

Chap. 10.

Of the Genders of Adjectives.

II. General Rules of Adjectives.

1. Of one termination.
2. Of two terminations.

I. **A**Djectives of one termination are of all the three genders ; as, *hic, hac, & hoc felix, licis* happy ; *hic, hac, & hoc audax, dacis*, bold.

II. Adjectives, if they have two terminations, the first is of the Common-of-two-gender ; the second is of the Neuter ; as, *hic & hac omnis, & hoc omne*, all.

III. Bu

Pulvis, adeps, forceps, pumex, ramex, anas, imbrex,

Adde culex, natrix, & onyx, cum prole, filéxque,

Quamvis hæc melius vult mascula diciet usus.

IV. *Communis generis sunt ista, vigil, pugil, exsul, Communia;*

Præsul, homo, nemo, martyr, Ligur, augur, & Arcas,

Antistes, miles, pedes, interpretes, comes, hospes,

Sic ales, præses, princeps, auceps, eques, obfes,

2. Atque alia à verbis quæ nomina multa creantur ;

Ut, conjux, judex, vindex, opifex, & aruspex.

Cap. 10.

De Generibus Adjectivorum.

I. *Adjectiva unam duntaxat habentia vocem,*

Ut felix, audax, retinent genus omne sub unâ.

II. *Sub geminâ si voce cadant, velut omnis, & omne ;*

Vox commune duûm prior est; Vox altera neutrum.

D 2

III. At

II. Regulae
generales
Adjectivorum
1. Unius
vocis.
2. Geminæ
vocis.

3. Of three terminations.

III. But if Adjectives do varie three terminations; as, *Sacer, sacra, sacrum, holte*; the first termination is Masculine, the second is feminine, and the third is Neuter.

Except
1. Adjectives
like Substantives.

I. But som are, by declining, almost Substantives, yet by nature and use, rather Adjectives: such are *Pauper, peris, poor*; *puer, beris, of ripe age*; *degener, generis, one that go's out of kinde*; *uber, beris, plentiful*; *dives, vitis, rich*; *locuples, plētis, wealthy*; *sospes, spītis, safe*; *comes, mitis, a companion*; *superstes, stitis, a survivor*, and som others, which due reading will teach.

2. Of Adjectives that are declined by *er* and *is*.

2. These Nouns have a certain manner of declining proper to themselves; *Campester, of the plain field*; *volucer, swift in flight*; *celeber, famous*; *celer, swift*; *saluber, wholesom*: To which add *Pedester, of a footman*; *equester, of an horseman*; *acer, sharp*; *paluster, of a fen*; *alacer, cheerful*; *sylvester, of a wood*. And these you shall decline thus: *Hic celer, hac celeris, hoc celere, swift*: or, *Hic & Hac celeris, & hoc celere, swift, &c.*

Chap. II.

Of the first Declension.

There bee
five Declensions.

D Declension is the variation of a word by Cases. There bee five declensions of nouns.

A Noun is known of what Declension it is by the ending of the Genitive case singular; for the Ge-

nitive case of the	1 st	2 ^d	3 ^d	4 th	5 th
end's in	a	i	is	us	ei

III. At si tres variant voces, facer, ut sacra, sacrum ;

Vox prima est mas, altera femina, tertia neutrum.

1. At sunt quæ flexu propè Substantiva vocares ;

Adjectiva tamen naturâ usque reperta.

Talia sunt pauper, puber, cum degener, uber,

Et dives, locuples, sospes, comes, atque superstes ;

Cum paucis aliis quæ lectio iusta docebit.

2. Hæc proprium quendam sibi flexum adsciscere gaudent,

Campester, volucer, céleber, celer, atque saluber :

Junge pedester, equester, & acer, junge paluster,

Ac alacer, sylvester : At hæc tu sic variabis.

Hic celer, hæc céleris, neutro hoc célere ; aut aliter sic,

Hic atq; hæc céleris, rursus hoc célere est tibi Neutrum.

Adjectiva
trium vo-
cum, in
prima sunt
Masculini,
in secunda
fœminini, in
tertia neu-
trius gene-
ris.

Excipe
1. Adjectiva
propè Sub-
stantiva.

2. Adjectiva
quæ per er
& is vari-
antur.

Cap. 11.

De Declinatione primâ.

DDeclinatio est variatio dictionis per Casus.

Sunt autem Declinationes nominum quinque. Declinationes sunt quinque.
Dignoscitur nomen cujus sit Declinationis ex-
terminatione genitivi singularis ; definit enim

genitivus	1 ^{ta}	2 ^{da}	3 ^{tia}	4 ^{ta}	5 ^{ta}
in	a	i	u	us	ei

The Latine Grammar.

The Genitive case is formed of the Nominative, (which is the first word) by changing the termination ; and other cases are formed of the Genitive.

The Vocative, in the singular number, is, for the most part, like the Nominative ; and in the plural alwaies.

Nouns of the neuter gender have the Nominative, the Accusative, and Vocative cases alike in both numbers ; which three cases end in *a* in the plural.

The Dative and Ablative plural are alwaies alike.

The Genitive plural, in many words, admit's a Syncope, i.e. the loss of a middle letter or syllable.

Nouns of the first declension are declined like *Musa*,

The first Declension is of Latine nouns (for the most part Feminines) not encreasing, ending in *a* ; which are declined like *Musa*, a song.

The terminations of the first Declension are	Singularly in the	<div> <div> Nominative Genitive Dative Accusative Vocative Ablative </div> <div> } case. </div> </div>	<i>a.</i> <i>æ.</i> <i>æ.</i> <i>am.</i> <i>a.</i> <i>â.</i>	The Example, or type thereof is	<i>Musa.</i> <i>Musæ.</i> <i>Musæ.</i> <i>Musam.</i> <i>Musa.</i> <i>Musâ.</i>
	Plurally in the	<div> <div> Nominative Genitive Dative Accusative Vocative Ablative </div> <div> } case, </div> </div>	<i>æ.</i> <i>arum.</i> <i>is.</i> <i>as.</i> <i>æ.</i> <i>is.</i>		<i>Musæ.</i> <i>Musarum.</i> <i>Musis.</i> <i>Musas.</i> <i>Musæ.</i> <i>Musis.</i>

Genitivus fit à Nominativo, (qui est prima vox) mutatâ terminatione; alii autem casus à Genitivo formantur.

Vocativus singularis p'erunque similis est Nominativo; pluralis semper.

Nomina neutrius generis habent nominativum, accusativum, & vocativum similes in utroque numero; qui tres casus in plurali desinunt in *a*.

Dativus, & Ablativus plurales semper sunt similes.

Genitivus pluralis in complurimis Synopen admittit.

Prima Declinatio est nominum Latinorum (plerunque fœmininorum) non crescentium in *a*; quæ variantur sicut *Musa*.

Nomina
Primæ va-
riantur ut
Musa.

Primæ Declinationis terminationes sunt	Singulariter,	Nominativo	casu	<i>a.</i>	Ejus Exemplum five Typus est	<i>Musa.</i>
		Genitivo		<i>æ.</i>		<i>Musæ.</i>
		Dativo		<i>æ.</i>		<i>Musæ.</i>
		Accusativo		<i>am.</i>		<i>Musam.</i>
		Vocativo		<i>a.</i>		<i>Musa.</i>
		Ablativo		<i>â.</i>		<i>Musâ.</i>
	Pluraliter,	Nominativo	casu	<i>æ.</i>		<i>Musæ.</i>
		Genitivo		<i>arum.</i>		<i>Musarum.</i>
		Dativo		<i>is.</i>		<i>Musis.</i>
		Accusativo		<i>as.</i>		<i>Musas.</i>
		Vocativo		<i>æ.</i>		<i>Musæ.</i>
		Ablativo		<i>is.</i>		<i>Musis.</i>

The Latine Grammar.

As is found in the Genitive case singular in imitation of the Greeks ; as, *Pater-familias*, **the good man of the house**.

The antients dissolved *a* into *aī*; as, *aulai* for *aulæ*.

Filia, *nata*, *dea*, *equa*, with some few others, make their Dative and Ablative plural in *abus*, to distinguish them from their Masculines, *filius*, *natus*, *Deus*, *equus*, which follow the form of the second Declension.

This Declension is also of Greek Nouns, viz. Masculines in *as*, and *es*, and Feminines in *a* and *e*.

Nouns in *as* and *a* make their Accusative in *am*, and *an* sometimes in the Poets ; as,

Nom.	Gen.	Dat.	Accus.	Voc.	Abl.
<i>Æneas.</i>	<i>Æneæ.</i>	<i>Æneæ.</i>	<i>Æneam, an.</i>	<i>Æneæ.</i>	<i>Æneâ.</i>
<i>Maia.</i>	<i>Mais.</i>	<i>Maia.</i>	<i>Maiam, an.</i>	<i>Maia.</i>	<i>Maia.</i>

Greek words in the plural number are declined like Latine.

Es make's in the Accusative case *en*, in the Vocative and Ablative *e*, or *a*.

Nom.	Gen.	Dat.	Acc.	Voc. or Ablat.
<i>Anchises.</i>	<i>Anchisæ.</i>	<i>Anchisæ.</i>	<i>Anchisen.</i>	<i>Anchise, vel Anchisæ.</i>

E makes the Genitive in *es*, the Dative in *e*, the Accusative in *en*, the Vocative and Ablative in *e* ; as,

Nom.	Gen.	Dat.	Accus.	Voc. & Abl.
<i>Penelope.</i>	<i>Penelopes.</i>	<i>Penelope.</i>	<i>Penelopen.</i>	<i>Penelope.</i>

Some add hereunto Hebrew words in *am*; as, *Adam*, *Adæ*, which are better reduced to the second Declension by putting to *us*; as, *Adamus*, *Adamus*, *Adam.*

As in Genitivo reperitur ad Græcorum imitationem; ut, *Pater-familias*.

Prisci dissolvebant *a* in *ai*; ut, *aulai* pro *aula*.

Filia, nata, dea, equa, cum paucis aliis Dativum & Ablativum pluralem mittunt in *abus*, ut distinguantur à suis Masculinis, *Filius, navis, Deus, equus*, quæ sequuntur formam secundæ Declinationis.

Est etiam hæc Declinatio Græcorum Masculinorum in *as*, & *es*, & Fœmininorum in *a*, & *e*.

As, & *a*, Accusativum *am* faciunt, & *an* aliquando apud Poëtas; ut,

Nom.	Gen.	Dat.	Acc.	Voc.	Ablat.
<i>Æneas.</i>	<i>Æneæ.</i>	<i>Æneæ.</i>	<i>Æneam, an.</i>	<i>Ænea.</i>	<i>Æneâ.</i>
<i>Maia.</i>	<i>Mais.</i>	<i>Mais.</i>	<i>Maïam, an.</i>	<i>Maia.</i>	<i>Maiâ.</i>

Græca in plurali declinantur ut Latina.

Es in Accusativo *en* sumit, in Vocativo vel Ablativo *e*, vel *a*; ut,

Nom.	Gen.	Dat.	Acc.	Voc. & Ablat.
<i>Anchises.</i>	<i>Anchisæ.</i>	<i>Anchisæ.</i>	<i>Anchisen.</i>	<i>Anchise, vel Anchisâ.</i>

E Genitivum in *es* mittit, Dativum in *e*, Accusativum in *en*, Vocativum & Ablativum in *e*; ut,

Nom.	Gen.	Dat.	Accus.	Voc & Abl.
<i>Penelope.</i>	<i>Penelopes.</i>	<i>Penelope.</i>	<i>Penelopen.</i>	<i>Fenelope.</i>

Sunt qui huc addunt Hebræa quædam in *am*; ut, *Ad-m, Ada*, quæ tamen melius ad secundam Declinationem reducuntur, addendo *us*; ut, *Adâmus, Adâmi*.

Chap. 12.

Of the second Declension.

Of the second like
Magister,
Dominus, or
Regnum.

THE second Declension is (for the most part) of Masculines in *us* as *Magister*, a Master. *Dominus*, a Lord. Or of Neuters in *um* as, *Regnum*, a kingdom.

The Terminations of this Declension are	Singularly	Nom.	Gen.	Dat.	Acc.	Voc.	Abl.	The Examples of Types of it are	Magister.	Dominus.	Regnum.
		<i>r,us,um.</i>	<i>i.</i>	<i>o.</i>	<i>um.</i>	<i>r,e,um.</i>	<i>o.</i>		<i>Magister.</i>	<i>Dominus.</i>	<i>Regnum.</i>
									<i>Magistri.</i>	<i>Domini.</i>	<i>Regni.</i>
									<i>Magistro.</i>	<i>Domino.</i>	<i>Regno.</i>
									<i>Magistrum.</i>	<i>Dominum.</i>	<i>Regnum.</i>
									<i>Magister.</i>	<i>Domine.</i>	<i>Regnum.</i>
									<i>Magistro.</i>	<i>Domino.</i>	<i>Regno.</i>
The Terminations of this Declension are	Plurally	Nom.	Gen.	Dat.	Acc.	Voc.	Abl.	The Examples of Types of it are	Magistri.	Domini.	Regna.
		<i>i,a.</i>	<i>orum.</i>	<i>is.</i>	<i>os,a.</i>	<i>i,a.</i>	<i>is.</i>		<i>Magistri.</i>	<i>Domini.</i>	<i>Regna.</i>
									<i>Magistorum.</i>	<i>Dominorum.</i>	<i>Regnorum.</i>
									<i>Magistris.</i>	<i>Dominis.</i>	<i>Regnis.</i>
									<i>Magistros.</i>	<i>Dominos.</i>	<i>Regna.</i>
									<i>Magistri.</i>	<i>Domini.</i>	<i>Regna.</i>
									<i>Magistris.</i>	<i>Dominis.</i>	<i>Regnis.</i>

When the Nominative endeth in *us*, the Vocative endeth in *e*; but *Deus* GOD, maketh *ô Deus*, and *Filius* a son maketh *ô fili*.

Proper names of Men in *ius* make their Vocative in *i*; as Nom. *Georgius*, *George*; Voc. *ô Georgi*.

Agnus, a lamb; *lucus*, a grove; *chirus*, a quire; *fluvius*, a river, do make their Vocative case in *e* and in *us*.

	Nom.	Gen.	Dat.	Acc.	Voc.	Abl.
Wee read in	<i>Divi</i>	<i>Divorum.</i>	<i>Divis.</i>	<i>Divos.</i>	<i>Divi.</i>	<i>Divis.</i>
the Plural	<i>Deorum.</i>	<i>Deis.</i>	<i>Deos.</i>	<i>Dii.</i>	<i>Dii.</i>	<i>Dii.</i>
Number	<i>Deum.</i>	<i>Dii.</i>	<i>Deos.</i>	<i>Dii.</i>	<i>Dii.</i>	<i>Dii.</i>

gods.
Greek

The Latine Grammar.

Greek Nouns of this Declension have three Terminations : *em* of the Masculine, *es* of the Masculine and Feminine, and *on* of the Neuter Gender.

Es make's the Genitive case in *es*, or *es*, the Dative in *es*, the Accusative in *ea*, the Vocative in *eu*, the Ablative in *eo*.

Nom.	Gen.	Dat.	Accus.	Vocat.	Ablat.
Orpheus.	Orphet. pheos	Orphet.	Orphea.	Orphen.	Orpheo.

O, make's the Accusative case in *on*, as, Nom. *Delos*, Gen. *Delis*, Dat. *Delo*, Accus. *Delon*, Voc. *Dele*, Ablat. *Delo*.

But Attick nouns in *os* make the Genitive in *o*; as, *Androgeos*, *Androgeo*, &c. And nouns contracted in *us* make their Vocative in *u*; as, *Oedipus*, *Oedipu*.

On is declined like other Neuters; as, Nom. *Iliou*, Gen. *Ilii*, Dat. *Ilio*, Accus. *Iliou*, Voc. *Iliou*, Ablat. *Ilio*.

Chap. 13. Of the third Declension.

Of the
Third, like
Lapis, or
Caput.

THE third Declension is very divers. For it contain's all Genders, and (at the least) eleven Terminations in the Nominative case singular : in *a*, *c*, *e*, *i*, *l*, *n*, *o*, *r*, *s*, *t*, *x*.

The Terminations of this Declension are	Singularly,	Nom.	divers,	The Examples, or Types of it are	<i>Lapis.</i>	<i>Caput.</i>
		Gen.	<i>is.</i>		<i>Lapidis.</i>	<i>Capitis.</i>
		Dat.	<i>i.</i>		<i>Lapidi.</i>	<i>Capiti.</i>
		Accus.	<i>em.</i>		<i>Lapidem.</i>	<i>Caput.</i>
		Voc.	divers,		<i>Lapis.</i>	<i>Caput.</i>
		Ablat.	<i>e.</i>		<i>Lapide.</i>	<i>Capite.</i>
	Plurally,	Nom.	<i>es.</i>		<i>Lapides.</i>	<i>Capita.</i>
		Gen.	<i>um.</i>		<i>Lapidum.</i>	<i>Capitum.</i>
		Dat.	<i>ibus.</i>		<i>Lapidibus.</i>	<i>Capitibus.</i>
		Accus.	<i>es.</i>		<i>Lapides.</i>	<i>Capita.</i>
		Vocat.	<i>es.</i>		<i>Lapides.</i>	<i>Capita.</i>
		Ablat.	<i>ibus.</i>		<i>Lapidibus.</i>	<i>Capitibus.</i>

The

Nomina Græca hujus Declinationis tres habent terminationes ; viz. *eus* Masculini , *as* Masculini & Feminini , & *on* Neutrus :
Eus Genitivum facit in *ei*, vel *eos*, Dativum in *ei*, Accusativum in *ea*, Vocativum in *eu*, Ablativum in *eo*.

Nom.	Gen.	Dat.	Accus.	Vocat.	Ablat.
<i>Orpheus.</i>	<i>Orpheï, pheos.</i>	<i>Orpheï.</i>	<i>Orpheæ.</i>	<i>Orpheu.</i>	<i>Orpheo.</i>

Os Accusativum in *on* mittit ; ut, Nom. *Delos*, Gen. *Deli*, Dat. *Delo*, Acc. *Delon*, Voc. *Dele*, Abl. *Delo*.
 Sed Attica in *as*, Genitivum in *o* mittunt ; *Androgeos*, *Androgeos, &c.* Et contracta in *us* formant Vocativum in *u* ; ut *Oedipus*, *Oedipu*.
On formatur more aliorum Neutorum ; ut, Nom. *Ilion*, Gen. *Ilî*, Dat. *Ilîo*, Acc. *Ilîon*, Voc. *Ilîon*, Abl. *Ilîo*.

Cap. 13. De tertia Declinatione.

Tertia Declinatio est admodum varia. Continet ^{Tertia, aut} ~~Tertia~~ enim omnia genera , & undecim (ad minimum) ^{Lapis, aut} ~~Lapis~~ Terminationes in Nominativo singulari : *a*, *c*, *e*, ^{Caput.} ~~Caput~~, *l*, *n*, *o*, *r*, *s*, *t*, *x*.

Terminationes hujus Declinationis sunt	Singular.	Nom.	variæ.	Ejus Exemplar, five Typi sunt	Lapis.	Caput.
		Gen.	<i>is.</i>		Lapidis.	Capitis.
Plural.		Dat.	<i>i.</i>		Lapidi.	Capiti.
		Accus.	<i>em.</i>		Lapidem.	Caput.
		Vocat.	variæ.		Lapis.	Caput.
		Abl.	<i>e.</i>		Lapide.	Capite.
		Nom.	<i>es.</i>		Lapides.	Capita.
		Gen.	<i>um.</i>		Lapidum.	Capitum.
		Dat.	<i>ibus.</i>		Lapidibus.	Capitibus.
		Accus.	<i>es.</i>		Lapides.	Capita.
		Vocat.	<i>es.</i>		Lapides.	Capita.
		Ablat.	<i>ibus.</i>		Lapidibus.	Capitibus.

Quo-

What
Nouns
make the
Accusative
in *im*.

The Accusative cases of some words are declined onely in *im*; as, *vis*, **Strength**; *ravis*, **hoarseness**; *tis*, **thirst**; *tussis*, **a cough**; *maguderis*, **the stalk of the herb Benjamin**; *Charybdis*, **a gulf**; and *amuffis*, **Carpenter's line**; to which we may add the names of Rivers; as, *Araris*, **the Soan in France**; *Tybris*, **Cybits by Rome**.

in *im* and
em.

Some make their Accusative in *im* and *em* indifferently; as, *Pelvis*, **a basin**; *turris*, **a tower**; *buris*, **a plow=trill**; *puppis*, **a poop of a ship**; *torquis*, **a chain to wear about one's neck**; *securus*, **an ax**; *restis*, **a rope**; *febris*, **an Ague**; *clavis*, **a key**; *bipennis*, **a two=bl**; *aqualis*, **a water=po**; *navis*, **a ship**.

The Ablat.
in *i*.

Their Ablative ends in *i* onely, whose Accusative ends onely in *im*; as, *tussim*, Abl. *tussi*.

Names of Months in *er* and *is*, do make their Ablative in *i* onely; as, *September*, Abl. *bris*; *Aprilis*, Abl. *li*.

Neuters, ending in *al*, *ar*, and *e*, for the most part make their Ablative in *i*;

as, { *Vestigal*, Abl. *li*, toll
 Calcar, Abl. *ari*, a spur.
 Rete, Abl. *ti*, a net: } For *Rete* in the Ablative, is of *Retis*.

Yet these Nouns in *ar*, and *e*, keep *e* in their Ablative case; as, *Far*, **bread=co**; *hepar*, **the liver**; *jubar*, **the sun=beam**; *neſtar*, **sweet wine**; *gauſape*, **a frize**; *praſepe*, **a ſtall**; *Soraſte*, **a hill in Italie**; *Præneſte*, **the citie Peleſtrina**; *Reate*, **the citie Reati in Italie**.

Adjectives, having the Nominative common in *is*, or *er*, and the Neuter in *e*, make their Ablative in *i* onely; as, *Fortis*, *ti*, **Strong**; *Acer*, or *Acris*, *cri*, **Sharp**.

Nouns, which take on them the nature of Adjectives, make their Ablative case for the most part in *i*; as, *Sodalis*, *li*.

Except

Quorundam Accusativi flectuntur tantum in *im*; Quæ nomina formant Accus. in *im*;

Vim, ravim, fūim, tūssim;

Maguderim, Charybdim, & amūssim;

Quibus addas & Fluviorum nomina; ut, *Ararim, Tybrim*.

Quædam Accusativos flectunt in *im*, & *em* com- in *im* & *em* muniter; ut,

Pelvis, turris, buris;

Puppis, torquis, securis;

Restis, febris, clavis;

Bipennis, aqualis, navis;

Quorum Accusativus in *im* tantum definit, iis Ab. Ablat. in *i*; lativus exit in *i*; ut, *tūssim*, Abl. *tūssi*.

Mensium nomina in *er*, & *is*, Ablativum in *i* solum mittunt; ut, *September*, Abl. *bri*; *Aprilis*, Abl. *Aprili*.

Neutra desinentia in *al*, *ar*, & *e*, Ablativum magna ex parte mittunt in *i*;

ut, $\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{Vestiga', Abl. li.} \\ \text{Calcar, Abl. ari.} \\ \text{Rete, Abl. ti.} \end{array} \right\} \text{Nam Rete in Ablativo, est à Retis.}$

Hæc tamen in *ar* & *e*, retinent *e* in Ablativo: *Far, hepar, jubar, nectiar, gausape, prasepe, Soracte, Præneste, Reate*.

Adiectiva, quæ Nominativum communem in *is*, vel *er*, & *e* Neutrum habent, Ablativum mittunt in *i*; ut, *Fortis*, *forti*; *Acer*, vel *Acis*, *acri*.

Quæ Adiectivorum naturam induunt, majori ex parte mittunt Ablativum in *i*; ut, *Sodalis*, *li*.

Excipe

Except Proper names; as, *Clemens, tis, Clemens*.
Nouns, whose Accusative cases end in *em* or *im*,
in *e* and *i*, make their Ablative in *e* and *i*; as, *Puppi*, Accu-
pem vel pim, Abl. *pe vel pi*.

Par also, with its compounds, make's both *e* and *i*.
Also nouns of the Comparative degree; as, *melior*,
better; and the rest of the Adjectives, except those
above-mentioned in *er* or *is*. But *Pauper*, **poor**;
degener, **out of kinde**; *uber*, **plentiful**; *sospes*, **safe**
and *hospes*, **an host**; make their Ablative in *e* onely.

Som Substantives; as, *Ignis*, **fire**; *amnis*, **a river**;
anguis, **a snake**; *supellex*, **household-stuff**; *vestis*, **a**
coat; *unguis*, **a nail**, or **hoof**: Gentiles; as, *Ar-*
pinds, **one of Arpinum**; and Verbals in *trix*; as, *Victrix*,
a Conqueress, make their Ablative in *e* and *i*.

Nom-plural
in *ia*.

Neuters, whose Ablative end's in *i*, or in *e* and
i, make their Nominative plural in *ia*; as, *Fortis*, **tia**,
strong; *felix*, **licia**, **happy**.

Except Comparatives; as, *fortiora*, **stronger**: but
Plus make's *plura* and *pluria*, **more**.

Es & eis.

Som Nouns make their Nominative & Accusative
plural in *es* or *eis* the diphthong; as, *Omnes*, or *omnes*,
all; and *eis* is sometimes contracted into *is*; as, *Sardis*.

Gen. in *ium*.

Of Ablatives in *i* onely, or in *e* or *i*, the Genitive
case plural end's in *ium*; as, *utili*, *utilium*, **profitable**;
puppi vel pe, *puppium*. Except Comparatives; as, *meliorum*.

And	{	<i>Supplicum,</i>	} of	<i>Supplex</i> , a suppliant.
		<i>Complicum,</i>		<i>Complex</i> , a partner.
		<i>Strigilum,</i>		<i>Strigil</i> , an host-comb.
		<i>Artificum,</i>		<i>Artifex</i> , an artificer.
		<i>Veterum,</i>		<i>Vetus</i> , old.
		<i>Vigilum,</i>		<i>Vigil</i> , a watchman.
		<i>Memorum,</i>		<i>Memor</i> , mindful.
		<i>Inopum,</i>		<i>Inops</i> , poor.
		<i>Pugilum,</i>		<i>Pugil</i> , a champion.

But *plus* make's *plurium*.

When

Excipe propria ; ut, *Clemens, &c.*

Nomina quorum Accusativi per *em* & *im* fini- in *e* & *i* sunt, formant Ablativos in *e* & *i* ; ut, *Puppis*, Acc. *puppem* vel *pim*, Abl. *pe* vel *pi*.

Par, quoque cum compositis, *e* & *i* habet. Comparativa etiam, ut *melior*, & reliqua Adjectiva, præter ea quæ suprà dicta sunt in *er* & *is*. Sed *Pauper*, *degener*, *uber*, *solpes*, *hospes*, in *e* tantum faciunt Ablativum.

Substantiva quædam, ut,

Ignis, *amnis*, *anguis*,

Supellex, *vestis*, *unguis* :

Gentilia ; ut, *Arpinās* : & Verbalia in *trix* ; ut, *Viatrix*, Ablativum mittunt in *e* & *i*.

Neutra, quorum Ablativus exit in *i*, vel in *e* & *i*, Nom-pl. Nominativum pluralem mittunt in *ia* ; ut, *fortis*, *for-* in *ia*. *ia* ; *felix*, *felicia*.

Præter Comparativa ; ut, *fortiora* ; *Plus* habet *plura* & *pluria*.

Nonnulla Nominativum & Accusativum pluralem mittunt per *es* & *eis* diphthongum ; ut, *Omnes* vel *omneis*. *Ei* & *ei*. *Eis* autem aliquando contrahitur in *is* ; ut, *Sardis*.

Ex Ablativis in *i* tantum, vel in *e* & *i*, ut pluraliter Genitivus in *ium* ; ut, *utili uti-* *ium* ; *puppi* vel *puppe*, *puppium*. Præter Com- *Gen. in ium*. parativa ; ut, *meliorum*.

Item præter ista ;

Supplicum, *complicum*, *strigilum* ;

Artificum, *veterum*, *vigilum* ;

Memorum, *inopum*, *pugilum*.

At *plius*, plurium format.

E

Quando

The Latine Grammar.

When the Nominative cases singular end with two Consonants, the Genitive plural end in *ium* as, *Pars, Partium*.

Except	{	<i>Hyemum,</i>	} of	<i>Hyems, winter.</i>
		<i>Principum,</i>		<i>Princeps, a Prince.</i>
		<i>Forcipum,</i>		<i>Forceps, a pair of tongs.</i>
		<i>Municipum,</i>		<i>Municeps, a free-man.</i>
		<i>Inopum,</i>		<i>Inops, poor.</i>
		<i>Cœlibum,</i>		<i>Cœlebs, a single-man.</i>
		<i>Clientum,</i>		<i>Client, a Client.</i>
		<i>Participum,</i>		<i>Particeps, a Partner.</i>

When like syllables are found in the Nominative and Genitive cases singular, the Genitive case plural end's in *ium*; as, *collis, a hill*, make's *collium*.

To which add,	{	<i>Virium,</i>	} of	<i>Vis, strength.</i>
		<i>Salium,</i>		<i>Sal, salt.</i>
		<i>Ditium,</i>		<i>Dis, rich.</i>

{		<i>Manium,</i>	} of	<i>Manes, spirits.</i>
		<i>Penatium,</i>		<i>Penates, household-gods.</i>
		<i>Litium,</i>		<i>Lis, controverſie.</i>

Yet except,	{	<i>Vatum,</i>	} of	<i>Vates, a Poet.</i>
		<i>Juvenum,</i>		<i>Juvenis, a youth.</i>
		<i>Canum,</i>		<i>Canis, a dog.</i>

{		<i>Opum,</i>	} of	<i>Opes, wealth.</i>
		<i>Apum,</i>		<i>Apes, a Bee.</i>
		<i>Panum,</i>		<i>Panis, bread.</i>

As, a pound, make's *assium*; *mas, a male*, *marium*; *vas-vadis, a surety*, *vadium*; *nox, night*, *noxium*; *snow*, *nivium*; *os, a bone*, *ossium*; *faux, a jaw*, *faucium*; *mus, a mouse*, *murium*; *caro, flesh*, *carnium*; *cor, heart*, *cordium*.

Ales, a bird make's *alituum*; and *cœlites, the heavenly inhabitants* *cœlitium*, by taking to them *u.*

Bon

Quando Nominativi singulares duabus consonantibus finiuntur, genitivi plurales exeunt in *ium*; ut, *Pars, partium*.

Excipe,

Hyemum, principum, forcipum, municipum;

Inopum, cælibum, clientum, participantum.

Ubi in Nominativis & Genitivis singularibus reperiuntur pares syllabæ, Genitivus pluralis exit in *ium*; ut, *Collis, collium*.

His adde;

Virium, salium, ditium,

Manium, penatium, litium.

Excipe tamen,

Vatum, juvenum, canum;

Opum, apum, panum.

As format *assium*; *mas, marium*; *vas, vadis, vadium*; *nox, noxium*; *nix, nivium*; *os, ossium*; *faux, faucium*; *mas, murium*; *caro, carniū*; *cor, cordium*.

Ales facit *alium*; & *cælitæ, cælitum, assumen-* *Hum.*

Bovum of *bos bovis*, an *ox*, is an irregular word, as also *bobus* and *bubus*, for *bovibus*.

Orum &
ium.

The names of Feasts, which are onely plural, make their Genitive case sometimes in *orum*; as, *Agonalia, liorum*: sometimes in *ium*; as, *Floralia, lium*: and sometimes both in *orum*, and *ium*; as, *Saturnalia, liorum*, and *lium*.

*Abl. in is &
ibus*.

Neuters singular in *a* make the Dative and Ablative plural in *is* or *ibus*; as, *Problema, tis, vel matibus*. So also *Quinquatria, tris, vel tribus*.

Words derived from the Greek, when they are declined after their own manner, imitate these examples.

Sing.	Nom.	Gen.	Dat.	Acc.	V.	Abl.
<i>Titan.</i>	<i>an.</i>	<i>anos.</i>	<i>ani.</i>	<i>ana.</i>	<i>an.</i>	<i>ane.</i>
<i>Arcas.</i>	<i>as.</i>	<i>ados.</i>	<i>adi.</i>	<i>ada.</i>	<i>as.</i>	<i>ade.</i>
<i>Phyllis.</i>	<i>is.</i>	<i>idos.</i>	<i>idi.</i>	<i>ida.</i>	<i>i.</i>	<i>ide.</i>
<i>Genesis.</i>	<i>is.</i>	<i>is, eos.</i>	<i>i.</i>	<i>im, in</i>	<i>i.</i>	<i>i.</i>
<i>Opus.</i>	<i>us.</i>	<i>untos.</i>	<i>unti.</i>	<i>unta.</i>	<i>u.</i>	<i>unte.</i>
<i>Tethys.</i>	<i>ys.</i>	<i>yos.</i>	<i>yi.</i>	<i>yn</i>	<i>y.</i>	<i>y.</i>
<i>Dido.</i>	<i>o.</i>	<i>as.</i>	<i>o.</i>	<i>o.</i>	<i>o.</i>	<i>o.</i>
<i>Achilles.</i>	<i>es.</i>	<i>eos.</i>	<i>i.</i>	<i>ea.</i>	<i>e.</i>	<i>e.</i>

Some of
these make
the Geni-
tive plural
in *is* & *ium*.

Chap. 14.

Of the fourth Declension.

Of the
fourth like
Manus or
Cornu.

THe fourth Declension hath onely two terminations in the Nominative case singular,

{ *us*, Masculine and Feminine, } as { *Manus*.
{ *u*, Neuter, } { *Cornu*.

The

Bovum à *bos bovis*, anomalum est, ut etiam *bobus* vel *bubus*, pro *bovibus*.

Festorum nomina quæ tantùm pluralia sunt, Genitivum aliquando in *orum* ; ut, *Agonalia, liorum* : *orum & ium.* aliquando in *ium* ; ut, *Floralia, lium* : aliquando tam in *orum*, quàm in *ium* mittunt ; ut, *Saturnalia, liorum, & lium.*

Neutra Græca singularia in *a*, faciunt Dativum & Abl. in *is* Ablativum pluralem in *is* & *ibus* ; ut, *Problema, matibus*, vel *matibus*. Sic etiam *Quinquatria, triis*, vel *tribus*.

Græco fonte derivata, quando juxta linguæ suæ morem variantur, hæc exempla imitantur.

Sing.	N.	Gen.	Dat.	Acc.	Voc.	Abl.	
<i>Titan.</i>	<i>an.</i>	<i>anos.</i>	<i>ani.</i>	<i>ana.</i>	<i>an.</i>	<i>ane.</i>	
<i>Arcas.</i>	<i>as.</i>	<i>ados.</i>	<i>adi.</i>	<i>ada.</i>	<i>as.</i>	<i>ade.</i>	
<i>Phyllis.</i>	<i>is.</i>	<i>idos.</i>	<i>idi.</i>	<i>ida.</i>	<i>i.</i>	<i>ide.</i>	
<i>Genesis.</i>	<i>is.</i>	<i>is, eos.</i>	<i>i.</i>	<i>im, in</i>	<i>i.</i>	<i>i.</i>	Horum nonnulla formant Genitivum pluralem in <i>orum</i> vel <i>ium</i> .
<i>Opus.</i>	<i>us.</i>	<i>untos.</i>	<i>unti.</i>	<i>unta.</i>	<i>us.</i>	<i>unte.</i>	
<i>Tethys.</i>	<i>ys.</i>	<i>yas.</i>	<i>yi.</i>	<i>yn.</i>	<i>y.</i>	<i>y.</i>	
<i>Dido.</i>	<i>o.</i>	<i>as.</i>	<i>o.</i>	<i>o.</i>	<i>o.</i>	<i>o.</i>	
<i>Achilles.</i>	<i>es.</i>	<i>eos.</i>	<i>i.</i>	<i>ea.</i>	<i>e.</i>	<i>e.</i>	

Cap. 14.

De quarta Declinatione.

Quarta Declinatio duas tantùm sortitur terminationes in Recto singulari, *Quarta, ut Manus, Cornu.*
 { Masculinorum & Fœminorum in *us* } ut { *Manus: Cornu.*
 { Neutorum in *u*, }

The Terminations of this Declension are	Singularly,	Nom.	us, u.	The Examples, or Types of it are	Manus.	Cornu.
		Gen.	ûs, u.		Manûs.	Cornu.
		Dat.	ui, u.		Manui.	Cornu.
		Acc.	um, u.		Manum.	Cornu.
		Voc.	as, u.		Manus.	Cornu.
		Abl.	u u		Manu.	Cornu.
	Plurally,	Nom.	us, ua.		Manus.	Cornua.
		Gen.	uum.		Manuum.	Cornuum.
		Dat.	ibus.		Manibus.	Cornibus.
		Acc.	us, ua.		Manus.	Cornua.
		Voc.	us, ua.		Manus.	Cornua.
		Abl.	ibus.		Manibus.	Cornibus.

Antiently the Genitive singular ended in *i*, and *ûs*, thence the Antients said *fructi* for *fructûs*; and *anûs* for *anûs*.

The most holie name *Jesum*, make's *Jesum* in the Accusative, and in other cases *Jesu*.

The Dative case hath sometimes *u*; as, *Fructu* for *fructui*.

These words make their Dative and Ablative plural in *ibus*; viz. *Artus*, a joint: *arcus*, a bow: *tribus*, a stock: *acus*, a needle: *ficus*, a fig: *specus*, a hole: *quercus*, an oak: *lacus*, a lake: *partus*, young: *vern*, a spitt: *genu* a knee.

All other nouns make *ibus*.

Chap. 15.

Of the fifth Declension.

Of the Fifth,
like *Facies*.

THe fifth Declension hath one onely termination in *es*; as, *Facies*, a face.

All nouns of this Declension are Feminines; except *Dies*, a date, and *Meridies*, noon-date.

Nom.

Terminationes hujus Declinationis sunt	Singulariter,	N.	us, u.	Ejus Exemplaria, five Typi sunt	Marus.	Cornu.
		G.	ūs, u.		Manūs.	Cornu.
		D.	ui, u.		Manui.	Cornu.
		Ac.	um, u.		Manum.	Cornu.
		V.	us, u.		Manus.	Cornu.
		Ab.	u, u.		Manu.	Cornu.
	Pluraliter,	N.	us, ua.		Manus.	Cornua.
		G.	uum.		Manuum.	Cornuum.
		D.	ibus.		Manibus.	Cornibus.
		Ac.	us, ua.		Manus.	Cornua.
		Vo	us, ua.		Manus.	Cornua.
		Ab.	ibus.		Manibus.	Cornibus.

Olim Genitivus singularis exhibat in *i* & *uis*; in-
dè Veteres dixerunt *fructi* pro *fructūs*, & *anni* pro
annūs.

Sacro-sanctum nomen *Jesus* habet in Accusati-
vo *Jesum*, in reliquis verò casibus *Jesu*.

Dativus interdum *u* habet; ut, *fructu* pro *fructui*.

Hæc Dativum & Ablativum pluralem in *ibus* for-
mant; viz. *Artus, arcus, tribus, acus*;
ficus, specus, quercus, lacus;
partus, veru, genu.

Cætera omnia in *ibus*.

Cap. 15.

De quinta Declinatione.

Quinta Declinatio unicam habet terminatio-
nem in *es*; ut, *Facies*. Quintæ, ut
Facies.

Omnia nomina hujus Declinationis sunt scæmini-
na exceptis *Dies*, & *meridies*.

E 4

Termi-

The Terminations of this Declension are	Singularly,			Their Example, or Type is	The Genitive singular once ended in <i>es</i> , <i>ii</i> , and <i>e</i> ; & the Dative sometimes in <i>e</i> . Some nouns of the third Declension were declined after this; as, <i>plebs</i> , <i>plebei</i> . No nouns of this Declension have the Gen. Dat. and Ablative plural, except, <i>Res</i> , a thing; <i>species</i> , a kind; <i>facies</i> , a face; <i>acies</i> , an edge; <i>dies</i> , a day; <i>meridies</i> , mid-day, or noon.
	Nom.	Gen.	Dat.		
Plurally,	<i>es.</i>	<i>ei.</i>	<i>ei.</i>	<i>Facies.</i>	
	<i>ei.</i>	<i>ei.</i>	<i>ei.</i>	<i>Faciēi.</i>	
	<i>em.</i>	<i>em.</i>	<i>em.</i>	<i>Faciēm.</i>	
	<i>es.</i>	<i>es.</i>	<i>es.</i>	<i>Facies.</i>	
	<i>e.</i>	<i>e.</i>	<i>e.</i>	<i>Facie.</i>	
Plurally,	<i>es.</i>	<i>erum.</i>	<i>ebus.</i>	<i>Facies.</i>	
	<i>erum.</i>	<i>erum.</i>	<i>erum.</i>	<i>Faciērum.</i>	
	<i>ebus.</i>	<i>ebus.</i>	<i>ebus.</i>	<i>Faciēbus.</i>	
	<i>es.</i>	<i>es.</i>	<i>es.</i>	<i>Facies.</i>	
	<i>es.</i>	<i>es.</i>	<i>es.</i>	<i>Facies.</i>	
	<i>ebus.</i>	<i>ebus.</i>	<i>ebus.</i>	<i>Faciēbus.</i>	

Chap. 16. Of the declining of Adjectives.

Adjectives of three Terminations are declined like *Bonus*.
Adjectives are declined with three Terminations, or three Articles.
 Adjectives of three Terminations are varied after the first and second Declension; viz. The termination *us*, like *Magister*; *us*, like *Dominus*; *a*, like *Musa*; *um*, like *Regnum*.

Their Example, or Type is	Singulariter,			Pluraliter,
	Nom.	Gen.	Dat.	
Singulariter,	<i>Bonus.</i>	<i>Boni.</i>	<i>Bono.</i>	<i>Bonorum.</i>
	<i>Bona.</i>	<i>Boni.</i>	<i>Bono.</i>	<i>Bonorum.</i>
	<i>Bona.</i>	<i>Boni.</i>	<i>Bono.</i>	<i>Bonorum.</i>
	<i>Bonum.</i>	<i>Boni.</i>	<i>Bono.</i>	<i>Bonorum.</i>
	<i>Bona.</i>	<i>Boni.</i>	<i>Bono.</i>	<i>Bonorum.</i>
	<i>Bona.</i>	<i>Boni.</i>	<i>Bono.</i>	<i>Bonorum.</i>
Pluraliter,	<i>Boni.</i>	<i>Bonorum.</i>	<i>Bonorum.</i>	<i>Bonorum.</i>
	<i>Boni.</i>	<i>Bonorum.</i>	<i>Bonorum.</i>	<i>Bonorum.</i>
	<i>Boni.</i>	<i>Bonorum.</i>	<i>Bonorum.</i>	<i>Bonorum.</i>
	<i>Boni.</i>	<i>Bonorum.</i>	<i>Bonorum.</i>	<i>Bonorum.</i>
	<i>Boni.</i>	<i>Bonorum.</i>	<i>Bonorum.</i>	<i>Bonorum.</i>
	<i>Boni.</i>	<i>Bonorum.</i>	<i>Bonorum.</i>	<i>Bonorum.</i>

Terminationes hujus Declinat.	Singulariter,	N.	es.	Ejus Exemplum, five Typus est	Facies.	Genitivus singularis olim etiam in <i>es</i> , <i>ii</i> , & <i>e</i> , exhibit, & Dativus aliquando in <i>e</i> . Quædam nomina tertiæ Declinationis juxta hanc flectebantur; ut, <i>Ples</i> , <i>plebei</i> . Hæc Declinatio Genit. Dat. & Ablativum plurale in nullis sortita est, præter <i>Res</i> , <i>species</i> , <i>facies acies</i> , <i>dies</i> , & <i>meridies</i> .
		G.	ei.		Faciēi.	
		D.	ei.		Faciēi.	
		A.	em.		Faciem.	
		V.	es.		Facies.	
		A.	e.		Facie.	
	Pluraliter,	N.	es.	Ejus Exemplum, five Typus est	Facies.	
		G.	erum.		Faciērum.	
		D.	ebus.		Faciēbus.	
		A.	es.		Facies.	
		V.	es.		Facies.	
		A.	ebus.		Faciēbus.	

Cap. 16. De flexione Adjectivorum.

Adjectiva flectuntur tribus Terminationibus, vel tribus Articulis. Adjectiva trium Terminationum variantur ad formam primæ & secundæ Declinationis, viz. *r*, sicut *Magister*; *us*, sicut *Dominus*; *a*, sicut *Musa*; *um*, sicut *Regnum*. Adjectiva trium Terminationum variantur sicut *Bonus*.

Ejus Exemplum, five Typus est	Singulariter,	Nom.	Bonus.	Bona.	Bonum.
		Gen.	Boni.	Bonæ.	Boni.
		Dat.	Bono.	Bonæ.	Bono.
		Acc.	Bonum.	Bonam.	Bonum.
		Voc.	Bone.	Bona.	Bonum.
		Abl.	Bonæ.	Bonâ.	Bono.
	Pluraliter,	Nom.	Boni.	Bonæ.	Bona.
		Gen.	Bonorum.	Bonarum.	Bonorum.
		Dat.	Bonis.	Bonis.	Bonis.
		Accn.	Bonos.	Bonâs.	Bona.
		Voc.	Boni.	Bona.	Bona.
		Abl.	Bonis.	Bonis.	Bonis.

Unus, one ; *totus*, whole ; *solus*, alone ; *ullus*, any ;
alter, another ; *uter*, whether, and their compounds,
 make their Genitive in *ius*, and the Dative in *i*.

So also doth *alius*, *alia*, *aliud*, Gen. *alius*, Dat.
alii, &c.

Ambobus, both, *duo* two, are irregular, and make
 their neuter gender in *o*, and bee thus declined.

Pluraliter,	Nom.	<i>ambo.</i>	<i>Ambæ.</i>	<i>Ambo.</i>
	Gen.	<i>amborum.</i>	<i>Ambarum.</i>	<i>Amborum.</i>
	Dat.	<i>ambobus.</i>	<i>Ambabus.</i>	<i>Ambobus.</i>
	Acc.	<i>ambos.</i>	<i>Ambas.</i>	<i>Ambo.</i>
	Voc.	<i>ambo.</i>	<i>Ambæ.</i>	<i>Ambo.</i>
	Abl.	<i>ambobus.</i>	<i>Ambabus.</i>	<i>Ambobus.</i>

Of three
 Articles
 like *Felix*,
 or *Tristis*.

Adjectives of one or two Terminations follow the
 rule of the third Declension, and are declined with
 three Articles.

Singularly,	N.	<i>Hic, hæc, & hoc, Felix.</i>	N.	<i>Hic, & hæc, Tristis,</i> <i>& hoc, Triste.</i>
	G.	<i>Hujus, Felicis.</i>	G.	<i>Hujus, Tristis.</i>
	D.	<i>Huic, Felici.</i>	D.	<i>Huic, Tristi.</i>
	A.	<i>Hunc, & hanc, Felicem,</i> <i>& hoc Felix.</i>	A.	<i>Hunc, & hanc, Tri-</i> <i>stem, & hoc Triste.</i>
	V.	<i>Felix.</i>	V.	<i>Tristis, & Triste.</i>
	A.	<i>Hoc, hæc, & hoc, Felice</i> <i>vel Felici.</i>	A.	<i>Hoc, hæc, & hoc Tristi</i>
Plurally,	N.	<i>Hi, & hæ, Felices, &</i> <i>hæc, Felicia.</i>	N.	<i>Hi, & hæ, Tristes, &</i> <i>hæc, Tristia.</i>
	G.	<i>Horum, harum, & ho-</i> <i>rum Felicium.</i>	G.	<i>Horum, harum, &</i> <i>horum, Tristium.</i>
	D.	<i>His, Felicibus.</i>	D.	<i>His, Tristibus.</i>
	A.	<i>Hos, & has, Felices, &</i> <i>hæc, Felicia.</i>	A.	<i>Hos, & has Tristes,</i> <i>& hæc, Tristia.</i>
	V.	<i>Felices, & Felicia.</i>	V.	<i>Tristes, Tristia.</i>
	A.	<i>His, Felicibus.</i>	A.	<i>Tristibus.</i>

Nouns

Unus, totus, solus, ullus, alter, uter, & eorum composita, formant Genitivum in *ius*, & Dativum in *i*.

Sic & *alius*, *alia*, *aliud*, Gen. *alius*, Dat. *alii*, &c.

Ambo & *duo* sunt anomala, & formant neutrum generis per *o*: sic autem variantur.

Pluraliter,	Nom.	<i>Ambo</i>	<i>Ambæ</i>	<i>Ambo</i>
	Gen.	<i>Amborum</i>	<i>Ambarum</i>	<i>Amborum</i>
	Dat.	<i>Ambobus</i>	<i>Ambabus</i>	<i>Ambobus</i>
	Acc.	<i>Ambos</i>	<i>Ambas</i>	<i>Ambos</i>
	Voc.	<i>Ambo</i>	<i>Ambæ</i>	<i>Ambo</i>
	Abl.	<i>Ambobus</i>	<i>Ambabus</i>	<i>Ambobus</i>

Adjectiva unius vel duarum Terminationum sequuntur formam tertiæ Declinationis, & flectuntur tribus Articulis.

Adjectiva trium Articulorum variantur, ut, *Felix*, aut *Tristis*.

Horum Exempla sint	Singular.	N.	<i>Hic, hæc, & hoc, Felix.</i>	N.	<i>Hic, & hæc, Tristis, & hoc, Triste.</i>
		G.	<i>Hujus, Felici.</i>	G.	<i>Hujus, Tristi.</i>
		D.	<i>Huic, Felici.</i>	D.	<i>Huic, Tristi.</i>
		A.	<i>Hunc, & hanc, Felicem, & hoc, Felix.</i>	A.	<i>Hunc, & hanc Tristem, & hoc Triste.</i>
		V.	<i>Felix.</i>	V.	<i>Tristis, & Triste.</i>
		A.	<i>Hoc, hæc, & hoc, Felice, vel Felici.</i>	A.	<i>Hoc, hæc, & hoc Tristi.</i>
	Plural.	N.	<i>Hi, & hæ, Felices, & hæc, Felicia.</i>	N.	<i>Hi, & hæ, Tristes, & hæc, Tristia.</i>
		G.	<i>Horum, harum, & horum, Felicium.</i>	G.	<i>Horum, harum, & horum, Tristium.</i>
		D.	<i>His, Felicibus.</i>	D.	<i>His, Tristibus.</i>
		A.	<i>Hos, & hos, Felices, & hæc, Felicia.</i>	A.	<i>Hos, & hos, Tristes, & hæc, Tristia.</i>
		V.	<i>Felices, & Felicia.</i>	V.	<i>Tristes, & Tristia.</i>
		A.	<i>Felicibus.</i>	A.	<i>His, Tristibus.</i>

Nomina

Nouns compounded of a Substantive and Adjective are declined in both; as, *Res-publica*, *Reipublicæ*: *Jur-jurandum*, *juris-jurandi*.

But such as are compounded of two Substantives, are declined onely in the former; as, *Pater-familiās*, *Parris-familiās*.

Chap. 17. Of Comparison.

Nouns, whose signification may encrease or be diminished, do form Comparison.

Comparison is the varying of a word by Degree.

There bee
three de-
grees of
Compa-
rison.
The Posi-
tive.

There bee three Degrees of Comparison, {
The Positive.
The Comparative.
The Superlative.

The Positive Degree is the first word signifying a thing Simply, and without Excess; as, *Tristis*, *sad*; *durus*, *hard*.

The Com-
parative.

The Comparative somewhat exceed's the signification of his Positive by more; as, *Tristior*, *sadder*, or *more sad*; *durior*, *harder*, or *more hard*.

The Super-
lative.

The Superlative exceedeth far above the Positive by very, or most; as, *Tristissimus*, *very sad*; *durissimus*, *most hard*.

The Com-
parative

is formed of the first case of the Positive, that endeth in *i*, by putting thereto {
or, and *us*, as of *Tristi*
is made *tristior*, and
tristius; of *Duri*, *duri-*
or, and *durius*.
simus; as, of *Tristi* is
made *tristissimus*; of
Duri, *durissimus*.

The Su-
perlative

But the
Compari-
son of some
words is
irregular.

Positives in *r*, make their Superlative by putting to *rimus*; as, *Pulcer*, *fair*, *pulcherrimus*.

But

Ad. Nomina Composita à duobus rectis declinantur in
Rei. utrisque ; ut, *Res-publica, Rei-publica ; Jus-jurandum,*
Juris-jurandi.

Composita verò à recto & obliquo, declinantur
tantùm ex parte recti ; ut, *Pater-familiàs, Patris-fami-*
liàs.

Godfrey de la Roche

Godfrey de la Roche

Cap. 17. De Comparatione.

Comparantur nomina, quorum significatio augeri,
minuïve potest.

Comparatio est variatio dictionis per Gradus.

Gradus Comparationis sunt tres, $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Positivus.} \\ \text{Comparativus.} \\ \text{Superlativus.} \end{array} \right.$ Comparationis Gra-
tus sunt
tres.

Positivus Gradus est prima vox quæ rem simplici-
ter, & sine excessu significat ; ut, *Tristis, durus.* Positivus.

Comparativus Positivi significationem per magis
auger ; ut, *Tristior, durior.* Comparativus.

Superlativus supra Positivum cum Adverbio valde
vel maxime significat ; ut, *Tristissimus, durissimus.* Superla-
tivus.

Comparativus $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{fit regulariter} \\ \text{à primo Posi-} \\ \text{tivi casu in} \end{array} \right.$ or, & us ; ut, à *Tristi* fit
tristior, & tristius, à Duri,
durior, & durius.
Superlativus $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{addendo} \\ \text{stissimus ; ut, à Tristi, fit tri-} \\ \text{stissimus ; à Duri, durissi-} \\ \text{mus.} \end{array} \right.$

Positiva in r, formant Superlativum assumendo
imus ; ut, *Pulcer, pulcerrimus.* Comparatio est Ir-
regularis.

Exci-

But *dexter*, on the right hand, *dexterior*, more on the right hand, *dextimus*, most on the right hand, and *sinister*, on the left hand, *sinisterior*, more on the left hand, *sinistimus*, most on the left hand, as the Antients formed them, are excepted.

These six ending in *lis*, do make their Superlative by changing *lis* into *limus*; viz. *Docilis*, *docillimus*, *docible*; *agilis*, *agillimus*, *nimble*; *gracilis*, *gracillimus*, *tender*; *humilis*, *humillimus*, *humble*; *similis*, *simillimus*, *like*; *facilis*, *facillimus*, *easy*.

Such as are derived of *dico*, *loquor*, *volo*, *facio*, are compared as Positives in *ens*; as, *Maledicus*, *maledicentior*, *maledicentissimus*, *curſing*; *magniloquus*, *magniloquentior*, *magniloquentissimus*, *brag*; *benevolus*, *benevolentior*, *benevolentissimus*, *kinde*; *magnificus*, *magnificentior*, *magnificentissimus*, *harelle*.

If a Vowel com before *us* in the end, the Comparative degree is made by *magis*, and the Superlative by *maximè*; as, *Pius*, *godlie*; *magis Pius*, *more godlie*; *maximè pius*, *most godlie*.

These also are excepted from the General Rule foregoing:

Bonus, good, *melior*, better, *optimus*, the best.

Malus, bad, *pejor*, worse, *peffimus*, the worst.

Magnus, great, *major*, greater, *maximus*, the greatest.

Parvus, little, *minor*, less, *minimus*, the least.

Multus, much, *plus*, more, *plurimus*, the most.

Vetus, old, *veterior*, older, *veterrimus*, oldest.

Maturus, ripe, *maturior*, riper, *maturimus*, & *maturissimus*, very ripe.

Nequam, naught, *nequior*, naughtier, *nequissimus*, the naughtiest.

And many such like whose Positives are derived of Adverbs, and Prepositions; as,

Citer, *hitherly*, *citerior*, *citimus*, of *citra* on this side.

Exterm,

Excipiuntur autem *Dexter* & *dexterior*; *dextimus*; & *sinister*, *sinisterior*, *sinissimus*, prout antiqui formabant.

Sex ista in *lis* formant Superlativum mutando *lis* in *limus*; viz. *Docilis*, *docillimus*; *agilis*, *agilissimus*; *gracilis*, *gracillimus*; *humilis*, *humillimus*; *similis*, *similissimus*; *facilis*, *facilissimus*.

Quæ derivantur à *dico*, *loquor*, *volo*, *facio*, comparantur tanquam à Positivis in *ens*; ut,

Maledicus, *Maledicentior*, *Maledicentissimus*.

Magniloquus, *Magniloquentior*, *Magniloquentissimus*.

Benevolus, *Benevolentior*, *Benevolentissimus*.

Magnificus, *Magnificentior*, *Magnificentissimus*.

Si vocalis præcedit *us* finale, fit gradus Comparativus per *magis*, & Superlativus per *maximè*; ut, *Pius*, *magis Pius*, *maximè Pius*.

Hæc etiam à Regula Generali præcedente excipiuntur.

Bonus, *melior*, *optimus*.

Multus plurimus, *multa plurima*, *multum plus plurimum*.

Malus, *pejor*, *peffimus*.

Vetus, *veterior*, *veterrimus*.

Magnus, *major*, *maximus*.

Maturus, *matutior*, *matutimus* & *matutissimus*.

Parvus, *minor*, *minimus*.

Nequam, *nequior*, *nequissimus*.

Et istiusmodi multa, quorum Positivi ab Adverbiis & Præpositionibus derivantur; ut,

Citer, *citerior*, *citimus*, à *Citra*.

Externus,

Extremus, ^{exterior} outerly, { ^{extremus} sextimus, } of extra without.

Inferus, netherly, inferior, infimus, of infra beneath.
 Posterus, afterly, posterior, postremus, of post after.

Superus, ^{superior} overly, { ^{summus} supremus, } of supra above.

To which are wont to bee added, Ultra, beyond, ul-
 terior, further, ultimus, farthest; Prope, near, pro-
 prior, nearer, proximus, the next; Prope, long afore,
 prior, former, primus, the first; and Diu, long, diutior,
 longer, diutissimus, very long.

Unusual.

These words are seldom met withal in reading
 Autors, and therefore seldom to bee used; viz. Af-
 fiduor, more dasy: Strenuor, more stout: Egregis-
 simus, very excellent: Mirificissimus, very wonder-
 full: Pientissimus, vel piissimus, very godly: ipfis-
 simus, the very hee: perpetuissimus, most perpetual:
 tenuissimus, most pious: exiguissimus, the least that
 may bee: multissimus, the most: proximior, nearer
 than the nearest.

Defective.

Som want the Positive; Ocyor, swifter, ocyssimus,
 very swift: potior, better able: potissimus, the best
 able: deterior, worst: deterrimus, the worst: penitior,
 inner: penitissimus, most innerly.

Som want the Comparative; Novus, new: novis-
 simus, the newest: inclutus, famous: inclutissimus, most
 famous: invitus, unwilling: invitissimus, most un-
 willing: meritis, deserved, meritissimus, most deser-
 ved: sacer, holy, sacerrimus, most holy: falsus, false:
 falsissimus, very false: fidus, trusty, fidissimus, most
 trusty: nuper, nupernus, late: nuperrimus, very late:
 diversus, divers; diversissimus, very divers.

Som want the Superlative; as, Opimus, wealthie:
 opimior, more wealthie: juvenis, young: junior, youn-
 ger: senex, old: senior, older: declivis, down-hill:
 declivior, more down-hill: longinquus, afar off: lon-
 ginquior,

Exterus, exterior, {extimus, } ab Extra.
{extremus, }

Inferus, inferior, infimus, ab Infra.

Posterus, posterior, postremus, à Post.

Superus, superior, {supremus, } à Supra.
{summus, }

Quibus addi solent, *Ultra, ulterior, ultimus. Propè, pro-*
pior, proximus. Pridem, prior, primus; & Diu, diutior,
diutissimus.

Hæc in legendis autoribus rarò occurrunt, rarò Inusitatio-
 ritur sunt usurpanda, viz. *Affiduior, Strenuior, Egregi-*
issimus, Mirificissimus, Pientissimus, vel piissimus, ipsissi-
mus, perpetuissimus, tuissimus, exiguissimus, multissimus,
proximior.

Quædam carent Positivo, *Ocyor, ocyssimus, Potior, Defectiva.*
potissimus; Deterior, deterrimus; Penitior, penitissimus.

Quædam carent Comparativo; *Novus, novissimus;*
Inclutus, inclutissimus; Invitus, invitissimus; Meritus,
meritissimus; Sacer, sacerrimus; Falsus, falsissimus;
Fidus, fidissimus, Nuper, nuperus, nuperrimus; Diversus,
diversissimus.

Quædam carent Superlativo; ut, *Opimus, opimior; Ju-*
venis, junior; Senex, senior; Declivis, declivior, Longinquus,

F

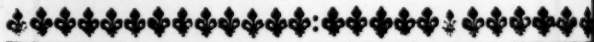
longinquior,

ginquior, further off: *salutáris*, wholeſom: *ſalutarior*,
 more wholeſom: *ſupinus*, careleſs: *ſupinior*, more
 careleſs: *adoſcens*, youthful: *adoſcentior*, more
 youthful: *ingens*, huge: *ingentior*, more huge: *ſatur*
 full: *ſaturior*, fuller: *antè*, beſore: *anterior*, more be
 ſore: *inſinitus*, infinite: *inſinitior*, more infinite: *taci*
 turnus, ſilent: *taciturnior*, more ſilent: *communis*, com
 mon: *communior*, more common.

Licentior, more licentious, is onely the Compa
 rative.

Improper.

Sometimes alſo Compariſon is made of Subſtan
 tives, but abuſively; as, *Nero*, *Nerónior*, more cruel
 then *Nero*; *Pænus*, *Pænior*, more perſidious then
 Carthaginian.



Quæ Genus :

OR,

ROB. ROBINSON'S Rules of Nouns
Heteroclits, or Irregular.

Chap. 18. Of varying *Heteroclits*.

Heteroclits
 are

Nouns which 1. vary or change their Gender or
 Declining. 2. Thoſe which want of any new
 faſhion. 3. And thoſe which have too much, and
Heteroclits.

Theſe nouns change their gender and declining
 which are,

I.
 Variant.

1. Feminines in the ſingular number, and Neu
 ters in the plural; as,

Petrus

longinquior; salutaris, salutarior; supinus, supinior; adolescens, adolescentior; ingens, ingentior; satur, saturior; antea, anterior; infinitus, infinitior; taciturnus, taciturnior; communis, communior.

Licentior est solus Comparativus.

Interdum etiam à Substantivis fit Comparatio, sed Abusiva, abusive; ut, Nero, Neronior; Pænus, Pænior.

Quæ Genus :

SIVE,

ROB. ROBINSONI Regulæ de
Heteroclitis, seu Anomalis.

Cap. 18. De Heteroclitis variantibus.

Quæ genus aut flexum variant, 2. quacunque novato Heteroclitæ sunt
ritu deficiunt, 3. superantur, Heteroclitæ sunt.

Hæc genus ac partium flexum variantia cernis,

Variant.

1. *Pergamus*, *mi*, **the town** *Pergamus*, make's *Pergama*, *morum* : *Supellex*, *ieſtilis*, **houſhold=ſtuff**, make's *ſupelleſtilia*, unleſs it want the plural.

2. Neuters in the ſingular, and maſculines and neuters in the plural ; as. *Raſtrum ſtri*, a **rake**, make's *raſtri*, & *raſtra*, *ſtrorum* : *frænum*, *ni*, a **bridle**, make's *fræni*, & *fræna*, *norum* : *filum*, *li*, a **thread**, make's *ſili*, & *ſila*, *lorum* : *Capiſtrum*, *ſtri*, an **halter**, make's *capiftri*, & *ſtra*, *ſtrorum*.

3. Neuters in the ſingular, and maſculines onely in the plural ; *Argos*, *gi*, **the cttle of Argos**, make's *Argi*, *gorum* : *cælum*, *li*, **heaven**, make's *cæli*, *lorum*.

4. Neuters in the ſingular, and feminines in the plural ; as, *Nundinum*, *ni*, a **ſatr**, make's *nundina*, *narum* : *epulum*, *li*, a **banquet**, make's *epula*, *larum* : *balneum*, *nei*, a **bath**, make's *balnea*, *nearum*, though *JUVENAL* hath *balnea* in the plural number.

5. Maſculines in the ſingular, and neuters in the plural ; as, *Manalus*, *li*, a **hill in Arcadia**, make's *Manala*, *lorum* : *Dindymus*, *mi*, **the top of Ida**, make's *Dindyma*, *morum* : *Iſmarus*, *ri*, a **hill in Thrace**, make's *Iſmata*, *rorum* : *Tartarus*, *ri*, **Hell**, mak's *Tartara*, *rorum* : *Táygetus*, *ti*, a **hill in Lacedemonia**, make's *Táygeta*, *torum* : *Tanarus*, *ri*, a **hill in Laconia**, make's *Tanera*, *rorum* : *Maſſicus*, *ci*, a **hill in Italie**, make's *Maſſica*, *corum* : *Gargarus*, *ri*, a **top of Ida**, make's *Gargata*, *rorum*.

6. Maſculines ſingular, and maſculine and neuters in the plural ; *Sibilus*, *li*, an **tiſſing**, make's *ſibili*, & *ſibila*, *lorum* : *jocus*, *ci*, a **jeſt**, make's *joci*, & *joca*, *corum* : *locus*, *ci*, a **place**, make's *loci*, & *loca*, *corum*, *Avernus*, *ni*, a **lake in Campania**, make's *Averni*, & *Averna*, *norum*.

1. Pergamus infelix urbs Troum Pergama gignit;
Quod nisi plurali careat facit ipsa supellex;
Singula fœmineis, neutris pluralia gaudent.
2. Dat prior his numerus neutrum genus, alter utrumque;
Rastrum, cum fræno, filum, simul atque capistrum.
3. Argos item & cœlum sunt singula neutra; sed audi,
Mascula duntaxat cœlos vocitabis & Argos.
4. Nundinum, & hinc epulum, quibus addito balneum,
(& hæc sunt
Neutra quidem primo, muliebria ritè secundo.
Balnea p'urali Juvena'em constat habere.
5. Hæc maribus dantur singularia, plurima neutris;
Mænalus, atque sacer mons Dindymus, Ismarus, atque
Tartara, Táygētus, sic Tænera, Massica, & altus
Gargarus. 6. At numerus genus his dabit alter utrumque;
Sibilus, atque jocus, locus, & Campanus Avernus.

Chap. 19.

Of Heteroclits that want Case.

2.
Defective
in Case.

2. **T**Hose Heteroclits which follow are defective in Case, or Number.

1. Aptotes are such as vary no case ; as, *Fas*, right : *nîl*, nothing : *nihil*, nothing : *instar*, like : such as end in *u* and *i* ; as, *cornu*, a horn : *genu*, a knee : *gummi*, gum : *frugi*, thistle : Likewise *Tempe*, a pleasant field : *tot*, so many : *quot*, how many : and all nouns of number from three to an hundred.

2. A Monoprote is a noun of one onely case ; as, *Noctu*, by night : *natu*, by birth : *jussu*, by bidding : *injussu*, without bidding : *astu*, by craft : *promptu*, in readiness : *permissu*, by sufferance : but wee read *astus* in the Accusative case plural, and *inficias* a Denial, which word is onely found.

3. Those are Diptores which have itwo cases onely, as, Nom. *forte*, Abl. *forte*, hap : Gen. *spontis*, Abl. *sponte*, of one's own accord : Nom. *plus*, Gen. *pluris*, more : Gen. *repetundarum*, of bytherie, Abl. *repetundis* : Gen. *jugeri*, of an acre, Abl. *jugere* : Gen. *verberis*, of a stroke, Abl. *verbere* : Nom. *suppetia*, aid, Acc. *suppetias* : Nom. *tantundem*, so much, Gen. *tantidem* : Gen. *impetis*, violence, Abl. *impete* : Acc. *vicem*, a turn, Abl. *vice* : whereof *verberis*, *vicem*, *plus*, and *jugeri*, have all their cases in the plural number.

4. Those are Triptores which have three cases onely ; as, Gen. *precis*, Acc. *precem*, Abl. *prece*, prayer : Gen. *opis*, Acc. *opem*, Abl. *ope*, help.

Vis, force, wanteth no case except the Dative. And these have all their cases in the plural number.

5. Relatives ; as, *qui*, which : Interrogatives ; as, *ecquis*, who : Distributives ; as, *nullus*, none : neuter, neither, and *omnis*, all.

Cap. 19.

De Heteroclitis defectivis Casu.

2. **Q**uae sequitur manca est Numero, Casu^{2o}ve propago.

2o
Defectiva
Casu.

1. Quae nullum variant casum ; ut, fas, nil, nihil, instar ;
Multa & in u simul i, ut sunt haec cornu^uque, genu^uque ;
Sic gummi, frugi ; sic Tempe, tot, quot, & omnes
A tribus ad centum numeros Aptota vocabis.

2. Estque Monoptoton nomen, cui vox cadit una ;
Ceu noctu, natu, jussu, injussu, simul astu,
Promptu, permissu, plurali legimus astus,
Legimus inficias, sed vox ea sola reperta est.

3. Sunt Diptota, quibus duplex flexura remansit,
Ut, fors, forte dabit sexto ; sponis quoque sponse ;
Sic plus, pluris habet ; repetundarum, repetundis ;
Jugeri, & sexto dat jugere ; verberis autem
Verbere ; suppetiae quarto quoque suppetias dant.
Tantundem dat tantidem, simul impetis hoc dat
Impete ; junge vicem sexto vice : nec lego plura.
Verberis, atque vicem, sic plus cum jugere, cunctos
Quatuor haec numero casus tenuere secundo.

4. Tres quibus inflectis casus Triptota vocantur,
Ut, precis, atque precem, petit & prece blandus amicam,
Sic opis est nostra, fer opem legis, atque ope dignus.
Integra vox vis est, nisi desit fortè Dativus ;
Omnibus his mutilus numerus prior, integer alter.

5. Quae referunt, ut, qui ; quae percontantur, ut, ecquis ?
Et quae distribuunt ; ut, nullus, neuter, & omnis.

F 4

Infinita

Indefinites ; as, *quilibet*, any one : *alter*, another ; want the Vocative case, and all Pronouns, except *Noster*, ours : *noſtras*, on our ſide : *meus*, mine : *tu*, thou.

Chap. 20.

Of Heteroclits that want Number.

Defective
in the
Singular
Number.

1. **A**LL Proper Names, having a restraining nature, do want the plural number ; as, *Mars*, *tiſ*, *Mars* ; *Cato*, *tonis*, *Cato* : *Gallia*, *lia*, *France* : *Roma*, *me*, *Rome* : *Ida*, *de*, a hill neer *Troy* : *Tagus*, *gi*, the river *Cato* in *Spain* : *Lalaps*, *pi*, *Tempeſt*, a dog's name : *Pernaffus*, *ſi*, a hill in *Phocis* : *Bucephalus*, *li*, *Alexander's* horſe. Add to theſe, the names of Corn ; as, *Triticum*, *wheat*. Things ſold by Weight ; as, *Lana*, *wooll* ; Of Herbs, as, *ſalvia*, *sage* ; Of Liquors ; as, *Cerviſia*, *beer* ; Of Metals ; as, *aurum*, *gold* ; wherein obſerv the opinion of Aurors, for ſometimes they keep, ſometimes they reject the plural number.

2. *Hordeum*, *dei*, *barly* ; *far*, *riſ*, *bread-corn* : *mel*, *liſ*, *hony* : *muſſum*, *ſi*, *ſwine mingled with hony* : *defrutum*, *ti*, *ſwine boiled to the half* : and *thus*, *thuris*, *frankincenſ*, have onely three like caſes in the plural number.

3. Theſe Masculines want the plural number ; *Heſperus*, *ri*, *the evening ſtar* : *veſper*, *riſ*, *the evening* : *pontus*, *ti*, *the ſea* : *limus*, *mi*, *mud* : *ſimus*, *mi*, *dung* : *penus*, *ni*, vel *penus*, *vituals* ; *ſanguis*, *guinis*, *blood* : *ather*, *riſ*, *the ſkile* : and *nemo*, *no body* : but *nemo* want's the Genitive and vocative ſingular, as well as the plural number.

4. Theſe Feminines have ſeldom the plural number ; *Pubes*, *biſ*, *ripenesſ of age* : *ſalus*, *litiſ*, *health* : *talio*, *onis*, *like for like* ; *indoles*, *liſ*, *towardlneſs* ; *tuffis*, *ſiſ*, *the cough* ;

pix,

*Infinita solent his jungi, ut, quilibet, alter ;
Quinto hæc sæpe carent casu ; & Pronomina præter
Quatuor hæc infra, noster, nostras, meus, & tu.*

Cap. 20.

De Heteroclitis defectivis Numero.

Defectiva
Numero
Singulari.

1. **P**ropriæ cuncta notes, quibus est natura coercens,
Plurima nè fuerint, ut, Mars, Cato, Gallia, Roma,
Ida, Tagus, Lælaps, Parnassus, Bucephalusque.
His frumenta dabis, pensa, herbas, uva, metalla ;
In quibus Autorum quæ sint placita ipse requiras ;
Est ubi pluralem retinent hæc, est ubi spernunt.

2. Hordea, farra, forum, mel, mulsum, defruta,
thûsque,
Tres tantùm similes voces pluralia servant.

3. Hesperus, & vesper, pontus, limûsque, fimûsque,
Sic penus, & sanguis, sic æther, nemo ; sed ista
Mascula sunt numerum vix excedentia primum.
Nemo caret genito, quinto, numeroque secundo.

4. Singula fœminei generis, pluralia rarò ;
Pubes, atque salus, sic talio cum indole, ruffis,

Pix,

pix, cis, pitch : *humus, mi*, the ground : *lues, is*, the murrain : *sitis, tis, thirst* : *fuga, ga*, flight : *quies, étis*, rest : *cholera, ra*, cholera : *fames, mis*, hunger : *bilis, lis*, cholera : *senectū, ta*, old age : *juventus, tātis*, youth : But *soboles, lis*, an offspring : *labes, bis*, a spot : and all nouns of the fifth Declension will have three like cases in the plural number, except, *res, rei*, a thing : *species, ciēi*, a kind : *facies, ciēi*, a face : *acies, ciēi*, an edge : and *dies, diēi*, a date ; which words are whole in the plural number. To these they are wont to add many Feminines ; as, *Stultitia, tia*, foolishness ; *invidia, dia, envie* : *sapientia, tia*, wisdom : *desidia, dia*, sloth : and a many words of like sort, which reading affords : and these sometimes, but very seldom, have the plural number.

5. These Neuters have not the plural number ; *Delicium, cii*, one's delight : *senium, nii*, old age : *lethum, thi*, death : *cœnum, ni*, dirt : *salum, li*, the salt sea : *barathrum, thri*, hell : *virus*, poison : *vitrum, tri*, glass : *viscum, sci*, bird-lime : *pœnum, ni*, provision : *justitium, tii*, vacation-time : *nihilum, li*, nothing : *veru*, the spring : *lac, Etis*, milk : *gluten, tinis*, glue : *balec, lécis*, an herring : *gelu*, frost : *solum, lii*, a thzone : *jubar, baris*, the sun-beam. Here also you may put many such like, which you shall meet with as you read.

And Plural. 6. These masculines have onely the plural number ; *Manes, nium*, spirits : *maiores, rum*, Antestors : *cancelli, lorum*, a lattice : *liberi, rorum*, children : *antes, tium*, the first rank of vines : *menses, sium*, women's flowers : *lemure, rum*, hobgoblins : *fassii, storum*, a Register-book : *minores, rum*, posteritis : *natales, lium*, one's stock : *penates, tium*, household gods : and names of places ; as, *Gabii, biorum*, *Locri, ciorum* ; and whatsoever the like you read any where.

7. These are of the Feminine gender and plural Number ;
Exuvia,

Pix, humus, atque lues, sitis, & fuga, junge quietem,

Sic cholera, atque fames, bilisque, senectus, juvenus:

Sed tamen hac, soboles, labes, ut & omnia quinta,

Tres similes casus plurali saepe tenebunt:

Excipe res, species, facies, aciei que, diés que,

Quas voces numero totas licet esse secundo.

Istis multa solent muliebria neſcere, ut hac sunt;

Stultitia, invidia, sapientia, desidia, atque

Id genus innumeræ voces, quas lectio præbet.

Rarius his numerum, quandoque sed adde secundum.

5. Nec licet his Neutris numerum deferre secundum;

Delicium, senium, lethum, cœnũque, salũque;

Sic barathrum, virus, vitrum, viscũque, penũque:

Adde gelu, solium, jubar. Hic quoque talia ponas,

Quæ tibi, si observes, occurrent multa legenti.

6. Mascula sunt numero tantũ contenta secundo;

Et Plurali,

Manes, majores, cancelli, liberi, & antes;

Menses [profluvium,] lemures, fasti, atque minores.

Cum genus assignant, natales: adde penates.

Et loca plurali, quales Gabiique, Locrique,

Et quacunque legas passim similis rationis.

7. Hæc sunt Fœminei generis, numerique secundi;

Exuvia,

Exuvia, arum, an **Adder's** slough : *phalera*, rarum, **hoof-trappings** : Nom. *grates*, Acc. *grates*, **thanks** : *manubia*, arum, **spoils** : *Idus*, iduum, the **Ides of months** : *antia*, arum, **fore locks** : *inducia*, arum, **truce** : *insidia*, arum : **lying in wait** : *mina*, narum, **threatnings** : *excubia*, arum, **watch and ward** : *Nonæ*, narum, the **Nones of a month** : *nugæ*, garum, **trifles** : *trica*, carum, **gew-gaws** : *Calendæ*, arum, the **first day of the month** : *quisquilis*, arum, **sweepings** : *therma*, marum, **hot bathes** : *cuna*, narum, a **cradle** : *diræ*, rarum, **curſing** : *exequiæ*, arum, **rites at funerals** : *inferiæ*, arum, **sacrifices to the infernal spirits** : *feriæ*, arum, **holidays** : *primitiæ*, arum, the **first fruits** : *plagæ*, arum, **hunter's nets** : *valvæ*, varum, **double, or two leat'd doors** : *divitiæ*, arum, **riches** : *nuptiæ*, arum, a **wedding** : *laſtes*, Etium, the **ſmall guts**. To theſe may bee added *Thebæ*, barum, **Thebes** : *Athenæ*, narum, **Athens** in Greece ; of which ſort you may finde many names of places.

8. Theſe Neuters have ſeldom the ſingular number ; *Mania*, ium, the **walls of a Town** : *teſqua*, ſquorum, **rough places** : *præcordia*, orum, the **midriff** : *luſtra*, ſtorum, **dens of wilde-beaſts** : *arma*, morum, **weapons** : *mapalia*, liorum, **cottages** : *bellaria*, riorum, **juncates** : *munia*, niorum, an **office** : *caſtra*, ſtorum, **tents** : *juſta*, ſtorum, **rites at funerals** : *ſponſalia*, liorum, **beſtrothing** : *roſtra*, ſtorum, a **pulpit** : *crepundia*, orum, a **rattle** : *cunabula*, lorum, a **cradle** : *exta*, torum, the **entrails of beaſts** : *effata*, torum, a **ſoothſayer's mutterings**. To theſe may bee added the Heatheniſh Feſtival names ; as, *Bacchanalia*, liorum, a **feſt to Bacchus** ; and if you ſhall read more, you may put them under this Rule.

Exuvix, phalerx, gratxque, manubix, & idus,

Antix, & inducix, simul infidixque, minxque,

Excubix, nonx, nugx, tricxque, calendx,

Quisquiliix, thermx, cunx, dirx, exequiixque,

Inferix, & feriix, sic primitiixque, plagxque

Retia signantes, & valvix, divitiixque,

Nuptiix item & lactes. Addantur Thebix, & Athenix;

Quod genus invenias, & nomina plura locorum.

8. Rariùs hac primo plurali neutra leguntur;

Mœnia, cum tesquis, præcordia, lustra ferarum,

Arma, mapalia, sic bellaria, munia, castra,

Funus iusta petit, petit & sponsalia virgo,

Rostra disertus amat, puerique crepundia gestant;

Infantibusque colunt cunabula, consulit extra

Augur, & absolvens superis effata recantat.

Festâ Deum poterunt, ceu Bacchanalia, jungi.

Quod si plura leges. li. et hac quoque classe reponas.

Chap. 21.

Of redundant or abounding Heteroclits.

3.
Redundant.

1. **T**Hese nouns (as it were) have too much, following divers forms; for they vary both their gender, and termination; viz. *Tonitrus*, & *tonitru*, **thunder**: *clypeus*, *pei*, & *clypeum* *pei*, a **duckler**: *baculus*, *li*, & *baculum*, *li*, & *bacillum*, *li*, a **staff**: *sensus*, *sūs*, a **sens**: & *sensum*, *fi*, a **conceit**, or **meaning**: *tignus*, *ni*, & *tignum*, *ni*, a **rafter**: *tapetum*, *ti*, *tapete*, *tis*, & *tapes*, *pētis*, **tapestry**: *punctus*, *ti*, & *punctum*, *ti*, a **point**: *sināpi*, & *sināpis*, *pis*, **mustard**: *sinus*, *ni*, & *sinum*, *ni*, a **milk-vessel**: *menda*, *da*, & *mendum*, *di*, a **fault**: *viscus*, *sci*, & *viscum*, *sci*, **bird-lime**: *cornu*, & *cornum*, *ni*, an **horn**: and *cornus*, *nās*, the **wing of an Arme**; (as *Lucane* saith) *eventus*, *tūs*, & *eventum*, *ti*, an **hap**: and a thousand such, which reading will afford thee.

2. Som Greek words do make a new Latine word in their Accusative case: as, *Panther*, *thēris*, make's *Panthera*, *ra*, a **Panther**: *crater*, *tēris*, make's *cratēra*, *ra*, a **goblet**: *cassis*, *fidis*, make's *cassida*, *da*, an **helmet**: *aether*, *theris*, make's *aithera*, *ra*, the **skie**.

3. In these nouns the Nominative case is divers, but the sens and gender are all one; viz. *Gibbus*, *bi*, & *gibber*, *bēris*, a **bunch**, or **swelling**: *cucumis*, *mīs*, & *cucumer*, *mēris*, a **cucumber**: *stipis*, *pis*, & *stips*, *pis*, **wages**: *cinis*, *nēris*, & *ciner*, *nēris*, **ashes**: *vomis*, *mēris*, & *vomer*, *mēris*, a **plough-share**: *scobis*, *bis*, & *scobs*, *bis*, **saw-dust**: *pulvis*, *vēris*, & *pulver*, *vēris*, **dust**: *pubes*, *bis*, & *puer*, *bēris*, **ripeness of age**. Add hereunto nouns ending in *or*, and *os*; as, *Honor*, *nōris*, & *honor*, *nōris*, **honor**: *labor*, *bōris*, & *labos*, *bōris*, **labor**: *arbor*, *boris*, & *arbos*, *boris*, a **tree**: *odor*, *dōris*, & *odos*, *dōris*, **savor**:
Also

Cap. 21.

De Heteroclitis Redundantibus.

1. *HÆC quasi luxuriant varias imitantia formas :*

3.
Redundantia

Nam genus & vocem variant, tonitrus, tonitrū;

Sic clypeus, clypeum ; baculus, baculum, atq; bacillū ;

Sensus, & hoc sensum ; tignus, tignūmq; tapetum,

Atque tapete, tapes ; punctus, punctūmq; sinapi,

Quod genus immutans fertur scelerata sinapis ;

Sinus, & hoc finum [vas lactis] ; mendāque, mendum ;

Viscus, & hoc viscum ; sic cornu, & flexile cornum ;

At Lucanus ait cornū tibi cura sinistri.

Eventus, simul eventum ; Sed quid moror istis ?

Talia doctorum tibi lectio mille ministrat.

2. *Sed tibi præterea quadam sunt Græca notanda,*

Quæ quarto casu fœtum peperere Latinum :

Nam panther, panthera creat, craterāque crater,

Cassida cassis habet, sed & æther, æthera fundit.

Hinc cratera venit, venit æthera ; sic caput ipsum

Cassida magna tegit, nec vult panthera domari.

3. *Vertitur his rectus, sensus manet & genus unum ;*

Gibbus, & hic gibber ; cucumis, cucumer ; stipis, &

(stips ;

Sic cinis, atque ciner ; vomis, vomer ; scobis & scobs ;

Pulvis, item pulver ; pubes, puber ; quibus addes

Quæ pariunt or & os ; honor, & labor, arbor, odorque.

His

Also *apes, pis, & apis, pis, a Bee: plebs, bis, & plebes, bei, the common people*. There bee also many nouns coming from the Greeks, having this double manner; as *Delphin, phinis, & Delphinus, phini, a Dolphin: Elephas, phantis, & Elephantus, ti, an Elephant: Congrius, gri, & Conger, gri, a Conger Cel: Meleagrus, gri, & Meleager, gri; Teucrus, cri, & Teucer, cri*. And hitherto you shall refer all such as these, which your reading affordeth.

4. These nouns are both of the second and fourth Declension; viz. *Laurus, ri, & rûs, a Bay tree: quercus, ci, & cûs, an Oak: pinus, ni, & nûs, a Pine tree: ficus, ci, & cûs, a fig, or a fig-tree: colus, li, & lûs, a distaff: penus, ni, & nûs, provision: cornus, ni, & nûs, a dog-tree: lacus, ci, & cûs, a lake: and domus, mi, & mûs, an house, or home*. Though these bee not thus found in every case. You shall read also more than these, which you may well leav to old Autors.

When you decline *Domus*, omit the cases ending in *me, mu*, in the singular; and *mi, mis*, in the plural number.

5. Many Adjectives also do abound, but especially such as com of these Substantives; *Arma, morum, Arms: jugum, gi, a yoke: nervus, vi, a sinew: somnus, ni, sleep: clivus, vi, a side of an hill: animus, mi, a minde: limus, mi, mud: frænum, ni, a bridle: cera, ra, wax: bacillum, li, a staff*; of which Substantives you may make Adjectives in *us* and *is*; as of *Arma*, is made *inermus* and *inermis, unweaponed*; *Hilarus, merry*, is seldom used, but *hilaris* is well known to bee used.

His & apes, & apis, plebs, plebes. Sunt quoque multa

Accepta à Gracis geminam referentia formam;

Ut, delphin, delphinus, & hic elephas, elephantus ;

Sic congrus, conger, Meleagrus, sic Meleager ;

Teucrus, item Teucer. Dabis huc & cetera cuncta,

Quæ tibi par ratio dederint & lectio casta.

4. *Hæc simul & quarti flexûs simul atque secundi ;*

Laurus enim lauri facit, & laurûs genitivo ;

Sic quercus, pinus, pro fructu ac arbore ficus,

Sic colus, atque penus, cornus quando arbor habetur ;

Sic lacus atque domus ; licet hæc nec ubique recurrant.

His quoque plura leges, quæ priscis jure relinquo.

Tolle me, mu, mi, mis, si declinare domum vis.

5. *Et quæ luxuriant sunt, Adjectiva notanda*

Multa, sed imprimis quot & hæc tibi nomina fundunt,

Arma, jugum, nervus, somnus, clivûsque, animûsque,

Et quot limus habet, quot frænum, & cera, bacillum ;

A quibus us, suul is formes, ut, inermus, inermis.

Rarior est hilarus, vox est hilaris bene nota.

Chap. 22. Of the Kindes of Nouns.

Nouns

are,

I.

Primitive.

I. **T**Hese Nouns which follow, and such like be *Primitives*; viz.

1. A noun *Collective*, which signifieth a multitude in the singular number; as, *Turba*, a rout: *grex*, a flock.

2. *Fictitious*, which is feigned of the sound; as, *Sibilus*, an hissing: *tintinnabulum*, a tinkling.

3. *Interrogatives*, which wee use in asking; as, *Quot*, how many: *qualis*, what an one?

4. *Redditive*, which gives answer to the Interrogative; as, *Tot*, so many: *talk*, such an one.

Indefinites, which do not define a certain thing.

And these two *Relatives*, which are referred to the word aforegoing; as, *Talis erat*, qualem nunquam vidi. *There was such an one as I never saw.*

5. *Numeral*, which signifie's a number on any fashion, whose kinds are also many, viz.

1. *Cardinal*, from which numerals proceed; as, *Unus*, one: *duo*, two.

2. *Ordinal*, which denote's an order; as, *primus*, the first: *secundus*, the second.

3. *Distributive*, which divide's the whole into parts; as, *Singuli*, several: *bini*, two and two.

4. *Partitives*, which signifieth either many severally; as, *Quisque*, every one: *uterque*, both: or one of many; as, *Alter*, one of the two: *aliquis*, some one.

5. *Universal*, which signifie's a thing universally; as, *Omnis*, all: *nullus*, none.

6. *Particular*, which signifieth part of the universal; as, *Quidam*, one: *aliquis*, some body.

7. *Multi*

Cap. 22. De Speciebus Nominum.

Nomina *Primitiva* sunt hæc quæ sequuntur, & sunt, hujusmodi, viz.

Nomina
sunt,
I.
Primitiva.

1. *Collectivum*, quod singulari numero multitudinem significat; ut, *Turba, grex*.

2. *Filiinum*, quod à sono fingitur; ut, *Sibilus, tintinnabulum*.

3. *Interrogativum*, quo in interrogando utimur; ut, *Quot? qualis?*

4. *Redditivum*, quod Interrogativo responsum reddit; ut, *Tot, talis*.

Arque hæc duo *Indefinita*, quæ certam rem non definiunt.

Relativa, quæ ad vocem præcedentem referuntur; ut, *Talis erat, qualem nunquam vidi*.

5. *Numerale*, quod numerum aliquo modo significat, cujus etiam species multæ sunt, viz.

1. *Cardinale*, à quo alia numeralia dimanant; ut, *Unus, duo*.

2. *Ordinale*, quod ordinem denotat; ut, *Primus, secundus*.

3. *Distributivum*, quod totum in partes distribuit; ut, *Singuli, bini*.

4. *Partitivum*, quod significat vel multa singulatum; ut, *Quisque, uterque*; vel unum è multis; ut, *Alter, aliquis*.

5. *Universale*, quod universaliter rem significat; ut, *Omnis, nullus*.

6. *Particulare*, quod partem universalis significat; ut, *Quidam, aliquis*.

The Latine Grammar.

7. *Multiplicative*, which signifieth the multiplicity of a thing; as, *Simplex*, **single**: *duplex*, **double**.

8. *Proportional*, which signifieth proportion; as, *Simplum*, **a single part**: *duplum*, **a double part**.

9. *Temporal*, which signifieth time, as, *Binus*, **two years old**: *trinus*, **three years old**: and *biennus*, of **two years standing**: *triennus*, of **three years standing**, or **continuance**.

10. *Ponderal*, which signifieth the weight of a thing; as, *Binarius*, of **two pound weight**: *ternarius*, **three pound weight**.

11. *Derivatives*, are also of many sorts, whereof these be the chief.

1. *Verbal*, which is derived of a Verb; as, *Lectio*, **reading**: *flexilis*, **flexible**.

2. *Patrial*, which signifieth the Countrey; as, *Londonensis*, **a Londoner**.

3. *Gentile*, which betokeneth the Nation, Side, or Sect; as, *Græcus*, **a Greek**: *Ciceroniānus*, **one of Cicero's side**: *Christianus*, **a Christian**, or **follower of Christ**.

4. *Patronymic*, which is derived either from the Father, or from other person of the familie; as, *Æacides*, **the son of Æacus**.

5. Patronymic nouns end in	{ des, }	as	{	Latoïdes, the son of Latona.	{	Masculines.
	{ ion, as, }	as	{	Iapetion, the son of Iapetus.	{	
	{ is, }	as	{	Iliās, the daughter of Ilia.	{	Femines.
	{ ne, }		{	Menelāis, the wife of Menelaüs.		
			{	Nerine, the daughter of Nereus.		

6. *Diminutive*, which lesseneth the signification of its Primitive; as, *Stultulus*, **a little fool**: *lapidulus*, **a little stone**.

7. *Possessive*.

7. *Multiplicativum*, quod multipliciter rei significat; ut, *Simplex, duplex*.

8. *Proportionale*, quod proportionem significat; ut, *Simplum, duplum*.

9. *Temporale*, quod tempus significat; ut, *Binus, trinus*; & *Biennis, triennis*.

10. *Ponderale*, quod pondus significat; ut, *Ternarius, centenarius*.

11. *Derivativa*, etiam sunt multiplicia, quorum hæc ²⁴ *Derivativa* sunt præcipuæ species.

1. *Verbale*, quod à Verbo derivatur; ut, *Leſtio, flexilis*.

2. *Patrium*, quod patriam significat; ut, *Londinensis*.

3. *Gentile*, quod gentem, partes, aut sectam significat; ut, *Græcus, Ciceronianus, Christianus*.

4. *Patronymicum*, quod vel à patre, vel ab alia quâpiam suæ familiæ personâ derivatur; ut, *Æacides*.

5. Desinunt autem Patronymica vel in	{ des, ion, as	} ut	{ Latoides Iapétion Ilias,	} Mascula.

6. *Diminutivum*, quod significationem sui Primitivi minuit; ut, *Stultulus, lapillulus*.

The Latine Grammar.

7. *Possessive*, which signifieth owing, or Possession; as, *Regius*, the King's, or, of the King; *paternus*, the father's, or, of a father.

8. *Denominative*, which hath its name from another, which differeth from it in termination onely ; as, *Iustitia*, *justice*, of *iustus*, *just*.

9. *Material*, which signifieth matter; as, *Aureus*, golden.

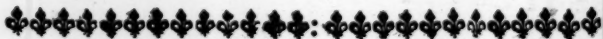
10. *Local*, which denote's a place ; as , *Hortensis*, of the garden ; *agrestis*, of the field.

II. *Participial*, which is made of a participle, as, *Sapiens, wise.*

12. *Adverbial*, which is derived of an Adverb ; as, *Craftinus, of to morrow*. And here wee must diligently observ,

1. All words whose original is unknown or uncertain, may be accounted Primitives in the Latine tongue; yea, though they flow from another Language; as, *Ego, me, tu*.

2. Left you bee ridiculous in finding the beginnings of words, you may observe diligently the terminations which com to the Primitives; as of *Amo*, *I love*, is made *amator*, a lover; *amicus*, a friend; *amabilis*, lovely, &c.



Chap. 23. *Of a Pronoun.*

A Pronoun
is put for a
Noun.
There bee
fifteen
Pronouns.

A *Pronoun* is a Part of Speech put for a Noun, and supplying its stead.

There bee fifteen Pronouns; *Ego, I, tu, thou, sui, of himself, ille, hee, ipse, himself, iste, yond, hic, this, is, it, meus, mine, tuus, thine, suus, his own, noster, ours, vester, yours, nostras, our country-man, vestras, yours.*

To

7. *Possessivum*, quod possessionem significat; ut, *Regius, paternus*.

8. *Denominativum*, quod ab alio solâ terminatione differt; ut, *Iustitia, à iustus*.

9. *Materiale*, quod materiam significat; ut, *Aureus*.

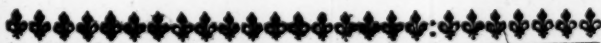
10. *Locale*, quod locum denotat; ut, *Hortensis, agrestis*.

11. *Participiale*, quod à Participio fit; ut, *Sapiens*.

12. *Adverbiale*, quod ab Adverbio derivatur; ut, *Crastinus, à cras*. Diligenter autem hic observandum, quod,

1. Omnes voces habeantur pro Primitivis in Latina linguâ, quarum origo in eadem vel ignota vel incerta est; imò, licet ab alia linguâ dimanent, ut, *Ego, musa*.

2. Nè ridiculus sis in investigandis dictionum originibus, diligenter observes terminationes quæ Primitivis accedunt; ut, ab *Amo*, fit *amator, amicus, amabilis, &c*.



Cap. 23. De Pronomine.

Pronomen est pars Orationis pro Nomine posita, & vicem eius supplens.

Pronomina sunt quindecim; *Ego, tu, suî, ille, ipse, iste, hic, is, meus, tuus, suus, noster, vester, nostras, vestras*.

Pronomen pro Nomine ponitur. Sunt autem Pronomina quindecim.

To which may bee added, *Qui*, *which* : *quis*, *who* : *cujus*, *whose* : *cujas*, *whose countrie-man*.

Whereof
som bee

And som of
these bee
called

Pronoun Substantives, viz. *Ego*, *tu*, *suî*,
which are referred to three genders,
without varying their termination.
Pronoun Adjectives, viz. all the rest
which bee varied by three genders;
as, *Meus*, *mea*, *meum*.

Primitive,

and som

Derivative.

According to their Species, Pro-
nouns are called

1. *Primitives*, which are the first words ; as,
Ego, *tu*, *suî*, *ille*, *ipse*, *iste*, *hic*, *is*, and *qui*.

and these } *Demonstratives*, which are used in
bee } shewing a thing not spoken of be-
call'd } fore ; as, *Ego*, *tu*, *suî*, *ille*, *ipse*, *hic*, *is*.
} *Relatives*, which wee use in rehearf-
} ing a thing that was spoken of be-
} fore ; as, *Ille*, *ipse*, *iste*, *is*, and *qui*.

2. *Derivatives*, are such as are derived of their
Primitives ; as, *Meus*, *tuus*, *suus*, *noster*, *vester*,
nostras, *vestras*, *cujus*, *cujas*, are derived from
the Genitive cases of their Primitives, *Mei*,
tui, *suî*, *nostri*, *vestri*, *nostrum*, *vestrum*, and *quis*,
from the Nominative case *qui*.

Of these som are

Possessives, which signifie owing or Possession ; as,
Meus, *tuus*, *suus*, *noster*, *vester*.

Gentiles, which signifie belonging to Countries, or
Nations, to Sects or Factions ; as, *nostras*, *vestras*, and
cujas, which were once used as Nouns in *âris*, and *âte*.

*Finite*s, which define, or set out a certain person ;
as, *Ego*, *tu*.

*Indefinite*s, which do not define a certain person ;
as, *Qui*, *cujus*.

Reciprocals, which betake themselves to the same
third person which went before it ; as, *Suî*, *suus*.

Peter intreateth thou wouldst not forsake him.

Every man spareth his own Errors.

Every man is drawn of his own pleasure.

There

Quibus addi possint, *Qui, quis, cujus, & cujus*.

Horum autem alia dicuntur

Substantiva, viz. *Ego, tu, sui*, quæ ad tria genera referuntur sine variatione.

Adjectiva, viz. omnia reliqua quæ per tria genera variantur; ut, *Meus, mea, meum*.

Secundam Speciem suam dicuntur

1. *Primitiva*, quæ sunt primæ voces, viz. *Ego, tu, sui, ille, ipse, iste, hic, is, & qui*. Quorum alia *Primitiva*.

Demonstrativa, quæ in re aliquâ non prius dictâ demonstrandâ usurpantur; ut, *Ego, tu, sui, ille, ipse, hic, is*.

Atque hæc vocantur

Relativa, quibus in repetenda re aliquâ prius dictâ utimur; ut, *Ille, ipse, iste, hic, is, & qui*.

2. *Derivativa*, quæ derivantur à suis *Primitivis*; Et alia *Derivativa*.
ut, *Mens, tuus, suus, noster, vester, nostras, vestras, quis, cujus, & cujus*.

Ex his etiam alia sunt

Possessiva, quæ possessionem significant; ut, *Mens, tuus, suus, noster, vester*.

Gentilia, quæ gentem aut nationem, vel partes & sectas, significant; ut, *Nostras, vestras, & cujas*, quæ proferebantur olim ut nomina in *âris, & âre*.

Finita, quæ definiunt certam personam; ut, *Ego, tu*.

Indefinita, quæ certam personam non definiunt; ut, *Quis, cujus*.

Reciproca, quæ recipiunt se ad eandem tertiam personam quæ præcessit; ut, *Sui, suus*.

Petrus rogat nē se deserās.

Parcit quisque erroribus suis.

Trahit sua quemque voluptas, i. e. Quisque trahitur à voluptate sua.

Decl-

Pronouns
have four
Declensions

Of the First
are *Ego, tu,*
sui.

There bee four Declensions of Pronouns.

The Genitive case singular of the first Declension endeth in *i*: of the Second in *ius*, or *jus*: of the Third in *i*, & *i*: of the Fourth in *atis*.

Ego, tu, sui, bee of the first Declension, and are thus declined.

Singulariter,	N. <i>Ego, I.</i>	Pluraliter,	N. <i>Nos, wee.</i>
	G. <i>Mei, of mee.</i>		G. <i>Nostrum, nostri, of us.</i>
	D. <i>Mihi, to mee.</i>		D. <i>Nobis, to us.</i>
	A. <i>Me, mee.</i>		A. <i>Nos, us.</i>
	V. <i>à Me, from mee.</i>		V. <i>à Nobis, from us.</i>
Singulariter,	N. <i>Tu, thou.</i>	Pluraliter,	N. <i>Vos, yee.</i>
	G. <i>Tui, of thee.</i>		G. <i>Vestrum, vestri, of you.</i>
	D. <i>Tibi, to thee.</i>		D. <i>Vobis, to you.</i>
	A. <i>Te, thee.</i>		A. <i>Vos, you.</i>
	V. <i>à Tu, à thou.</i>		V. <i>à Vos, à yee.</i>
	A. <i>à Te, from thee.</i>		A. <i>à Vobis, from you.</i>

Sing. & Plur.	{	Gen. <i>Sui, of himself, or</i>	But it want's the Nominat. and Vo- cative cases in both Numbers.
		Dat. <i>Sibi. themselves.</i>	
		Acc. <i>Se.</i>	
		Abl. <i>à Se.</i>	

Of the se-
cond *Ille,*
ipse, iste.

Ille, ipse, iste, hic, is, qui, and *quis* bee of the second Declension, and bee thus declined.

Singulariter,	N. <i>Iste, ista, istud.</i>	Pluraliter,	N. <i>Isti, ista, ista.</i>
	G. <i>Istius.</i>		G. <i>Istorum, istarum, istorum.</i>
	D. <i>Isti.</i>		D. <i>Istis.</i>
	A. <i>Istū, istam, istud.</i>		A. <i>Istos, istas, ista.</i>
	V. <i>à Istū, à ista, à istud.</i>		V. <i>Istis.</i>
	A. <i>Isto, istā, isto.</i>		A. <i>Istis.</i>

Ille, and *ipse* are declined like *iste*, saving that *ipse* in the Neuter Gender, in the Nominative and the Accusative case singular maketh *ipsum*.

Hic

Declinationes Pronominum sunt quatuor.

Genitivus Singularis Primæ Declinationis exit in *i*: Secundæ in *im*, vel *um*: Tertiæ in *i*, & *i*: clinationes. Quartæ in *at*.

Ego, tu, sui, Primæ sunt Declinationis, & sic variantur. Primæ sunt Ego, tu, sui.

Singular.	Nom.	Ego.	Plural.	Nom.	No.
	Gen.	Mei.		Gen.	Nostrum, vel Nostrum.
	Dat.	Mihi.		Dat.	Nobis.
	Acc.	Me.		Acc.	Nos.
	Voc.			Voc.	
	Abl.	à Mea		Abl.	à Nobis.

Singular.	Nom.	Tu.	Plural.	Nom.	Vos.
	Gen.	Tui.		Gen.	Vestrum, vel Vestrum.
	Dat.	Tibi.		Dat.	Vobis.
	Acc.	Te.		Acc.	Vos.
	Voc.	ô Tu.		Voc.	ô Vos.
	Abl.	à Te.		Abl.	à Vobis.

Sing. & Plur.	Gen.	Sui.	Caret autem Nominativo & Vocativo utriusque Numeri.
	Dat.	Sibi.	
	Acc.	Se.	
	Abl.	à Se.	

Ille, ipse, iste, hic, is, qui, & quis, secundæ sunt Declinationis, & sic variantur. Secundæ, Ille, ipse, iste.

Singulariter,	N.	Iste, ista, istud.	Pluraliter,	N.	Isti, ista, ista.
	G.	Istius.		G.	Istorum, istarum, istorum.
	D.	Isti.		D.	Istis.
	A.	Istum, istam, istud.		A.	Istos, istos, ista.
	V.			V.	
	A.	Isto, ista, isto.		A.	Istis.

Ille, & ipse variantur sicut iste, nisi quod ipse in Neutro genere in Nominativo & Accusativo singulari facit ipsum. Hic

The Latine Grammar.

Hic is declined as is aforefaid in the Articles
pag. 7.

Singulariter,	Nom.	<i>Is, ea, id.</i>	Pluraliter,	Nom.	<i>Is, ea, ea.</i>
	Gen.	<i>Eius.</i>		Gen.	<i>Eorū, earum, eorū.</i>
	Dat.	<i>Ei.</i>		Dat.	<i>Is, vel eis.</i>
	Acc.	<i>Eum, eam, id.</i>		Acc.]	<i>Eos, eas, ea.</i>
	Voc.			Voc.	
	Abl.	<i>Eo, eā, eo.</i>		Abl.	<i>Is, vel eis.</i>

So also is the
Compound of *is*
and *demon* decli-
ned

Sing.	Nom.	<i>Idem, eadem, idem.</i>
	Gen.	<i>Ejusdem,</i>
	Dat.	<i>Eidem.</i>
	Acc.	<i>Eundem, eandem, idem.</i>

Singulariter,	N.	<i>Qui, quæ, quod.</i>	Pluraliter,	N.	<i>Qui, quæ, quæ.</i>
	G.	<i>Cujus.</i>		G.	<i>Quorū, quarū, quorū.</i>
	D.	<i>Cui.</i>		D.	<i>Quibus, vel quæis.</i>
	A.	<i>Quem, quam, quod.</i>		A.	<i>Quos, quæ, quæ.</i>
	V.			V.	
	A.	<i>{ Qui, } quæ, quo.</i>		A.	<i>{ Quibus, } Quæis.</i>

After this manner also is declined *Quis, quæ, quid.*

But its cōpound thus:	Nom.	<i>Quisquis, quicquid.</i>
	Accu.	<i>Quicquid.</i>
	Abl.	<i>Quoquo, quaquæ, quoquo.</i>

Of the
Third,
Meus, tuus,
suus, noster,
vester, cujus.

Meus, tuus, suus, noster, vester, & cujus bcc of the third Declension, and are declined like Adjectives of three Terminations, on this manner.

Nominativo	<i>Meus, mea, meum.</i>	Genitivo	<i>Mei, mea, mei,</i>	And so in the other cases.
	<i>Tuus, tua, tuum.</i>		<i>Tui, tua, tui.</i>	
	<i>Suus, sua, suum.</i>		<i>Sui, sua, sui.</i>	
	<i>Noster, nostra, nostrum.</i>		<i>Nostri, nostra, nostri.</i>	
	<i>Vester, vestra, vestrum.</i>		<i>Vestri, vestra, vestri.</i>	
	<i>Cujus, cuja, cujum.</i>			

But *Meus* hath *Mi, mea, meum*, in the Vocative case singular.

Nostras,

Hic declinatur ut prius in Articulis dictum est, Hic, &c.

pag. 7.

Singulariter,	Nom.	Is, ea, id.	Pluraliter,	N.	Is, ea, ea.
	Gen.	Ejus.		G.	Eorum, earum, eorum.
	Dat.	Ei.		D.	Iis, vel eis.
	Accu.	Eum, eam, id.		Ac.	Eos, eas, ea.
	Voc.			Vo.	
	Abl.	Eo, ea, eo.		Ab.	Iis, vel eis.

Sic variatur etiam compositum ab is & demum :	Sing.	Nom.	Idem, eadem, idem.
		Gen.	Eiusdem.
		Dat.	Eidem.
		Acc.	Eundem, eandem, idem.

Singulariter,	N.	Qui, quæ, quod.	Pluraliter,	N.	Qui, quæ, quæ.
	G.	Cujus.		G.	Quorum, quarum, quorum.
	D.	Cui.		D.	Quibus, vel quæis.
	A.	Quem, quam, quod.		A.	Quos, quas, quæ.
	V.			V.	
	A.	{ Quo, } quâ, quo.		A.	{ Quibus. } Quæis.

Ad hunc modum etiam variatur, *Quis, quæ, quid, &c.*

Ejus compositum sic :	Nom.	Quisquis, quicquid.
	Acc.	Quicquid.
	Abl.	Quoquo, quaquâ, quoquo.

Mens, tuus, suus, noster, vester, & cuius, tertiæ sunt Declinationis, & variantur ad formam Adjectivorum Terminationum in hunc modum.

Nominativo	<i>Mens, mea, meum.</i>	Genitivo	<i>Mei, meæ, mei.</i>	Et sic in reliquis casibus.
	<i>Tuus, tua, tuum.</i>		<i>Tui, tuæ, tui.</i>	
	<i>Suus, sua, suum.</i>		<i>Sui, suæ, sui.</i>	
	<i>Noster, nostra, nostrum.</i>		<i>Nostri, nostræ, nostri.</i>	
	<i>Vester, vestra, vestrum.</i>		<i>Vestri, vestræ, vestri.</i>	
	<i>Cuius, cuius, cuius.</i>			

Sed *Mens* habet *Mi, mea, meum*, in Vocativo singulari.

Nostras,

Tertiæ,
*Mens, Tuus,
Suus, No-
ster, Vester,
& Cuius.*

Of the
Fourth,
Nostros,
vestros,
cujus.

Nostros, vestros, and cujus, bee of the fourth Declension, and are declined like Adjectives of three Articles.

As, | Nom. $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Nostros,} \\ \text{Vestros,} \\ \text{Cujus,} \end{array} \right\}$ Gen. $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Nostri,} \\ \text{Vestri,} \\ \text{Cujus,} \end{array} \right\}$ &c.

Pronouns are compounded,

Of the
Composition
of
Pronouns.

1. Among themselves; as, *Ego-ipse, mei-ipsius, mihi-ipsi. Istic, & illic.*

Istic and illic bee thus declined, | Nom. *Istic, istec, istoc, vel istuc.*
| Acc. *Istinc, istanc, istoc, vel istuc.*
| Abl. *Istoc, istac, istoc.*

Plur. Nom. & Acc. *Istac.*

2. With Nouns; as, *Aliquis, huiusmodi.*

3. With Verbs; as, *Quivis, quilibet.*

4. With Adverbs; as, *Nequis.*

So also $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Eccum, eccam,} \\ \text{Eccos, eccas,} \end{array} \right\}$ of ecce $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Ellū, ellam,} \\ \text{Ellos, ellas,} \end{array} \right\}$ of ecce and it. $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Ellū, ellam,} \\ \text{Ellos, ellas,} \end{array} \right\}$ & ille.

5. With a Conjunction; as, *Quisnam, siquis.*

6. With a Preposition; as, *Mecum, nobiscum.*

7. With Syllabical additions; *met, te, pte, ce, cine,* of which *met* is added to the first and second person; as, *Egomēt, tuimēt*: also wee say *stibimēt* and *semet*, but wee do not say *tumēt*, lest it should seem a Verb of *tumeo*, to swell.

Te is added onely to *tu* and *te*; as, *Tute, tete.*

Pte is added to these Ablatives Feminine; *Meā, tuā, suā, nostrā, vestrā*; as, *Meāpte, tuāpte, suāpte, nostrāpte, vestrāpte*; and sometimes to their Masculines and Neuters; as, *Meopte, labore, suopte jumento.*

Ce is added to all cases of these Pronouns, *hic, ille, iste*, as oft as they end in *s*; as, *Huiusce, hosce, hysce*; wee say also, *hicce, huncce, and ejusce*; and sometimes *bice* is read.

Cine

Nostras, vestras, & cujas, quartæ sunt Declinationis, *Quartæ, Nostras, vestras, cujas.*
& variantur ad formam Adjectivorum trium Articulorum.

ut, | Nom. { *Nostras,*
 Vestras, } Gen. { *Nostratis.*
 Cujas, } *Vestris.* } &c.
 Cujatis.

Pronomina componuntur,

1. Inter se; ut, *Ego-ipse, mei-ipsius, mihi-ipsi. Istic*
& *illic.*

Istic & illic | Nom. | *Istic, istac, istoc, vel istuc.*
sic variantur, | Accus. | *Istinc, istanc, istoc vel istuc.*
 | Abl. | *Istoc, istac, istoc.*
 Plur. Nom. & Acc. *Istæc.*

2. Cum Nominibus; ut, *Aliquis, hujusmodi.*

3. Cum Verbis; ut, *Quivis, quilibet.*

4. Cum Adverbiis; ut, *Nequis.*

Sic { *Eccum, eccam,* } ab ecce { *Elum, ellam,* } ab ecce
etiam { *Eccos, eccas,* } & is. { *Ellos, ellas,* } & ille.

5. Cum Conjunctione; ut, *Quisnam, siquis.*

6. Cum Præpositione; ut, *Mecum, nobiscum.*

7. Cum syllabicis adjectionibus, *met, te, pte, ce, cine;*
quarum *met* adjicitur primæ & secundæ personæ; ut,
Egomet, tuimet, sibimet, etiam & *semet* dicimus. Sed
tumet non dicimus, nè videatur esse Verbum à
tumeo.

Te adjicitur tantum *tu & te*; ut, *Tute, tete.*

Pte apponitur istis Ablativis scemininis, *Meâ, tuâ,*
suâ, nostrâ, vestrâ; ut, *Meâpte, tuâpte, suâpte, nostrâpte*
vestrâpte, & interdum eorundem masculinis & neutris;
ut, *Meôpte labore, suôpte jumento.*

Ce adjicitur obliquis horum Pronominum, *Hic, ille,*
iste, quoties in *s* desinunt; ut, *Hujusce, hoscce, hisce.*
Dicimus etiam *hicce, huncce,* & *ejusce,* & interdum
hice legitur.

Cine

Cine is put to the Nominative and Accusative of *Hic*; as, *Hiccine, haccine, hoccine*; *Huncine, huncine, hoccine*, &c.

Quis and *qui* are compounded on this manner; *Quis* in composition is set after these particles, viz.

<i>Et,</i>	} as,	<i>Ecquis, what one.</i>
<i>Ne,</i>		<i>Nequis, no one.</i>
<i>Alim,</i>		<i>Aliquis, som one.</i>
<i>Num,</i>		<i>Nunquis, whether any one.</i>
<i>Si,</i>		<i>Siquis, if any one.</i>

And these in the Feminine gender singular, and in the Neuter plural make *qua*, not *quæ*; as, *Siqua mulier, If any woman. Nequa flagitia, Not any villainie.* But *Ecquis* make's *ecqua* and *ecqua* in the Feminine gender.

Quis in composition is set before these particles, viz.

<i>Nam,</i>	} as,	<i>Quisnam.</i>
<i>Piam,</i>		<i>Quispiam.</i>
<i>Putas,</i>		<i>Quisputas.</i>
<i>Quam,</i>		<i>Quisquam.</i>
<i>Que,</i>		<i>Quisque.</i>

Qui in composition is set before these particles, viz.

<i>Dam,</i>	} as,	<i>Quidam, a certain one.</i>
<i>Vis,</i>		<i>Quivis, who you will.</i>
<i>Liber,</i>		<i>Quilibet, who that will.</i>
<i>Cunque,</i>		<i>Quicunque, whosoever.</i>

And these every where keep *qua*; as, *Quanam doctrina, what learning*; *quæcunque negotia, whatsoever business.*

Cine apponitur casibus in c desinentibus ; ut ,
Hiccine, haccine, hoccine ; Huncine, hancine, hoccine,
&c.

Quis & qui in hunc modum componuntur.

Quis in compositione hisce particulis post-
ponitur, viz.

Et,	} ut	Ecquis.
Ne,		Nequis.
Alius,		Aliquis.
Num,		Nunquid.
Si,		Siquis.

Et hæc tam in fœminino singulari, quàm in neutro
plurali, qua habent, non qua ; ut, Siqua mulier. Ne-
qua flagitia. Sed Ecquis habet ecqua & ecqua in fœ-
minino.

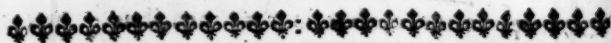
His autem particulis præponitur Quis in compo-
sitione, viz.

Nam,	} ut,	Quisnam.
Piam,		Quispiam.
Putas,		Quisputas.
Quam,		Quisquam.
Que,		Quisque.

Qui in compositione præponitur his particu-
lis, viz.

Dam,	} ut,	Quidam.
Vis,		Quivis.
Libet,		Quilibet.
Cunque,		Quicunque.

Et hæc ubique qua retinent ; ut, Quanam doctrina ;
acunque negotia.



III.
A Verb
signifieth to
bee, to do,
or to suffer.

It is
Personal,

or,

Imper-
sonal.

There be-
long to a
Verb, five
Kindes.

Active.

Passive.

Neuter.

Chap. 24. Of a Verb and its Kindes.

A V E R B is a part of Speech which signifieth to bee, to do, or to suffer; as, *Sum, I am; Amo, I love; Amor, I am loved.*

Personal, which is distinguished by three Persons in both Numbers; as, Singul. *Amo, I love; Amas, thou lovest; Amat, hee loveth.* Plur. *Amamus, we love; Amatis, ye love; Amant, they love.*

Impersonal, which hath no certain signification of Person or Number, unless it bee by means of an oblique case; as, *Oportet me, It behooveth mee; oportet te, it behooveth thee; statur à me, it is stood of mee, or I stand; statur à te, it is stood of thee, or thou standest.*

There belong to a Verb, I. Kinde. II. Mood.

III. Tens. IV. Conjugation:

I. There bee five Kindes of Verbs.

1. *Active*, which signifieth to do, and endeth in *o*, as, *Amo, I love*; and by taking to it *r* may bee made a Passive; as, *Amor, I am loved.*

2. *Passive*, which signifieth to suffer, and endeth in *or*; and by taking away *r* it may bee an Active; as, *Amo, I love.*

3. A *Neuter*, endeth in *o* or *m*, and cannot take to make it a Passive; as, *Curro, I run; Sum, I am.*

There bee three Kindes of Neuters, according to their signification.

Substantive, which signifieth the Beeing of a thing; as, *Sum, I am.*

Absolute, which by it self maketh up the sense; as, *dormio, I sleep.*

Transitive, whose action passeth into a thing of new signification; as, *Carro stadium, I run a race.*

Cap. 24. De Verbo, & ejus Accidētibz.

III.

Verbum
esse, agere,
aut pati si-
gnificat.
Estque
Personale,

VERBUM est pars Orationis, quæ esse aliquid, agereve, aut pati significat; ut, *Sum, Amo, Amor.*

Personale, quod tribus personis in utroque numero distinguitur; ut, Singulariter *Amo, Amas, Amat*; Plur. *Amamus, Amatis, Amant.*

vel;

Verbum dividitur in primis in

Impersonale, quod nullius personæ aut numeri certam significationem, nisi ex adsonale juncto casu obliquo, sortitur; ut, *Oportet me, oportet te; Statur à me, statur à te.*

Verbo quidem accidunt, I. *Genus.* II. *Modus.* III. *Tempus.* IV. *Conjugatio.*

Accidunt
Verbo
quinque
genera.
Activum.

I. Quinque sunt Genera Verborum.

1. *Activum*, quod agere significat, & in *o* finitur; ut, *Amo*: assumendo verò *r* Passivum formare potest; ut, *Amor.*

2. *Passivum*, quod pati significat, & in *or* finitur, Passivum dempro verò *r* Activi formam resumere potest; ut, *Amo.*

3. *Neutrum*, quod in *o* vel *m* finitum, nec ad-Neutrum mittit *r* ut fiat Passivum; ut, *Curro, Sum.*

Neutrorum tria sunt genera, secundum eorum significationem.

Substantivum, quod substantiam rei significat; ut, *Sum.*

Absolutum, quod ipsum per se sensum absolvit; ut, *Dormio.*

Transitivum, cujus actio in rem cognatæ significationis transit; ut, *Curro stadium.*

Deponent. 4. A *Deponent* endeth in *or*, and hath either the Active signification; as, *Loquor verbum*, **I speak a word**; or the Neuter; as, *Glorior*, **I boast**.

Commune. 5. A *Commune* endeth in *or*, and hath both the Active, and Passive signification; as, *Osculor*, **I kiss**, or **am kissed**.

Four Moods. II. There bee four *Moods*:

Indicative. 1. The *Indicative* simply sheweth a thing, or asketh a question; as, *Ego amo*, **I love**; *Amas tu?* **lovest thou?**

Imperative. 2. The *Imperative* biddeth or intreateth; as, *Amata*, **do thou love**; *Da mihi*, **give me**.

Subjunctive. 3. The *Subjunctive* is joined with another Verb in the same sentence; as, *Cum amarem*, **eram miser**, **when I loved, I was a wretch**.

And this mood is called the *Optative*, when it is used in **wishing**; and the *Potential* when it is construed by **may**, **can**, **would**, **should**, or **ought**.

Infinitive,
to which
along 4. The *Infinitive* doth not define a certain person, or number; as, *Amare*, **to love**. And to this mood belong three *Gerunds*, which have their case or ending of a Noun, and their signification of a Verb.

Three Gerunds,
in, de, dum. G. *Di*,
D.Ab. *Do*,
N.Ac. *Dum*, } as, { *Amandi*, of **loving**, or **being loved**.
 Amando, in **loving**, or **being loved**.
 Amandum, **to love**, or **to be loved**.

Two Supines,
in & u. Two *Supines*,
 whereof { The first endeth in *um*, and signifi-
 eth **Actively**; as, *Amatum*, **to love**.
 The later endeth in *u*, and signifi-
 eth **Passively**; as, *Amatu*, **to be**
 loved.

III. Verbs have five *Tenses*.

Present. 1. The *Present tense* which speaketh of the time present, and signifie's now to do, or to be done; as, *Amo*, **I love**.

2. The

4. *Deponens*, quod in *or* finitum, vel *A*ctivi signifi- *Deponens.*
cationem habet; ut, *Loquor verbum*; vel neutrius; ut,
Glorior.

5. *Commune*, quod in *or* finitum, tam Activam, *Commune*.
quàm Passivam significationem habet; ut, *Osculor*.

II. *Modi* Verborum sunt quatuor :

1. *Indicativus* simpliciter aliquid indicat, aut in- *Indicativus*
terrogat; ut, *Ego amo. Amas tu?*

Modi qua-
tuor.

Indicativus

2. *Imperativus* imperat aut rogat ; ut, *Ama tu.* Imperativus.

**Impera-
tivus.**

3. *Subjunctivus* subjungitur alteri Verbo in eâdem *Subjuncti-*
sententiâ ; ut, *Cum amarem, eram miser.* *vus.*

Subjuncti-
vus.

Atque hic Modus dicitur *Optativus*, quando in optando usurpatur; *Potentialis* verò quando per *Possum, volo, aut debeo* exponitur.

4. *Infinitivus* certam personam, aut numerum non definit; ut, *Amare*. Et ad hunc Modum pertinent *Tria Gerundia*, quæ à Nomine casum, & à Verbo significationem accipiunt.

Infinitivus.
Ad quem
pertinent,

G. Di, } ut, { *Amandi.*
D.Ab. Do, } { *Amando.*
N.Ac. Dum, } { *Amandum.*

Gerundia,
Dido, drom.

Duo *Supina* { Prius exit in *um*, & Activè significat; *Supina* duo, *um*, & *u*.
quorum { ut, *Amatum*.
 { Posterius exit in *u*, & Passivè significat;
 { ut, *Amatu*.

III. *Tempora* Verborum sunt quinque.

1. *Præsens*, quod de tempore præsentis loquitur, quinque.
& aliquid nunc agere vel fieri significat; ut, *Amo.* *Præsens.*

Tempora
quinque.
Præsens.

Imperfect.

2. The *Preterimperfect* *tens* speaketh of the time not yet perfectly past; and signifieth a thing to bee don, but not yet finished; as, *Amābam*, *I loved*, or *I did love*.

Preter-perfect.

3. The *Preterperfect* *tens* speaketh of the time perfectly past, and signifieth a thing to bee now finished; as, *Amavi*, *I have loved*.

Preterpluperfect.

4. The *Preterpluperfect* *tens* speaketh of the time more than perfectly past, and signifieth a thing to bee long since finished; as, *Amaveram*, *I had loved*.

Future.

5. The *Future* *tens* speaketh of the time to come, and signifieth something to bee don for the future; as, *Amabo*, *I will love*.

The *Future* *tens* of the Subjunctive mood is called *Exaſt*; becauſe it hath the ſignification both of the *Preter* *tens*, and *Future* *tens* together; as, *Cum Amavero*, *When I ſhall have loved*.

Four Conjugations.

IV. *Conjugation* is the Varying of a Verb by Moods and Tenses.

Verbs have four *Conjugations*, which are known one from another by certain tokens, or characteriſtical letters.

whereof the firſt hath a long.

1. The firſt *Conjugation* hath a long before *re* and *riſ*; as, *Amāre*, *amaris*,

second long.

2. The ſecond *Conjugation* hath e long before *re* and *riſ*; as, *Docere*, *doceris*.

third short.

3. The third *Conjugation* hath e ſhort before *re* and *riſ*; as, *Legere*, *legēs*,

fourth hath long before re and

4. The fourth *Conjugation* hath i long before *re* and *riſ*; as, *Audire*, *audiriſ*,

in the Infinitive Mood Present *tens* of Verbs in o, and in the ſecond perſon ſingular of the Indicative mood Present *tens* of Verbs in or.

2. *Præteritum imperfectum*, de tempore nondum perfectè præterito loquitur, & aliquid fieri, sed nondum absolvi significat; ut, *Amabam*. Imperfectum.

3. *Præteritum Perfectum* de tempore perfectè præterito loquitur, & aliquid jam perfici significat; ut, *Amavi*. Perfectum.

4. *Præteritum plusquam perfectum* de tempore plusquàm perfectò loquitur, & aliquid jamdiu perfectum significat; ut, *Amaveram*. Plusquam perfectum.

5. *Futurum* loquitur de tempore futuro, & aliquid Futurum, de futuro, significat; ut, *Amabo*.

Subjunctivi Futurum dicitur *Exactum*, quòd præteriti simul & futuri significationem habeat; ut, *Cum Amavero*.

IV. *Conjugatio* est variatio Verbi per Modos & Tempora.

Verborum quatuor sunt Conjugationes, quæ à se invicem certis indicibus, sive literis characteristicis distinguuntur. Conjugationes quatuor.

1. Prima Conjugatio habet *a* productum ante *re* & *ris*; ut, *Amâre, amaris,*

2. Secunda Conjugatio habet *e* productum ante *re* & *ris*; ut, *Docère, doceris,*

3. Tertia Conjugatio habet *e* correptum ante *re* & *ris*; ut, *Lêgère, lêgeris,*

4. Quarta Conjugatio habet *i* productum ante *re*, & *ris*; ut, *Audire, audiris,*

in Infinitivo præsentis Verborum in *o*, & in secunda personâ singulari Indicativi præsentis Verborum in *or*.

Tertia e breve.

Quarta longum ante *re* & *ris*.

Pluperfect.											
Singular.	Sing.	1	Amaveram,	I had	Amatus	{	eram.	I had	been loved.		
		2	Amaveras,	thou hadst		{	eras.	thou hadst			
		3	Amaverat,	hee had		{	fueras.	hee had			
Plural.	Plur.	1	Amaveramus,	we had	Amati	{	fueras.	we had	been loved.		
		2	Amaveratis,	ye had		{	fueraſ.	ye had			
		3	Amaverant,	they had		{	fuerant.	they had			

Future.											
Singular.	Sing.	1	Amabo,	I shall	Amabor,	{	Amabero.	I shall	be loved.		
		2	Amabis,	thou shalt		{	Amaberis.	thou shalt			
		3	Amabit,	hee shall		{	Amabitur,	hee shall			
Plural.	Plur.	1	Amabimus,	we shall	Amabimur,	{	Amabimur,	we shall	be loved.		
		2	Amabitis,	ye shall		{	Amabimini,	ye shall			
		3	Amabuntur,	they shall		{	Amabuntur.	they shall			

Future.									
Sing.	Singular.	1	Amabo,	I shall	love.	{	Amabo,	I shall	be loved.
		2	Amabis,	thou shalt		{	Amabis,	thou shalt	
		3	Amabit,	hee shall		{	Amabitur,	hee shall	
Plur.	Plural.	1	Amabimus,	we shall		{	Amabimur,	we shall	
		2	Amabitis,	ye shall		{	Amabimini,	ye shall	
		3	Amabuntur,	they shall		{	Amabuntur,	they shall	

The Imperative Mood hath one only Tenſ.
viz. the Preſent Tenſ.

Preſent tenſ.							
Singular.	Sing.	2	{ Ama,	Love thou.	{ Amare,	Be thou loved.	
			{ Amato.		{ Amator.		
		3	{ Amer,	let him love.	{ Ameris,	let him be loved.	
Plural.	Plur.	1	{ Amato.	let him love.	{ Amator.	let him be loved.	
		1	{ Amemus,	let us love.	{ Amemur,	let us be loved.	
		2	{ Amate,	love ye.	{ Amamini,	be ye loved.	
			{ Amatoſe,		{ Amaminiſ.		
		3	{ Ament,	let them love.	{ Amentur,	be they loved.	
			{ Amantio,		{ Amantor.		

The Potential Mood.

Present tense.							
Sing.	1	<i>Amem.</i>	I may	love.	{	<i>Amer.</i>	I may
	2	<i>Ameis.</i>	thou maist			<i>Ameris</i>	thou maist
	3	<i>Amet.</i>	hee may			<i>Ameve.</i>	hee may
Plur.	1	<i>Amemus.</i>	wee may		{	<i>Ametur.</i>	wee may
	2	<i>Ametis.</i>	ye may			<i>Amemur.</i>	ye may
	3	<i>Ament.</i>	they may			<i>Amemini.</i>	they may
Imperfect.							
Sing.	1	<i>Amarem.</i>	I might	love.	{	<i>Amarer.</i>	I might
	2	<i>Amares.</i>	thou mightst			<i>Amareris</i>	thou mightst
	3	<i>Amer.</i>	hee might			<i>Amarere.</i>	hee might
Plur.	1	<i>Amaremus.</i>	wee might		{	<i>Amareretur.</i>	wee might
	2	<i>Amareris.</i>	ye might			<i>Amareremur.</i>	ye might
	3	<i>Amarerent.</i>	they might			<i>Amareremini.</i>	they might
Pluperfect.							
Sing.	1	<i>Amaverem.</i>	I might	have loved.	{	<i>fuerim.</i>	I might
	2	<i>Amaveris.</i>	thou mightst			<i>fueris</i>	thou mightst
	3	<i>Amaverit.</i>	hee might			<i>fuerit.</i>	hee might
Plur.	1	<i>Amaverimus.</i>	wee might		{	<i>fuerimus.</i>	wee might
	2	<i>Amaveritis.</i>	ye might			<i>fueritis.</i>	ye might
	3	<i>Amaverint.</i>	they might			<i>fuerint.</i>	they might
Pluperpluperfect.							
Sing.	1	<i>Amaviffem.</i>	I might	have had loved.	{	<i>fuissem.</i>	I might
	2	<i>Amaviffes.</i>	thou mightst			<i>fuisfes.</i>	thou mightst
	3	<i>Amaviffet.</i>	hee might			<i>fuisfet.</i>	hee might
Plur.	1	<i>Amaviffemus.</i>	wee might		{	<i>fuissemus.</i>	wee might
	2	<i>Amaviffetis.</i>	ye might			<i>fuisfetis.</i>	ye might
	3	<i>Amaviffent.</i>	they might			<i>fuisfent.</i>	they might

Sing.	1	<i>Amavero,</i>	I may	Amatus love hereafter.	{ <i>ero</i>	I may	Amatus be loved hereafter.
	2	<i>Amaveris,</i>	thou maist		{ <i>fuero,</i>	thou maist	
	3	<i>Amaverit,</i>	hee may		{ <i>eris</i>	hee may	
Plur.	1	<i>Amaverimus,</i>	wee may	Amati love hereafter.	{ <i>erit</i>	wee may	Amati be loved hereafter.
	2	<i>Amaveritis,</i>	ye may		{ <i>fuerit,</i>	ye may	
	3	<i>Amaverint,</i>	they may		{ <i>erimus</i>	they may	
					{ <i>fuerimus,</i>		
					{ <i>eritis</i>		
					{ <i>fueritis,</i>		
					{ <i>erunt</i>		
					{ <i>fuerint</i>		

The Infinitive Mood.

Present and Imperfect. } *Amare,* } } to love. } } *Amari,* } } to be loved.

Superperf. and Superplup. } *Amavisse,* } } to have or had loved. } } *Amatum esse vel fuisse* } } to have or had been loved.

The Future Tense. } *Amaturum esse* } } to love hereafter } } *Amatum iri vel Amandum esse.* } } to be loved hereafter.

Gerunds.

Amandi, } } of loving. } } of being loved.
Amando, } } in loving. } } in being loved.
Amandum, } } to love. } } to be loved.

Supines.

Amatum, to love. | *Amatum,* to be loved.

Participles.

Of the Present Tense. } *Amans,* } } loving. } } Of the Present Tense. } *Amatus,* } } loved.
Of the Future Tense in *rus.* } *Amaturus,* } } about to love. } } Of the Future Tense in *rus.* } *Amatus,* } } to be loved.

Chap. 26. Of the form of the Second Conjugation.

Verba in (o) secun-
da Conjugatio-
nis formantur
sicut Docet.

Verbs in (o) of the
second Conju-
gation bee for-
med like Docet.

Verba in (o) se-
cunda Conju-
gationis formā-
tur sicut Docet.

Verbs in (o) of the
second Conju-
gation bee for-
med like Docet.

Dico, docet, docui, docere, doctum.

Doce- { docet, is, } do- { sum, } doc-
or, { docere, } as { sui, } ri

The Indicative Mood,

Present tense	Sing.	1	2	3	Sing.
		1	2	3	
		1	2	3	
Plur.	1	1	2	3	Plur.
		1	2	3	
		1	2	3	
Plur.	1	1	2	3	Plur.
		1	2	3	
		1	2	3	

Imperfect.	Sing.	1	2	3	Sing.
		1	2	3	
		1	2	3	
Plur.	1	1	2	3	Plur.
		1	2	3	
		1	2	3	
Plur.	1	1	2	3	Plur.
		1	2	3	
		1	2	3	

Perfect.	Sing.	1	2	3	Sing.
		1	2	3	
		1	2	3	
Plur.	1	1	2	3	Plur.
		1	2	3	
		1	2	3	
Plur.	1	1	2	3	Plur.
		1	2	3	
		1	2	3	

Sing.	1	Docuēam.	I had	Sing.	1	Docuēam.	I had	been taught.
	2	Docuēas.	thou hadst		2	Docuēas.	thou hadst	
	3	Docuēat.	hee had		3	Docuēat.	hee had	
Plur.	1	Docuēamur.	wee had	Plur.	1	Docuēamur.	wee had	been taught.
	2	Docuēamini.	ye had		2	Docuēamini.	ye had	
	3	Docuēant.	they had		3	Docuēant.	they had	

Sing.	1	Docēbo.	I will	Sing.	1	Docēbo.	I will	bee taught.
	2	Docēbis.	thou wilt		2	Docēbis.	thou wilt	
	3	Docēbit.	hee will		3	Docēbit.	hee will	
Plur.	1	Docēbimur.	wee will	Plur.	1	Docēbimur.	wee will	bee taught.
	2	Docēbitis.	ye will		2	Docēbitis.	ye will	
	3	Docēbunt.	they will		3	Docēbunt.	they will	

The Imperative Mood.

Sing.	2	Docē.	Teach thou.	Sing.	2	Docē.	Bee thou	taught.
	3	Docēat.	let him teach.		3	Docēat.	let him bee	
	1	Docēamur.	Let us teach.		1	Docēamur.	let us bee	
Plur.	2	Docēre.	teach yee.	Plur.	2	Docēre.	bee yee	taught.
	3	Docēant.	let them teach.		3	Docēant.	let them bee	

The Potential Mood.

Sing.	1	Docēam.	I may	Sing.	1	Docēam.	I might	taught.
	2	Docēas.	thou mayst		2	Docēas.	thou might	
	3	Docēat.	hee may		3	Docēat.	hee might	
Plur.	1	Docēamur.	wee may	Plur.	1	Docēamur.	wee might	taught.
	2	Docēamini.	ye may		2	Docēamini.	ye might	
	3	Docēant.	they may		3	Docēant.	they might	

Imper.

Imperfect.	Plur. 1 Sing.			teach.		
1	Docerem.	I	might	}	Doceres.	I might
2	Doceres.	thou	might		Docereris	thou might
3	Doceret.	hee	might		Docerere	(tell)
1	Doceremus.	wee	might	}	Doceretis.	hee might
2	Doceretis.	ye	might		Doceremini	wee might
3	Docerent.	they	might		Docerentur.	ye might

Perfect.	Plur. 1 Sing.			have taught.	Doctus		
1	Docuerim.	I	might	}	}	fuerim.	I might
2	Docueris.	thou	might			fueris.	thou might
3	Docuerit.	hee	might			fuerit.	(tell)
1	Docuerimus.	wee	might	}	}	fuerimus.	hee might
2	Docueritis.	ye	might			fueritis.	wee might
3	Docuerint.	they	might			fuerint.	ye might

Pluperfect.	Plur. 1 Sing.			have had taught.	Doctus		
1	Docuissem.	I	might	}	}	fuissem.	I might
2	Docuisses.	thou	might			fuisset.	thou might
3	Docuisset.	hee	might			fuisset.	(tell)
1	Docuissemus.	wee	might	}	}	fuissemus.	hee might
2	Docuissetis.	ye	might			fuissetis.	wee might
3	Docuissent.	they	might			fuisissent.	ye might

Futur

Future.	Sing.	1	Plur.		I may thou maist hee may wee may yee may they may	teach hereafter.	Doctus Docta	Sero fuero. eris fueris. erit fuerit. erimus fuerimus eritis fueritis. erint fuerint.	I may thou maist hee may wee may yee may they may	bee taught hereafter.
		1		Docuero,	I may			Sero	I may	
		2		Docueris,	thou maist			fuero.	thou maist	
		3		Docuerit .	hee may			eris	hee may	
		1		Docuerimus	wee may			fueris.	wee may	
		2		Docueritis,	yee may			erit	yee may	
		3		Docuerint.	they may			fuerit.	they may	
								erimus		
								fuerimus		
								eritis		
								fueritis.		
								erint		
								fuerint.		

The Infinitive Mood.

Present and } Docere. } to teach. } Doceri. } to bee taught.
 Preterim-
 perf. tens. }

Preterperf. } Docuisse. } to have } Docuisse. } to have or
 and } or }
 Preterplup. } had taught. } fuisse. } had been
 taught.

Future. } Dociturum } to teach } Dociturum iri, vel } to bee taught
 esse. } hereafter. } Docendum esse. } here after.

Gerunds.

Docendi, of teaching, or of beeing taught.
 Docendo, in teaching, or of beeing taught.
 Docendum, to teach, or to bee taught.

Supines.

Docitum, to teach. | Docitu, to bee taught.

Participles.

Of the Pre- } Docens. } teach- } Of the Pre- } Docens. } taught.
 sent tens. } ing. } ter tens. }

Of the Fu- } Docens. } about to } Of the Fu- } Docendus. } to bee
 ture in tens. } teach. } ture in tens. }

Chap. 27. Of the form of the third Conjugation.

Verba in (o) tertie
Conjugationis
formantur sicut
Lego.

Verbs in (o) of the
third Conjugation
bee formed
like *Lego.*

Verba in (or) tertie
Conjugationis
formantur sicut
Legor.

verbs in (or) of the
third Conjugation
bee formed
like *Legor.*

Ego, lego, legis, legere, lectum.

*Legor, { legēria, } { sum, } legi.
 { legere, } { fui. }*

Indicative Mood.

Present tense.		I read.		I am	
Sing.	1	<i>Ego.</i>	thou readest.	<i>Legor,</i>	thou art
	2	<i>Legis.</i>	hee readeth.	<i>{ Legeris,</i>	} read.
	3	<i>Legit.</i>		<i>{ Legere.</i>	
Plur.	1	<i>Legimus.</i>	wee read.	<i>Legimur.</i>	hee is
	2	<i>Legitis.</i>	ye read.	<i>Legimini.</i>	wee are
	3	<i>Legunt.</i>	they read.	<i>Leguntur.</i>	they are
Imperfect.		I did read.		I was	
Sing.	1	<i>Legēbam.</i>	thou readest.	<i>Legēbar,</i>	thou wast
	2	<i>Legēbar.</i>	hee did read.	<i>{ Legēbāris,</i>	} was
	3	<i>Legēbat.</i>		<i>{ Legēbare.</i>	
Plur.	1	<i>Legēbāmus.</i>	wee did	<i>Legēbamur,</i>	wee were
	2	<i>Legēbāris.</i>	ye did	<i>Legēbamini.</i>	ye were
	3	<i>Legēbant.</i>	they did	<i>Legēbantur.</i>	they were
Perfect.		I have		I have	
Sing.	1	<i>Legi.</i>	thou hast	<i>{ sum,</i>	} have
	2	<i>Legisti.</i>	hee hath	<i>{ fui.</i>	
	3	<i>Legit.</i>		<i>{ es,</i>	
Plur.	1	<i>Legimus.</i>	wee have	<i>{ fuisti.</i>	hee hath
	2	<i>Legistis.</i>	ye have	<i>{ est,</i>	hee hath
	3	<i>Legērunt,</i>	they have	<i>{ sunt.</i>	wee have
		<i>Legērunt.</i>		<i>{ fuimus.</i>	ye have
				<i>{ estis,</i>	they have
				<i>{ fuistis.</i>	
				<i>{ sunt,</i>	
				<i>{ fuerunt,</i>	
				<i>{ fuerunt.</i>	

Present Tense		Future Tense	
Sing.	Plur.	Sing.	Plur.
1 Legam.	1 Legamus.	1 Legam.	1 Legamus.
2 Legas.	2 Legatis.	2 Leges.	2 Legetis.
3 Legat.	3 Legant.	3 Leget.	3 Legent.
I had	I had	I shall	I shall
thou hadst	thou hadst	thou shalt	thou shalt
hee had	hee had	hee shall	hee shall
wee had	wee had	wee shall	wee shall
ye had	ye had	ye shall	ye shall
they had	they had	they shall	they shall

The Imperative Mood.

Present Tense		Future Tense	
Sing.	Plur.	Sing.	Plur.
1 Legas.	1 Legamini.	1 Legas.	1 Legamini.
2 Legat.	2 Legamini.	2 Legat.	2 Legamini.
3 Legat.	3 Legant.	3 Legat.	3 Legant.
Read thou.	Read thou.	Read thou.	Read thou.
let him read.	let him read.	let him read.	let him read.
Let us read.	Let us read.	Let us read.	Let us read.
read ye.	read ye.	read ye.	read ye.
let them read.	let them read.	let them read.	let them read.

The Potential Mood.

Present Tense		Future Tense	
Sing.	Plur.	Sing.	Plur.
1 Legas.	1 Legamini.	1 Legas.	1 Legamini.
2 Legat.	2 Legamini.	2 Legat.	2 Legamini.
3 Legat.	3 Legant.	3 Legat.	3 Legant.
I may	I may	I may	I may
thou maist	thou maist	thou maist	thou maist
hee may	hee may	hee may	hee may
wee may	wee may	wee may	wee may
ye may	ye may	ye may	ye may
they may	they may	they may	they may

Imperfect.	Plur. 1 Sing.	1 <i>Legerem.</i>	I might	} 2d.	<i>Legeres.</i>	I might	} 3d.
		2 <i>Legeres.</i>	thou mightst		<i>Legereris.</i>	thou mightst	
		3 <i>Legeret.</i>	hee might		<i>Legeretur.</i>	hee might	
		1 <i>Legeremus.</i>	wee might		<i>Legeremini.</i>	wee might	
		2 <i>Legeretis.</i>	ye might		<i>Legeremini.</i>	ye might	
		3 <i>Legerent.</i>	they might		<i>Legerentur.</i>	they might	

Peter perfect.		1 Sing.	1	1 Sing.	1	1 Sing.	1	1 Sing.
Plur.								
1	Legerim.	I might	} have read.	1	fin	I might	} have been read.	
2	Legariz.	thou might		2	fuerim.	thou might		
3	Legeriz.	hee might		3	fis	hee might		
1	Legerimus.	alle might	} have read.	1	fueris.	alle might	} have been read.	
2	Legeritis.	yez might		2	fiz	yez might		
3	Legerint.	they might		3	fueriz.	they might		
				1	fimus			
				2	fuerimus.			
				3	firis			
				1	fueritis.			
				2	fint			
				3	fuerint.			

Peter plup.	Sing.	1 Legissem,	might	have had read.	Lectus	essem	I might	have had been read.
	Plur.	2 Legisses,	thou mightest			fuissē.	thou mightest	
		3 Legisset.	hee might			esses	hee might	
	Plur.	1 Legissemus,	we might	Lecti	esset	we might		
		2 Legissetis	ye might		fuisset.	ye might		
		3 Legissent.	they might		essent	they might		

Future tense.		I Sing.		I may		I Sing.		I may	
1	Legero,	1	Legerimus,	thou	mayst	1	Legero.	thou	mayst
2	Legeris,	2	Legeritis,	hee	may	2	eris.	hee	may
3	Legerit,	3	Legerint.	thou	may	3	eris.	thou	may
1	Legeris,	1	Legerimus,	hee	may	1	eris.	hee	may
2	Legeritis,	2	Legeritis,	thou	may	2	eris.	thou	may
3	Legerint.	3	Legerint.	hee	may	3	eris.	hee	may

The Infinitive Mood.

Present and
Imperfect
tens. } *Legere.* } } to read. } } *Legi.* } } to be read.

Preterperf.
and
Preterplup. } *Legisset.* } } to have or
had read } } *Legissem esse*
vel *fuisse.* } } to have or had
been read.

Future. } *Legiturum* } to read } } *Legiturum iri, vel* } to be read
esse. } hereafter. } } *legendum esse.* } hereafter.

Gerunds.

Legendi, of reading, or of being read.
Legendo, in reading, or of being read.
Legendum, to read, or to be read.

Supines.

Legitum, to read. *Legitum*, to be read.

Participles.

Of the Pres
ent tens. } *Legens.* } reading. } Of the
Preter
tens. } *Legitus.* } read.

Of the Fut
ure tens. } *Legiturus.* } to read. } Of the
Future
in *dis* } *Legiturus.* } to be
read.

Chap. 28. Of the form of the fourth Conjugation.

Verba in(o)quarta
Conjugationis
variantur sicut
Audio.

Verbs in (o) of the
fourth Conjugation
bee varied
like *Audio.*

Verba in(or)quarta
Conjugationis
variantur sicut
Audior.

Verbs in (or) of the
fourth Conjugation
bee varied
like *Audior.*

Audio, audis, audivi, audire, auditum.

Au- { *audiris,* } *audi* { *sum,* } *au-*
dior, { *audire,* } *tes* { *fui,* } *diri-*

The Indicative Mood.

Present tense.							
Sing.	1	<i>Audis.</i>	I hear.	<i>Audior.</i>	I am	heard.	
	2	<i>Audis.</i>	thou hearest.	{ <i>Audiris,</i>	thou art		
	3	<i>Audis.</i>	hee beareth.	{ <i>Audire.</i>	hee is		
Plur.	1	<i>Audimus.</i>	{ <i>Ecce</i> } ye hear.	<i>Audimur.</i>	ye are	heard.	
	2	<i>Auditis.</i>		<i>Audimini.</i>	ye are		
	3	<i>Audiunt.</i>		<i>Audiuntur.</i>	they are		
Preterimperfect.							
Sing.	1	<i>Audiebam.</i>	I did	<i>Audiebar.</i>	I was	heard.	
	2	<i>Audiebas.</i>	thou didst	{ <i>Audiebaris,</i>	thou wast		
	3	<i>Audiebat.</i>	hee did	{ <i>Audiebare.</i>	hee was		
Plur.	1	<i>Audiebamus.</i>	{ <i>Ecce</i> } ye did	<i>Audiebamur.</i>	ye were	heard.	
	2	<i>Audiebatis.</i>		<i>Audiebamini.</i>	ye were		
	3	<i>Audiebant.</i>		<i>Audiebantur.</i>	they were		
Pluperfect.							
Sing.	1	<i>Audivi.</i>	I have	{ <i>sum,</i>	I have	been heard.	
	2	<i>Audivisti.</i>	thou hast		thou hast		
	3	<i>Audivit.</i>	hee hath		hee hath		
Plur.	1	<i>Audivimus.</i>	{ <i>Ecce</i> } ye have	{ <i>fui.</i>	ye have	been heard.	
	2	<i>Audivistis.</i>		{ <i>es,</i>	ye have		
	3	<i>Audiverunt.</i>		{ <i>fuerunt,</i>	they have		
		<i>Audierunt.</i>		{ <i>fuerunt,</i>			

Peterpreter.	Sing.	1	Audiveram.	I had	Auditus.	1	fuera[m].	I had	been heard.
		2	Audiveras.	thou hadst		2	fuera[s].	thou hadst	
		3	Audiverat.	hee had		3	fuera[t].	hee had	
	Plur.	1	Audiveramus.	wee had	Auditi.	1	fuera[mus].	wee had	
		2	Audiveratis.	ye had		2	fuera[tis].	ye had	
		3	Audiverant.	they had		3	fuera[n]t.	they had	

Future.	Sing.	1	Audiam.	I shall	Audiar.	1	fuero.	I shall be	heard.
		2	Audies.	thou shalt		2	fuero[s].	thou shalt be	
		3	Audiet.	hee shall		3	fuero[t].	hee shall be	
	Plur.	1	Audiamus.	wee shall	Audiemur.	1	fuero[mus].	wee shall be	
		2	Audietis.	ye shall		2	fuero[tis].	ye shall be	
		3	Audient.	they shall		3	fuero[n]t.	they shall be	

The Imperative Mood.

Present tense.	Sing.	2	Audi.	Hear thou.	Audire.	2	exaudi.	Hear thou	heard.
		3	Audito.	let him hear.		3	exaudito.	let him be	
		3	Audite.	let him hear.		3	exaudite.	let him be	
	Plur.	1	Audiamus.	Let us hear.	Audiamur.	1	exaudiamur.	let us be	
		2	Audite.	hear ye.		2	exaudite.	be ye	
		3	Audiant.	let them hear.		3	exaudiant.	let them be	

The Potential Mood.

Present tense.	Sing.	1	Audiam.	I may	Audiar.	1	possum.	I may	be heard.
		2	Audias.	thou maist		2	possis.	thou maist	
		3	Audiat.	hee may		3	possit.	hee may	
	Plur.	1	Audiamus.	wee may	Audiamur.	1	possimus.	wee may	
		2	Audietis.	ye may		2	possitis.	ye may	
		3	Audiant.	they may		3	possint.	they may	

Present Imperfect.	Sing. 1 2 3 Plur. 1 2 3	Audirem. Audires. Audiret. Audirémus. Audiretis. Audirent.	I might thou might hee might Wee might yee might they might	hear.	Audier. Audieris. Audieret. Audieretur. Audieremur. Audieremini. Audierentur.	I might thou might hee might Wee might yee might they might	hee heard.
Pluperfect.	Sing. 1 2 3 Plur. 1 2 3	Audiverim. Audiveris. Audiverit. Audiverimus. Audiveritis. Audiverint.	I might thou might hee might Wee might yee might they might	have heard.	fuerim. fueris. fuerit. fuerimus. fueritis. fuerint.	I might thou might hee might Wee might yee might they might	have been heard.
Pluperfect.	Sing. 1 2 3 Plur. 1 2 3	Audivissem. Audivisses. Audivisset. Audivissemus. Audivissetis. Audivissent.	I might thou might hee might Wee might yee might they might	have had heard.	fuissem. fuisset. fuisset. fuissemus. fuissetis. fuisissent.	I might thou might hee might Wee might yee might they might	have had been heard.
Future.	Sing. 1 2 3 Plur. 1 2 3	Audiero. Audieris. Audierit. Audierimus. Audieritis. Audierint.	I may thou mayst hee may Wee may yee may they may	hear hereafter.	ero. eris. erit. erimus. eritis. erint.	I may thou mayst hee may Wee may yee may they may	hee heard hereafter.

The Infinitive Mood.

Present and Imperfect tense. } *Audire.* { to hear. } } *Audiri.* { to be heard.

Pluperfect and Pluperplup. } *Audivisse.* { to have heard. } } *Audivisse, vel fuisse.* { to have or had been heard.

Future. } *Auditurum esse.* { to hear hereafter. } } *Auditurum iri, vel Audiendum esse.* { to be heard hereafter.

Gerunds.

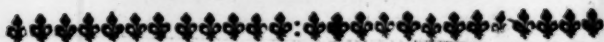
Audiendi, of hearing, or of being heard.
Audiendo, in hearing, or of being heard.
Audiendum, to hear, or to be heard.

Supines.

Audirum, to hear. *Auditu*, to be heard.

Participles.

Of the Present tense. } *Audiens*, hearing.
 Future in *rus*. } *Auditurus*, to hear.
 Of the Pluperfect tense. } *Audivens*, heard.
 Future in *ans*. } *Audiendus*, to be heard.



As in Præsenti.

OR,

WILLIAM LILIE'S Rules of the Preterperfect tenses and Supines of Verbs.

Chap. 29.

Of the Preterperfect tenses of Simple Verbs.

As in præ-
senti con-
tain's Rules
Of the
Preter-
tenses of
Simple
Verbs.

1.
In the first
Conjugati-
on As ma-
ke's avi.

I. **A**S in the Present tens, make's the Preterper-
fect tens in *avi*; as, *No, nos, to swim, navi*; *vocito, vocitas, to call often, vocitavi*. Except 1. *Lavo, lavi, to wash*; *juvo, juvi, to help*; *nexo, nexui, to knit*; *seco, secui, to cut*; *neco, necui, to kill*; *mico, micui, to shine*; *plico, plicui, to fold*; *frico, fricui, to rub*; *domo, domui, to tame*; *tono, tonui, to thunder*; *sono, sonui, to sound*; *crepo, crepui, to crack*; *veto, vetui, to forbid*; *cubo, cubui, to lie down*; which seldom make's *avi*. 2. *Do, das, to give, will make dedi*; and *sto, stas, to stand, steti*.

2.
In the se-
cond Es
make's ai.

II. **E**S in the Present tens, make's the Preterperfect
tens in *ai*; as, *Nigreo, nigres, nigra, to wax black*. Except 1. *jubeo, jubes, iussi, to bid*; *sorbeo, sorbes, sorbi, & sorpsi, to sup*; *mulceo, mulsi, to allwage*; *luceo, luxi, to shine*; *sedeo, sedi, to sit*; *video, vidi, to see*; *prandeo, prandi, to dine*; *strideo, stridi, to make a noise*; *suadeo, suasi, to persuade*; *rideo, risi, to laugh*; and *ardeo, arsi, to burn*.

2. The first syllable is doubled in these four fol-
lowing; viz. *Pendeo, pependi, to hang*; *mordeo, momordi, to bite*.

Spondeo,

As in Præsenti.

SIVE,

GUILLIELMI LILII Regulæ
de Præteritis & Supinis
Verborum.

Cap. 29.

De Præteritis Verborum Simplicium.

Regulæ de
Præteritis
Verborum
Simpli-
cium.

I.
In prima
Conjuga-
tione as
formatur.

I. **A**s in præsentî perfectum format in avi;
Ut no nas navi, vocito vociras vocitavi.

1. Deme lavo lavî, juvo juvi, nexoque nexui;
Et seco quod secui, neco quod necui, mico verbum
Quod micui, plico quod plicui, frico quod fricui dat:
Sic domo quod domui, tono quod tonui, sono verbum
Quod sonui, crepo quod crepui, veto quod vetui dat:
Atque cubo cubui: rarò hæc formantur in avi.
2. Do das ritè dedi, sto stas formare steti vult.

2.
In Secun-
do es for-
matur.

II. **E**s in præsentî perfectum format vi dans,
Ut nigreo nigres nigrui: 1. jubeo excipe jussi,
Sorbeo sorbui habet sorpsi quoque, mulceo mulsi;
Luceo vult luxi, sedeo sedi, videoque
Vult vidi; sed prandeo prandi, strideo stridi,
Suadeo suasi, rideo risi, habet ardeo & arsi.

2. Quatuor his infra geminatur syllaba prima;
Pendeo namque pependi, mordeo vultque momordi,

Spondeo,

Spondeo, spondi, to promise; tondeo, tonendi, to clip or shear.

3. If *l* or *r* stand next before *geo*, *geo* is turned into *si*; as, *Urgeo, urfi, to urge; mulgeo, mulsi, & mulxi, to milk; frigeo, fixi, to be cold; lugeo, luxi, to lament; augeo, & auxi, to encrease.*

4. *Fleo, fles, to sweep, make's flevi; leo, les, to besmear, levi, and its compound deleo, make's deleui, to blot out; pleo, ples, to fill, make's pleui.* 5. *Neo, nes, to spin, nevi; maneo, to tarry, make's mansi.* 6. *Torqueo, to twist, torfi.* 7. And *hareo, to stick, hafi.*

8. *Veo* is made *vi*; as, *Ferveo, fervi, to be hot; but niveo, to swink, and its compound conniveo to close and open the eyes, make's nivi & nixi; cieo, to trouble, make's civi; and vicio, to bind, vievi.*

In the
Third, *Bo*
make's *bi*.

III. **T**He third Conjugation will form the Preterperfect tens, as is plain here. *Bo* is made *bi*; as, *Lambo, lambi, to lick.* Except 1. *Scribo, scripsi, to write; nubo, nupsi, to be married to a man; and cubo, cubui, to lie down.*

Co, ci

Co is made *ci*; as, *Vinco vici, to overcome.* But 1. *Parco make's peperci, & parsi, to spare; dico, dixi, to say; and duco, duxi, to lead.*

Do, di

Do is made *di*; as, *mando, mandi, to eat; but scindo, to cut, makes's scidi; findo, fidi, to cleave; fundo, fudi, to pour out; tundo, tutudi, to knock; pendo, pependi, to weigh; tendo, tetendi, to stretch; pedo, pepedi, to fart; cado, cecidi, to fall; cado, cecidi, to beat; cedo, cessi, to give place; vado, to go away; rado, to shave; ludo, to hurt; ludo, to play; divido, to divide; trudo, to thrust; claudio, to shut; plaudio, to clap hands; rodo, to gnaw, change always *do* into *fi*.*

Go, xi

Go is made *xi*; as, *jungo, to join, junxi; but before go make's fi; as, spargo, sparsi, to sprinkle; lego, to read make's legi; and ago, to do, egi; tango, tetigi,*

Spondeo, habere sponendi; rondeo, vultque torondī,

3. L vel r ante geo, si stet, geo vertitur in fi.
Urgeo, ut urfi; mulgeo, mulsi, dat quoque mulxi;
Frigeo, frixi; lugeo, luxi; habet augeo, & auxi.

4. Dat Fleo, fles, flevi; leo, les, levi; indēque natum
Deleo, delevi; pleo, ples, plevi. 5. Neo, nevi;
A manco, mansi, formatur. 6. Torqueo, torfi.

7. Hæreo, vult hæsi. 8. Veo fit vi; ut, Ferveo, fervi.
Niveo, & indē satum pascit conniveo, nivi
Et nixi; cico, civi; vicōque vievi.

Tertia Præteritum formabit, ut hīc manifestum.
Bo fit bi; ut, Lambo, lambi. 1. Scribo, excipe scripsi;
Et nubo, nupsi; antiquum cumbo, cubui, dat.

In Tertia,
Bo fit bi.

Co fit ci; ut, Vinco, vici; vult parco, peperci,
Et parsi; dico, dixi; duco quoque duxi.

Co, ci;

Do fit di; ut, mando, mandi: sed scindo, scidi, dat, Do, di.
Findo, fidi: fundo, fudi; tundo, tutudique;
Pendo, pependi; tendo, tetendi; pedo, pepēdi;
Junge cado, cecidi; pro verbero cado, cecidi;
Cedo pro discedere, sive locum dare cessi.
Vado, rado, lādo, ludo, divido, trudo.
Clando, plaudo, rodo, ex do, semper faciunt fi.

Go fit xi; ut, jungo, junxi; sed r ante go vult fi; Go, xi.
U, spargo, sparsi; lego, legi; & ago facit egi:

Dat

terigi, to touch : *pungo, to prick*, make's *punxi*, & *pupugi*;
frango, fregi, to break : *pango, pepigi, to make a bargain* : *pango pegi, to join* : *pango, panxi, to sing*.

Ho, xi. *Ho* is made *xi* ; as, *Trabo, traxi, to draw* : and *veho, vexi, to carry*.

Lo, ui. *Lo* is made *ui* ; as, *Colo, colui, to till* : but *Psallo, to sing*, and *sallo, to salt*, make *salli* : *vello, to pluck up*, make's *velli* and *vulsi* : *fallo, to deceive*, make's *fefelli* ; *cello to break*, *ceculi* ; and *pello, to drive away*, *pepuli*.

Mo, ui. *Mo* is made *ui* ; as, *Vomo, vomui, to vomit* : but *emo, make's emi, to buy* : *como, compsi, to comb* : *proma, prompsi, to draw* : *demo, dempsi, to take away* : *sumo, sumpsi, to take* : *premo, pressi, to press*.

No, vi. *No* is made *vi*, as, *fino, fivi, to suffer*. Except *Temno, tempfi, to despise* : *sterno, stravi, to strew* : *(sperno, spreui, to despise* : *lino, levi, lini, & livi to dawb* : *cerno, crevi, to discern*. *Gigno, make's genui, to beget* : *pono, posui, to put* : *cano, cecini, to sing*.

Po, psi. *Po* is made *psi* ; as, *scalpo, scalpsi, to scratch* : *rumpo, rupi, to break* : *strepo, strepui, to make a noise* : *crepo, crepui, to crack*.

Quo, qui. *Quo* is made *qui* ; as, *linquo, liqui, to leave*. Except *coquo, coxi, to boil*.

Ro, vi. *Ro* is made *vi* ; as, *sero, to plant or sow*, make's *sevi*, which changing the signification, rather maketh *serui* ; *verro, to truss*, *verri*, & *verfi*, *uro ussi, to burn* : *gero, gessi, to act, or bear* : *quero, quaesivi, to seek* : *tero, trivi, to swear* : *curro, cucurri, to run*.

So, svi. *So* will make *sivi* ; as, *accerso, to go to call*, *arcesso, to go to call*, *incesso, to rebile*, and *lacecco, sivi, to provoke*. Except *capecco, to offer to take*, which make's *capepsi*, & *capessivi* ; *facecco, to go about to do*, and *visco, to visit*, make's *vifi* : but *pinso, to bake*, will have *pinsui*.

Sco, vi. *Sco* is made *vi* ; as, *pasco, pavi, to feed* ; but *posco, will have poposci, to require*. Disco,

pugi Dat tango tetigi, pungo punxi pupugique;
bat Dat frango fregi, cum signat pango pacisci
vcho Vult pepigi, pro jungo pegi, pro cano panxi.
 Ho fit xi, traho cex traxi, docet & vcho vexi.

Ha, xi.

illo, to Lo fit ui, colo ceu colui: psallo excipe cum p
s up Et sallo sine p, nam salli format utrunque;
sefel Dat vello velli vulsi quoque, fallo fefelli;
pe Cello pro frango ceculi; pello pepulique.

La, ui.

t em Mo fit ui, vomo cex vomui: sed emo facit emi;
roma Como petit compsi, promo prompsi, adjice demo
oy Quod format dempsi, sumo lumpsu, premo pressu.

Ma, ui.

et Te No fit vi, fino ceu fivi, temno excipe tempfi,
verno Dat sterno stravi, sperno spreui, lino leui,
uob Interdum lini & livi, cerno quoque creui:
get Gigno, pono, cano, genui, posui, cecini, dant.

Na, vi.

rum Po fit psi, ut scalpo scalpfi, rumpo excipe rupi,
cre Et strepo quod format strepui, crepo quod crepui dati.

Pa, psi.

cept Quo fit qui, ut linquo liqui, coquo demito coxi:

Quo, qui.

ake's Ro fit vi, sero ceu pro planto & semino sevi,
ma Quod serui melius dat mutans significatum.
si, to Vult verro verri & verfi, uro ulsi, gero gessi,
to Quæro quæfivi, tero trivi, curro cucurri.

Re, vi.

arcesso So velut accerso, arcesso, incesso, atque lacesso,
pro Formabit fivi: sed tolle capessio capeffi,
ake's Quodque capeffivi facit, atque facessio faceffi,
vifo Sic viso visi, sed pinso pinsui habebit.

Sa, fivi.

posco Sco fit vi, ut pascio pavi; vult posco poposci;
Disco Vult

Sro, vi.

Disco, didici, to learn, and quæisco, quæxi, to nod with the head.

To, ti.

To is made *ti*; as, *verto, verti, to turn*: *Sisto, stiti, to make to stand*: but *mitto, make's misi, to send*: *peto, will form petivi, to ask*: *sterto, stertui, to snore*: *meto, messui, to mow*.

Esso, exi.

Esso is made *exi*; as, *flecto, flexi, to bend*: but *pesto, to comb*: make's *pexi, and pexui*; and *necto, to knit*: *nexui* and *nexi*.

Vo, vi.

Xo, xui.

Vo is made *vi*; as, *volvo, volvi, to roll over*: Except *vivo, vixi, to live*. *Nexo, make's nexui, to knit*: and *texo, texui, to weave*.

Cio, ci.

Cio is made *ci*; as, *facio feci, to make*: *jacio, jeci, to cast*: but *lacio, to allure, make's lexi*; and *specio, to behold, spexi*.

Dio, di.

Sio, gi.

Pio, pi.

Dio is made *di*; as, *fodio, to dig, make's fodi*.

Gio is made *gi*; as, *fugio, fugi, to avoid*.

Pio is made *pi*; as, *capio, cepi, to take*: Except *cupio cupivi, to desire*: and *rapio, rapui, to snatch*: and *sapio sapui, or sapiui, to be wise*.

Rio, ri.

Tio, ti.

Rio is made *ri*; as, *pario peperi, to bring forth*.

Tio is made *ti*; as, *quatio quassi, to shake*: which Preterperfect tens is seldom used.

Mo, ui.

Mo is made *ui*: as, *statuo statui, to appoint*: but *pluo, to rain, make's pluvi, and plui*: *struo struxi, to build*: *fluo fluxi, to flow*.

In the Fourth is make's *ivi*.

IV. **T**he fourth Conjugation make's *iv* in the present tens, and *ivi* in the preterperfect tens; as, *scio scis scivi, to know*. Except *venio veni, to com*: *cambio campsi, to exchange*: *raucio, raufi, to be hoarse*: *farcio farfi, to stuff*: *sarcio sarfi, to patch*: *sepio sepsi, to hedge*: *sentio sensi, to perceive*: *fulcio fulfi, to underprop*: *haurio haufi, to draw*: *sancio sanxi, to establish*: *vincio vinxi, to bind*: *salio salui, to leap*, and *amicio amicui, to clothe*. Wee seldom use, *Cambivi, haurivi, amicivi, &c.*

Chap.

Vult didici disco, quexi formare quinisco.

To fit ti; ut, verto verti, sed sisto notetur
 Pro facio stare *Activum*, nam jure stiti dat.
 Dat mitto misi, peto vult formare petivi.
 Sterto stertui *habet*, meto messui. Ab ecto fit exi;
 Ut, flecto flexi: pecto dat pexui, *habetque*
 Pexi; *etiam* necto dat nexui, *habet quoque* nexi.

Vo fit vi: ut, volvo volvi: vivo excipe vixi.
 Nexo ut nexui *habet*, sic rexo texui *habebit*.

Fit cio, ci; ut, facio feci, jacio quoque jeci:
 Antiquum lacio lexi, specio quoque spexi.

Fit dio, di; ut, fodio fodi. Gio, *ceu* fugio, gi.

Fit pio, pi; ut, capio cepi, cupio excipe pivi;
 Et rapio rapui, sapio sapui, atque sapivi.

Fit rio, ri; ut, pario peperi. Tio *ssi* geminans s;
 Ut quatio quassi, *quod vix reperitur in usu*.

Denique uo, fit ui; ut, statuo statui: pluo plavi
Format fivi plui; struo sed struxi, fluo fluxi.

IV. **Q**uarta dat is, ivi; ut monstrat scio scis tibi scivi; In Quarta
Excipias venio dans veni, cambio campsi,
 Raucio rausi, farcio farsii, farcio farsii.
 Sepio sepsi, sentio sensi, fulcio fulsi;
 Haurio item hausi, fancio sanxi, vincio vinxii.
 Pro salto salio salui, & amicio amicui dat.
 Parcins utemur cambivi, haurivi, amicivi,
 Sepivi, sanxivi, farcivi, atque salivi.

Cap.

Chap. 30.

Of the Preterperfect tenses of Compound Verbs.

The Simple and Compound verbs have the same Preterperfect tense.

Except,
1. Words that double the first syllable.
2. *Plico*.

3. *Oleo*.

4. *Pungo*.

5. *Do*, & *Sto*.

6. Verbs changing the first vowel into e.

The Simple and the Compound Verb have the same Preterperfect tense; as, *Docui*, *I have taught*: *edocui*, *I have fully taught*. but

1. The syllable which the Simple verb doubleth is not always doubled in the Compound, except in these three, *præcurro*, *to run before*: *excurro*, *to run out*: and *repungo*, *to prick again*: and in the Compounds of *Do* *to give*: *disco* *to learn*: *sto* *to stand*: and *posco* *to require*.

2. *Plico* compounded with *sub* or a Noun, will have *plicavi*; as, *supplico*, *to supply*: *multiplico*, *to multiply*: but *aplico*, *to apply*: *complico*, *to fold up*: *replico*, *to reply*, will end in *ui*, or *avi*.

3. Though *Oleo*, *to smell*, make's *olui*, yet its compounds make's rather *olevi*: but *Redoleo*, *to smell strong*, and *suboleo*, *to smell a little*, are formed like the simple Verb.

4. All the compounds of *Pungo*, *to prick*, make *punxi*; but *repungo*, *to prick again*, make's *repupugi*, and *repunxi*.

5. The Compounds of *Do*, when they are of the third Conjugation, make *didi*; as, *Credo*, *to believe*: *edo*, *to set forth*: *dedo*, *to yield*: *reddo*, *to restore*: *perdo*, *to destroy*: *abdo*, *to hide*: *obdo*, *to set against*: *condo*, *to build*: *indo*, *to put in*: *trado*, *to deliver*: *prodo*, *to betray*: *vendo*, *to sell*: But *Abfcondo*, *to hide*, make's *Abfcondi*.

The Compounds of *Sto*, *to stand*, make *stini*.

6. These Simple Verbs being compounded do change the first vowel of the Present tense, and Preterperfect tense, and so of all other tenses into e, viz.

Damno,

Cap. 30.

De Compositorum Verborum Præteritis.

Præteritum dat idem Simplex & Compositivum;

Ut docui, edocui monstrat. 1. Sed syllaba semper

Quam simplex geminat, composito non geminatur;

Præterquam tribus his, præcurro, excurro, repungo:

Atque à do, disco, sto, posco, ritè creatis.

2. A plico compositum cum sub, vel nomine, ut ista,
Supplico, multiplico, gaudent formare plicavi;
Applico, complico, replico, & explico, ui vel in avi.

3. Quamvis vult oleo simplex olui, tamen inde
Quodvis compositum melius formabit olevi;
Simplicis at formam redolet sequitur subolètque.

4. Composita à pungo formabit omnia punxi,
Vult unum pupugi, interdumque repungo repunxi.

5. Natum à do, quando est inflectio tertia, ut addo,
Credo, edo, dedo, reddo, perdo, abdo, vel obdo,

Condo, indo, trado, prodo, vendo, didi: at unum

Abcondo, abscondi. Natum à sto, stas, stiti, habebit.

6. Verba hæc simplicia præsentis præteritique,
si componantur vocalem primam in e mutant;

Simplex &
Composi-
tum idem
habent
Præteri-
tum.
Excipe,
1. Gemi-
nantia pri-
mam sylla-
bam.

2. Plico.

3. Oleo.

4. Pungo.

5. Do &
Sto.

6. Mutantia
primam vo-
calem in e.

K

Damno,

Damno, to condemn : **lacto**, to give suck : **sacro**, to dedicate : **fallo**, to deceive : **arceo**, to drive away : **tracto**, to handle : **fatiscor**, to be weary : **partio**, to divide : **scando**, to climb : **spargo**, to sprinkle : and **pario**, to bring forth young : whereof two Compounds, **Comperio**, to find out by search : and **reperio**, to find by chance, do make **peri**, and all the rest **perui** : as, **aperio**, to open : **operio**, to cover.

7. **Pasco**.

7. These two compounds of **Pasco**, viz. **compesco**, to pasture together, and **dispesco**, to drive from pasture, will have **pescui**, the rest will have **pavi** : as, **epasco**, to eat up.

8. Verbs that change the first vowel into *i*.

8. These Verbs being compounded do change the first vowel every where into *i*, viz. **habeo**, to hate : **lateo**, to lie hid : **salto**, to leap : **statuo**, to appoint : **cado**, to fall : **lædo**, to hurt : **pango pegi**, to join : **cano**, to sing : **quæro**, to seek : **cado**, **cecidî**, to beat : **tango**, to touch : **egeo**, to want : **teneo**, to hold : **taceo**, to keep silence : **sapio**, to be wise : and **rapio**, to snatch : as, **rapio rapui**, make's **eripio**, **eripui** : but the Compounds of **Cano**, make the Preterperfect tens in *ui* ; as, **concino** to agree in one tune, **concinui**.

9. **Placeo**.

9. So of **Placeo** cometh **displaceo** to displeas : but **complaceo** to like well, and **perplaceo** to pleas thoroughly, do follow the simple Verb.

10. **Pango**.

10. These four Compounds of **pango**, to join do keep *a*, viz. **Depango** to fasten down : **oppango**, to fasten to : **circumpango** to fasten about : and **repango**, to dis-join.

11. **Maneo**.

11. These four Compounds of **Maneo** **manfi**, to tarry, do make **minui**, viz. **Præmineo**, to excel others : **emineo**, to appear before others : **promineo**, to hang out in sight, and **immineo**, to hang over : but the rest follow the simple Verb.

12. **Scalpo**,
calco, **salto**.

12. The Compounds of **scalpo**, to scratch : **calco**, to tread : **salto**, to dance, change *a* into *u* : as, **exsculo**

Damno, laeto, sacro, fallo, arceo, tracto, fatiscor,

Partio, carpo, patro, scando, spargo, parioque,

Cujus nata peri duo comperit & reperit dant ;

Cetera sed perui, velut hac aperire, operire.

7. A palco, pavi tantum composita notentur
Hac duo compesco, dispesco, piscui habere :
Cetera, ut epalco, servabunt simplicis usum.

7. Pisco.

8. Hac habeo, lateo, falio, statuo, cado, laedo,
Pango dans pegi, cano, quero, cado, cecidi,
Tango, egeo, teneo, taceo, sapio, rapioque,
Si componantur, vocalem primam in i mutant ;
Ut rapio, rapui, eripio, eripui : à Cano natum,
Præteritum per ui, ceu concino, concinui dat.

8. Mutantia
primam vo-
calem in i.

9. A placeo, sic displiceo ; sed simplicis usum
Hac duo complaceo, cum perplaceo, bene servant.

9. Placeo.

10. Composita à pango retinent a quatuor ista ;
Depango, oppango, circumpango, atque repango.

10. Pango.

11. A maneo mansi, minui dant quatuor ista,
Præmineo, emineo, cum promineo, immineoque ;
Simplicis at verbi servabunt cetera formam.

11. Maneo.

12. Composita à scalpo, calco, salto, a per u mutant ;

12. Scalpo,
calco, salto.

po, to curb; *incolco*, to inculcate: and *resulto*, to rebound:

13. *Claudo*, 13. The Compounds of *Claudo* to shut, *quatio* to shake, *lavo* to wash, do cast away a; as, *occludo* to shut fast, *excludo* to shut out, of *claudo*. *Percutio* to smite, and *excutio* to shake off, of *quatio*. *Proluo*, is, lui, to wash much; *diluo*, is, lui, to purge with washing, of *lavo*.

14. Verbs that change the first vowel of the Present tense into *i*, but not of the Preter tense, 14. These Verbs beeing compounded, change the first vowel of the Present tense into *i*; but not of the Preterperfect tense, viz. *Ago* to do, *emo* to buy, *sedeo* to sit, *rego* to rule, *frango* to break, *capio* to take, *facio* to cast, *lacio* to allow, *specio* to behold, *premo*, to press: as of *frango* is made *refringo* *refregi* to break open: of *capio*, *incipio* *incepti* to begin: but *perago* to finish: *satago* to be busy about a thing: *coëmo* to buy together, do follow their simple Verb. And of *ago*, *dego* to live, make's *degi*, and *côgo* to compel, *coëgi*: as also of *rego*, *pergo* to go forward, make's *perrexi*, and *furgo* to arise, *surrexi*, the middle syllable of the Present tense beeing taken away.

15. *Facio*. 15. *Facio* changeth nothing unless it have a Preposition before it: as, *Olfacio* to smell, *calfacio* to make hot, and *infacio* to infect.

16. *Lego*. 16. The Compounds of *Lego*, with *re*, *se*, *per*, *pra*, *sub*, *trans*, keep the vowel of the Present tense, the rest change it into *i*: of which *intelligo* to understand, *diligo* to love, *negligo* to neglect, make *lexi*, and all the rest make *legi*.

Id tibi demonstrant exsculpo, inculco, resulto.

13. *Composita à claudio, quatio, lavo, rejiciunt a ;*

13. *Claudio, quatio, lavo.*

Id docet à claudio, occludo, excludo ; à quatioque

Percutio, excutio ; à lavo, proluo, diluo, nata.

14. *Hac si componas, ago, emo, sedeo, rego, frango,*

14. *Mutantia primam vocalem presentis in i, sed non prateriti.*

Et capio, jacio, lacio, specio, premo semper

Vocalem primam presentis in i sibi mutant,

Prateriti nunquam, ceu frango, refringo refregi,

A capio, incipio incepti. Sed pauca notentur,

Namque suum simplex perago sequitur, satagóque ;

Atque ab ago dego dat degi, cogo coëgi ;

A rego sic pergo perrexí, vult quoque surgo

Surrexi, mediâ presentis syllabâ ademptâ.

15. *Nil variat facio nisi prapósito praeunte ;*

15. *Facio.*

Id docet olfacio, cum calfacio, inficióque.

16. *A lego nata, re, se, per, prae, sub, trans, praeunte, 16. Legó.*

Presentis servant vocalem, in i cetera mutant ;

De quibus hac intelligo, diligo, negligo, tantum

Prateritum lexi faciunt ; reliqua omnia legi.

Chap. 31.

Of the Supines of Simple Verbs.

The Supine
is formed
of the Pre-
ter tens.

Bi make's
sum.

Ci, sum.

Di, sum.

The syllable
is not dou-
bled in the
Supines.

Gi, sum.

Li, sum.

Mi,
Ni,
Pi,
Qui

Ri, sum.

Si, sum.

Now learn to form the Supine from the Preterperfect tens thus: *Bi makethum*; as, *Bibi bibitum to drink*.

Ci is made *sum*, as *vici victum to overcome*, *ici isum to smite*, *feci factum to do*, *jeci jacum to cast*.

Di is made *sum*, as *vidi visum to see*: but *som* do double *ss*; as *pandi passum to lay open*, *sedī sessum to sit*, *scidi scissum to cut*, *fidi fissum to cleave*, *fodi fossum to dig*.

And here also you may observe, that the syllable which is doubled in the Preterperfect tens is not doubled in the Supines, as *totondi to cloy*, make's *tonsum*: *cecidi to beat*, *casum*: *cecidi to fall*, *casum*: *tendi to stretch*, *tensum*, and *tentum*: *tutudi to knock*, *tunsum*; *pepidi to fart*, *peditum*: to which add *dedi*, which maketh *datum*.

Gi is made *sum*, as *legi to read*, *lectum*; *pegi to join*, and *pepigi to make a bargain*, *paſsum*; *fregi to break*, *fraſsum*; *tetigi to touch*, *taſsum*; *egi to do*, *actum*; *pupugi to prick*, *punctum*, and *fugi to avoid* *fugitum*.

Li is made *sum*, as *ſalli to season with salt*, *ſalsum*; *pepuli to drive away*, make's *pulsum*; *ceculi to break*, *culsum*; *ſefelli to decub*, *ſalsum*; *velli to pluck up*, *vulsum*, and *tuli to suffer*, *latum*.

Mi, *ni*, *pi*, *qui*, are made *tum*, as *emi emptum to buy*, *veni ventum to come*, *cecini cantum to sing*, *cepi capum to take*, *cepio capum to begin*, *rupi ruptum to break*, *liqui lectum to leave*.

Ri is made *sum*, as *verri verſum to brush*: except *peperi partum to bring forth*.

Si is made *sum*, as *viſi viſum to viſit*; yet *miſi* maketh

Cap. 31.

De Simplicium Verborum Supinis.

Nunc ex Præterito discas formare Supinum.
 Bi sibi tum format: sic namque bibi bibitum fit.

Supinum
 formatur ex
 Præterito.

Bi format
 tum.

Ci, sum.

Di, sum.

Ci fit tum, ut vici victum, testatur & ici
 Dans tum, feci factum, jeci quoque jactum.

Di fit sum, ut vidi visum: quædam geminant ss,
 Ut pandi passum, sedi sessum; adde scidi quod
 Dat scissum, atque fidi fissum, fodi quoque fossum.

Hic etiam advertas, quod syllaba prima Supinis,
 Quam vult Præteritum geminari, non geminatur:
 Idque torondi dans tonsu docet, atque cecidi
 Quod cæsum, & cecidi quod dat casum, atque tetendi
 Quod tensum & tentum, turudi tunsu, atque pepédi
 Quod format peditum, adde dedi quod jure datum vult.

Syllaba non
 geminatur
 Supinis.

Gi fit tum, ut legi lectum, pegi pepigique
 Dat pactum, fregi fractum, tetigi quoque tactum,
 Egi actum, pupugi punctum, fugi fugitum dat.

Gi, sum.

Li fit sum, ut falli stans pro sale condio falsum;
 Dat pepuli pulsum, ceculi culsum, atque sefelli
 Falsum; dat velli vulsum, tuli habet quoque latum.

Li, sum.

Mi, ni, pi, qui, tum fiunt, velut hic manifestum;
 Emi emptum, veni ventum, cecini à cano, cantum;
 A capio cepi dans captum, à cæpio cæptum,
 A rumpo rupi ruptum, liqui quoque lectum.

Mi, }
 Ni, } tum
 Pi, }
 Qui, }

Ri fit sum, ut verri versum; peperer excipe partum.

Ri, sum.

Si fit sum, ut visi visum; tamen s geminato,

Si, sum.

keth *missum* to send with a double *ss*: except *fulsi fultum* to underprop, *hausi haustum* to draw, *sarsi sartum* to patch, *farfi fartum* to stuff, *ussi ustum* to burn, *gessi gestum* to beat, *torsi tortum* or *torsum* to wrest, *indulsi indultum* or *indulsum* to pamper.

Psi, tum.

Psi is made *tum*, as *scripsi scriptum* to write; except *campsi campsum* to exchange.

Ti, tum.

Ti is made *tum*, as *steti* to stand, and *stiti* to make to stand, make *statum*; except *verti versum* to turn.

Vi, tum.

Vi is made *tum*, as *flavi flatum* to blow; except *pavi pastum* to feed, *lavi lotum lautum* or *lavatum* to wash, *potavi potum* or *potatum* to drink, *favi fatum* to favor, *cavi cautum* to beware, *sevi satum* to sow, *livi* or *lini litum* to dam, *solvi solutum* to lose, *volvi volutum* to row, *singulivi singultum* to sob, *venivi venum* to bee sold, *sepelivi sepultum* to bury.

Vi, itum, tum.

vi make's *itum*, as *domui domitum* to tame: except every verb in *uo*; because *ui* will always make *utum*, as *exui exutum* to put off: but *rui* make's *ruitum* for *rub*: so *seui sectum* to cut, *necui nectum* to kill, *frui frictum* to rub, *miscui mistum* to mingle, *amicui amictum* to clothe, *torrui tostum* to roast, *docui doctum* to teach, *tenui tentum* to hold, *consului consultum* to consult, *alui altum* or *alutum* to nourish, *salui saltum* to leap, *colui cultum* to worship, *occului occultum* to hide, *pisui pistum* to bake, *rapui raptum* to snatch, *serui sertum* to put to, *texui textum* to weave. But these change *ui* into *sum*; for *censeo* to think maketh *censum*, *cellui cellsum* to break, *messui messum* to mow, *nexui nexum* to knit, *perui pexum* to comb, *patui passum* to lie open, *caruicassum* & *caritum*, to want.

sum.

Xi, sum.

Xi is made *sum*, as *vinxi vindum* to binde; but five lose *n*, viz. *finxi fildum* to feign, *minxi mictum* to piss, *pinxi pictum* to paint, *strinxi stridum* to tie, *rinxi ridum* to grin.

And

Missi formabit missum, fulsi excipe fultum ;
 Hausi haustum, farsis fartum, farsis quoque fartum ,
 Ussi ustum, gessi gestum, torssi duo tortum
 Et torsum, indulsi indultum indulsūque requirit.

Psi fit tum, ut scripsi scriptum ; campsi excipe cam- Pp, tum
 (psum.)

Ti fit tum, à sto namque steti, à sistōque stiti fit, Ti, tum.
 Præterito commune statum ; verti excipe ver sum.

Vi fit tum, ut flavi flatum, pavi excipe pastum ; Vi, tum.
 Dat lavi lotum, interdum lautum atque lavatum.
 Potavi porum, interdum facit & poratum :
 Sed favi fautum, cavi cautum, à sero sevi
 Formes ritè sarum ; livi, linique litum dat :
 Solvi à solvo solutum, volvi à volvo volutum :
 Vult singultivi singultum, venio venis
 Venivi venum, sepelivi ritè sepultum.

(vis
 Quod dat vi dat itum, ut domui domitum, excipe quod- Vi, itum.
 Verbum in uo, quia semper vi formabit in utum, utum.
 Exui ut exutum, à ruo deme rui ruitum dans ;
 Vult secui sectum, n. cui nectum, fricuique
 Fricum, miscui item mistum, ac amicum dat amicum :
 Torruui habet tostum, docuique doctum, tenuique
 Tentum, consului consultum, alui altum alitumque,
 Sic salui saltum, colui ocului quoque cultum :
 Pinsui habet pistum, rapui raptum, servuique
 A sero vult sertum ; sic texui habet quoque textum.

Hæc sed vi mutant in sum ; nam censeo censum, sum.
 Cellui habet celsum, mēto mellui habet quoque mellum,
 Nexui item nexum, sic pexui habet quoque pexum ;
 Dat parui passum, carui cassum caritumque.

Xi fit tum, ut vinxi victum, quinque abijiciunt n, Xi, tum.
 Nam finxi fictum, minxi mictum, inque Supino,
 Dat pinxi pictum, strinxi, rinxi quoque rictum.

Xum

And these *xi* into *xum*, *Flexi flexum* to bend, *plexi plexum* to punish, *fixi fixum* to fasten, *fluxi fluxum* to flow.

Chap. 32.

Of the *Supines* of Compound Verbs, and of the *Preterperfect* tens of Verbs in *or*.

The Compound Supine is formed like the Simple.

Every Compound Supine is formed as the Simple, though there remain not always the same Syllable in both.

The compounds of *tunsum* to knock, *n* being taken away, make *tusum*, and of *ruitum* to rush, is made *rutum*, *i* being taken away, and so of *saltum* to leap, is made *sultum*.

When *sero* maketh *satum*, its compounds make *fitum*.

These Supines *captum* to take, *factum* to do, *jaſum* to cast, *raptum* to snatch, *cantum* to sing, *partum* to bring forth, *ſparſum* to sprinkle, *carptum* to crop and *ſartum* to stuff, change *a* into *e*.

The verb *edo* to eat, when it is compounded maketh not *estum*, but *esum*, onely *comedo* to eat up maketh both.

Of *noſco* to know, *cognitum* to know, and *agnitum* to acknowledge, are onely used, the rest of its compounds make *notum*, for *noſcitur* is not in use.

Verbs in *or* make their Preterperfect tens of the latter supine by putting to *s* and *sum* vel *fui*. **II.** Verbs in *or* take their Preterperfect tens from the later Supine, by changing *u* into *us*, adding *sum* vel *fui*; as of *lectu* is made *lectus sum* vel *fui*. But of these verbs, sometimes a Deponent, sometimes a Commune is to be noted; for *labor* to slide, make's *lapsus sum*, *patior* to suffer, make's *passus sum*, and its compounds *compatior* to suffer together, *compassus sum*, *perpetior*

Xum flexi, plexi, fixi dant, & fluo fluxum.

C A P. 32.

De Compositorum Verborum Supinis, & De
Præteritis Verborum in or.

I. **C**ompositum ut Simplex formatur quodque Supinum,
Quamvis non eadem stet semper syllaba utrique.

Composita à tuncsum, dempta n tuncsum, à ruitum fit

I media demptâ ruitum, & à saltum quoque sulsum,

A sero, quando satum format, composita situm dant.

Hæc captum, factum, jactum, raptum, a per e mutant,

Et cantum, partum, sparsum, carptum, quoque farrum.

Verbum edo compositum non estum, sed facit esum;

Unum duntaxat comedo formabit utrunque.

A nosco tantum duo cognitum & agnitum habentur,

Cætera dant notum; nullo est jam noscitur in usu.

Compositum supinum formatur ut Simplex.

II. **V**erba in or admittunt ex posteriore Supino
Præteritum, verso u per us, & sum consociato
Vel fui, ut à lectu lectus sum vel fui. At horum
Nunc est Deponens, nunc est Commune notandum:
Nam labor lapsus, patior dat passus & ejus
Nata, ut compatior compassus, perpetiôrque

Verba in or admittunt Præteritum ex posteriore supino, addendo s & sum vel fui.

perpetior to suffer throughly perpassus sum, fateor to confess, make's passus sum, and its compounds, as confiteor to confess confessus sum, diffiteor to deny, diffessus sum, gradior to go by steps, make's gressus sum, and so its compounds, as digredior to digress, digressus sum, fatiscor to be weary make's fessus sum, metior to measure mensus sum, utior to use usus sum. ordior to wear make's orditus, ordior to begin orsus, nitor to endeavour nisus or nixus sum, ulciscor to revenge ultus sum, irascor to be angry make's iratus sum, reor to suppose ratus sum. obliviscor to forget oblitus sum, fruor to enjoy fructus or fruitus sum, miserior to pity misertus sum; tuor and tueor to see make not tutus but tuitus sum, though both have tutum and tuitum in the Supine; loquor to speak make's locutus sum, sequor to follow securus sum, experior to try expertus sum, paciscor to make a bargain pactus sum, nanciscor to get nactus sum, apiscor to get, which is an old verb, make's aptus sum, whence adipiscor to obtain adeptus, queror to complain questus sum, proficiscor to go on a journey profectus sum, expergiscor to awake experrectus sum, comminiscor to feign commentus sum, nascor to be born natus sum, morior to die mortuus sum, orior to arise make's ortus sum.

Chap. 33.

Verbs irregular are
I. Redundant, having a Preter tense of the Active and of the Passive voice.

Of certain Verbs Irregular, or going out of the common rules of conjugating.

These verbs have a Preterperfect tense both of the Active and Passive voice, as *cæno* to sup make's *cænavi* and *cænatus sum*, *juro* to swear *juravi* and *juratus*, *potro* to drink *potavi* and *potus*, *titubo* to stumble *titubavi* or *titubatus*.

*Formans perpeſſus : fateor quod faſſus, & inde
Nata, ut confiteor confeſſus, diſſiteor que
Formans diſſeſſus. : gradior dat greſſus, & inde
Nata, ut digredior digreſſus. Junge fatiſcor
Feſſus ſum, menſus ſum metior, utor & uſus.
Pro texto orditus, pro incepto dat ordior orſus,
Nitor niſus vel nixus ſum, ulciſcor & ultus.
Iraſcor ſimul iratus, reor atque ratus ſum,
Obliviſcor vult oblitus ſum; fruor optat
Fructus vel fruitus, miſereri junge miſertus.
Vult ruor & tueor non tutus ſed tuius ſum,
Quamvis & tutum & tuitum ſit utrique Supinum.
A loquor adde loquutus, & à ſequor adde ſequutus;
Experior facit expertus, formare paciſcor
Gaudent pactus ſum, nanciſcor naſtus, apiſcor
Quod vetus eſt verbum aptus ſum, unde adipiſcor ade-
(ptus.
Junge queror queſtus, proficiſcor junge profeſtus,
Expergiſcor ſum experrectus, & hac quoque commi-
Niſcor commentus, naſcor natus, moriorque
Mortuus, atque orior quod Præteritum facit ortus.*

Cap. 33.

De verbis quibuſdam Anomalis.

Præteritum Activa & Paſſiva vocis habent hæc,
Cæno cænavi & cænatus ſum tibi ſormat,
Juro juravi & juratus, potōque potavi
Et potus, titubo titubavi vel titubatus.

Verba Anomala ſunt
1. Redundantia, Præteritum
Activa &
Paſſiva vo-
cis habentia,

Sic

So also *careo* to want make's *carui* and *causus sum*, *prandeo* to dine, *prandi* and *pransus*, *pateo* to lie open, *patui* & *passus*, *placeo* to please *patui* and *passus*, *suesco* to accustom *suevi* and *suetus*, *veneo* to be sold *venivi* and *venditus sum*, *nubo* to be married to a man *nupsi* and *nupta sum*; *mereor* to deserve *merui* and *meritus sum*: to these add, *libet* it liketh *libuit* and *libitum est vel fuit*, *licet* it is lawful *licuit*, and *licitum est vel fuit*, *tacet* it taketh *tacuit*, and *pertasum est vel fuit*, *pudet* it ashameth *puduit*, and *puditum est vel fuit*, and *pigit* it taketh which make's *pigit* and *pigitum est vel fuit*.

2. Variant,
as Neuter-
passives.

and

NEuter-passives are thus formed: viz. like neuters in the present tense, and Passives in the preter tense: *Gaudeo* to rejoice *gavisus sum vel fui*, *fido* to trust *fusus sum vel fui*, *audeo* to be bold *ausus sum vel fui*, *fito* to be made of *factus sum vel fui*, *soleo* to be wont *solitus sum vel fui*, *moreo* to be sad *mæstus sum vel fui*. But *PHOCAS* taketh *mæstus* for a noun Adjective.

Such as
borrow their
Preterper-
fect tense.

SOME verbs borrow their preterperfect tense from another verb; as a verb Inceptive ending in *sco*, standing for the primitive verb, will have the preterperfect tense of the primitive verb, thus; *tepesco* to begin to be warm make's *tepui* of *tepeo* to be warm, *fervesco* to begin to be hot make's *ferui* of *ferveo* to be hot, *cerno* to see will have *vidi* of *video* to see, *quatio* to shake *concussi* of *concutio* to shake, *ferio* to smite *percussi* of *percutio* to smite, *meio* to piss will have *minxi* of *mingo* to piss, *fido* to settle *fedi* of *sedo* to sit, *tollo* to lift up will have *sustuli* of *suffero* to bear, *sum* I am will have *fui* of *fuo* to be, *fero* to bear *tuli* of *tulo* to bear, *fisto* to make to stand *steti* of *sto* to stand, *furo* to be mad *insanivi* of *insanio* to be mad.

So

*Sic careo carui & cassus sum, prandeo prandi
Et pransus, pateo patui & passus, placeôque
Dat placui & placitus, suesco suevi atque suetus,
Veneo pro vendor, venivi venditus & sum,
Nubo nupsi nuptaque sum, mereor meritus sum
Vel merui. Adde libet libuit libitum, & licet adde
Quod licuit licitum, tæder quod tæduit & dat
Pertæsum; adde pudet faciens puduit puditumque,
Atque piget, tibi quod format piguit pigitumque.*

N *Eutro-passivum sic prateritum tibi format,
Gaudeo gavisus sum, fido fesus, & audeo
Ausus sum, fio factus, soleo solitus sum,
Mœreo sum mœstus; sed Phocæ nomen habetur.*

2. Variantia
ut,
1. Neutro-
passiva.

&

Q *Uadam prateritum verba accipiunt aliunde.
Inceptivum in sco, stans pro primario, adoptat
Prateritum ejusdem verbi; vult ergò tepesco
A tepeo tepui, fervesco à ferveo-fervi,
A video cerno vult vidi, à concutio vult
Prateritum quatio concussi, à percutioque
Percussi ferio; à mingo vult meio minxi,
A sedeo fido vult sedi, à suffero tollo
Sustuli, & à suo sum fui, à tulo ritè fero tuli.
A sto sisto steti, tantum pro stare; furôque
Insanivi, à verbo ejusdem significati.*

3. Prateri-
tum mutua-
antia.

Sic

So also *vescor* to eat will have its preterperfect tens from *pascor* to bee fed, *medeor* to heal from *medicor* to heal, *liquor* to bee melted from *liqueſco* to bee melted, *reminiſcor* to remember from *recordor* to call to minde.

3. Defective
1. In the
Preter tens.

THeſe verbs want the preterperfect tens: *vergo* to bend or looke towards, *ambigo* to doubt, *gliſco* to grow or increaſe, *fat ſco* to chink; *polleo* to bee able, *nideo* to ſhine: to theſe add *pueraiſco* to begin to bee a childe: and paſſives whoſe actives want the Supines, as *metuor* to bee feared, *timeor* to bee feared; and all Deſideratives except *parturio* to ſtrive to bring forth, and *efurio* to begin to bee hungry, or to beſire to eat (with a few others) which have the preterperfect tens.

2. In the
Supine.

THeſe verbs ſeldom or never have the Supines: *Lambo* to lick, *mico* to ſhine, *rudo* to bꝛay, *ſcabo* to claw, *parco* to ſpare, *diſpeſco* to drive from paſture, *poſco* to require, *diſco* to learn, *compesco* to paſture together, *quiniſco* to nod, *dego* to live, *ango* to vex, *fugo* to ſuck, *lingo* to lick, *ningo* to ſnow, *ſatago* to bee diſturb'd about a thing, *paſſo* to ſing, *volo* to will, *nolo* to bee unwilling, *maſco* to bee moꝛe willing, *tremo* to tremble, *frideo* to make a noiſe, *frido* to make a noiſe, *ſaveo* to bee yellow, *liveo* to bee black and blew, *aveo* to cobeꝛ, *paveo* to fear, *conniveo* to wink, *ſerveo* to bee hot. The Compounds of *nuo* to nod, as *renuo* to reſuſe; The compounds of *cadu* to fall, as *incido* to fall into; Except *occido* to fall down *occaſum*, and *recido* *recaſum* to fall back: *reſpuo* to reſuſe, *linquo* to leave, *luo* to puniſh, *metuo* to fear, *cluo* to gliſter, *frigeo* to bee cold, *caluo* to bee bald, *ſtereo* to ſnoꝛt, *timeo* to fear, *luceo* to ſhine, *arceo* to drive away, whoſe compounds make *ercitum*: the compounds of *gruo* to cry like a Crane, as *ingruo* to invade.

And

Sic poscunt vescor, medeor, liquor, reminiscor,

Præteritum à pascor, medicor, liquefio, recordor.

P*Præteritum fugiunt, vergo, ambigo, glisco, fatiseo, 3. Defectiva
1. Præterito,*

Polleo, nideo ; adhæc, Inceptiva, ut pueraasco ;

Et Passiva, quibus caruere Activa supinis,

Ut metuor, timeor. Meditativa omnia, præter

Parturio, esurio ; quæ præteritum duo servant.

H*æc rarò, aut nunquam retinebunt verba Supinum, 2. Defectiva
Supinis.*

Lambo, mico micui, rudo, scabo, parco peperci,

Dispesco, posco, disco, compesco, quinisco,

Dego, ango, fugo, lingo, ningo, fatagóque, -

Pfallo, volo, nolo, malo, tremo, strideo, strido,

Flaveo, liveo, avert, paveo, conniveo, fervet ;

A nuo compositum, ut renuo ; à cado, ut incido ; præter

Occido, quod facit occasum, recidóque recasum ;

Respuo, linquo, luo, metuo, cluo, frigeo, calvo,

Et sterco, timeo, sic luceo, & arceo, cujus

Composita erciturum habent : sic à gruo, ut ingruo natum.

And all verbs Neuters of the second Conjugation that end in *ui*; except *oleo* to smell, *doleo* to grieve, *placeo* to please, *taceo* to hold one's peace, *pareo* to obey, *careo* to want, *noceo* to hurt, *patreo* to lie open, *lateo* to lie hid, *valeo* to be able, *caleo* to be warm, which will have the Supines.

Chap. 34. Of Verbs that want certain Moods and Tenses.

3. In certain Moods and Tenses, as, *Aio*.

These verbs (more usually) are called Defectives which want certain Moods and Tenses, viz.

Indicative Mood { *Aio* I say, or quoth I; *Ais* thou saiest; *Ait* hee saith, or quoth hee, Plur. *Aiant* they say.

Imperfect. { *Aiebam* I did say, hath all persons in both numbers.

Pluperfect. *Aissi* thou hast said.

Imperativus, *Ai* say thou.

Subjunct. { *Aias* thou maist say, *Aiat* hee may say. Plur. *Aiamus* wee may say, *Aiant* they may say.

Participium Præsens, *Aiens* saying.

Subjunct. { *Ausim* I dare, *Ausis* thou darest, *Ausis* presens. { *hes* dare. Plur. *Ausint* they dare.

So also *Duim* I give, *Duis* thou givest, *Duit* hee giveth. Plur. *Duini* they give.

For the Antients express the Subjunctive Mood in *im*, hence wee read *creduim* for *credam*.

Indicat. Futur. *Salvebis* thou shalt greet, or bid God speed.

Imperat. *Salve* *salveto* greet you well. Plur. *Salvete* *salvete* greet yee well.

Infinitive, *Salvere* to greet well.

Imperative.

Ausim.

Duim.

Salve.

*Et quacunque in ui formantur neutra secunda,
 Exceptis oleo, doleo, placeo, taceóque,
 Pareo, item & careo, noceo, pateo, lateóque.
 Et valeo, caleo ; gaudent hæc namque supino.*

Cap. 34. De Verbis quæ deficiunt certis
 Modis & Temporibus.

Verba (magis usitatè) Defectiva vocantur quæ
 certis Modis & Temporibus deficiunt, viz.

Indicativus } *Aio, ais, ait. Plur. Aiunt.*

Præsens

3. Certis
 Modis &
 Temporibus, ut,
Aio.

Imperfect. *Aiebam*, habet omnes personas utriusque numeri.

Perfect. *Aisti.*

Imperativus, *Ai.*

Subiunctivus } *Aim, aiat. Plur. Aiamus, Aiant.*

Præsens,

Participium præsens, *Aiens.*

Subiunctivus } *Ausim, ausis, ausit. Plur. Ausim.*

Præsens,

Ausim.

Sic *Duim, duis, duit. Plur. Duunt.*

Duim.

Veteres enim Subiunctiva per *im* efferebant, unde *creduim* pro *credam* legimus.

Indicat. Futur. *Salvebis.*

Salvo.

Imperat. *Salve, salven. Plur. Sakete, salvetote.*

Infinitivus, *Salvere.*

Ave.

Imperative, Ave *aveto* hast thou. Plur. *Avete* *avetote* hast yee.Infinit. *Avère*, to bid one hast.

Cedo.

Imperat. *Cedo* reach mee. Plur. *Cedite*, antiently *Cette* reach yee.

Faxo.

Indic. & Subjunct. Futur. *Faxo* vel *Faxim* I will bring to pass, *Faxis* thou wilt make, *Faxit* hee will make. Plur. *Faxint* they will make.

Forem.

Subjunct. *Forem* I should, or might bee, *Fores* thou shouldst, or mightst bee, *Foret* hee should, or might bee. Plur. *Forent* they might bee.Infinit. Futur. *Fore* to bee.

Quæso.

Indic. præsens, *Quæso*, I pray. Plur. *Quæsumus* we pray.

Infir.

Indic. præsens, *Infir* hee saith. Plur. *Infirunt* they say. And *Defir* it is wanting, *Defiet* it will bee wanting, *Defiat* let it bee wanting, as also *desieri* to bee wanting, *Conferi* to bee don at once.

Defir.

Conferi.

Inquam.

Indic. præsens, *Inquo* vel *inquam*, I say, *Inquis* thou saiest, *Inquit* hee saith. Plur. *Inquiunt* they say.Perfectum, *Inquisti* thou hast said, *Inquit* hee hath said. Plur. *Inquistis* yee have said.Futurum, *Inquies* thou shalt say, *Inquiet* hee shall say. Plur. *Inquietis* yee shall say, *Inquient* they shall say.Imperat. *Inque*, *Inquito* say thou. Plur. *Inquite*, say yee.Subjunct. Præsens, *Inquiat* hee may say.Particip. Præsens, *Inquiens* saying.

Odi.

Cepi.

Memini.

Odi I hate, *cepi* I begin, *memini* I remember, have onely those tenses which are formed of the Preter tens, viz. those that end in *ram*, *rim*, *ssam*, *ro*, and *se*, save that *memini* hath in the Imperative mood singular *Memento* remember thou, *memento* remember yee.

Dor.
Fer.

These simple verbs *For*, *der*, *fer*, *der*, are not found

Imperativus, Ave, aveto. Plur. Avete, avetote.

Ave.

Infinitivus, Avére.

Imperativus, Cedo. Plur. Cedite, & apud Antiquos Cedo. Cete.

Indicat. & Subjunct. Fut. Faxim vel faxo, faxis, Faxo. faxit. Plur. Faxint.

Subjunct. Forem, fores, foret. Plur. forent.

Forem.

Infinit. Futur. Fore.

Indicat. Præsens, Quæso. Plur. Quæsumus.

Quæso.

Indic. præsens, Infit. Plur. Infiunt. Et Desit, defiet, Infit. defiat, ut item defieri & confieri. Desit. Confieri.

Indicat. præsens, Inquo vel inquam, inquis, inquit. Inquam. Plur. Inquitunt.

Perfectum, Inquisti, inquit. Plur. inquistis.

Futurum, Inquies, inquiet.

Imperat. Inques, inquito. Plur. Inquire.

Subjunct. præsens, Inquiat.

Participium. Inquiens.

Odi, cæpi, memini, habent ea solùm tempora quæ à Odi. præterito formantur; viz. in ram, rim, ssem, ro, cæpi. & sse desinentia. Sed memini habet in imperativo singulari, memento. Plur. mementote.

Dor, for, der, fer, simplicium non reperiuntur in Dor.

L 3

primâ For.

found in the first person singular of the Present tens, but (almost) in all the rest.

Dic, duc, fer, fac, are cut off by Apocope.

Sci.

Sci of *scio* to know is not in use, nor *solebo* of *soleo*, to be wont, nor *fuo* to be, an old verb.

Orior.

Orior oreris to arise, hath *oriri* in the Infinitive mood, and *morior* maketh *mori* and *moriri*.

Morior.

Volo.

Nolo.

Malo.

Fero.

Feror.

Edo.

Volo I will, *nolo* I will not, *malo* I had rather, *fero* I bear, *feror* I am born, and *edo* I eat, have commonly a Syncope in many tenses; as, *Volo, vis, vult. Vultis. Nolo, non vis, non vult. Nolumus. Malo, mavis, mavult. Malumus. Fero, Fers, ferr. Feror, ferris vel ferre, fertur. Edo, edis vel es, edit vel est, &c.* of which *volo* and *malo* want the Imperative mood. *Nolo* make's the Imperative mood *Noli nolite* do not thou. Plur. *Nolite nolite* do not ye.

Eo & queo.

Eo I go, and *queo* I am able, make their Preter-imperfect tens *ibam* and *quibam*, and their Future *ibo* and *quibo*; and their Gerunds *eundi, eundo, eundum, Queundi, queundo, queuntum*.

Sum.

Sum with its compounds want's the Gerunds, Supines, and Participles of the Present tens, save that *absens præsens* com of *absum præsuum*; for *futurus* is of *fui*, which was once the preter tens of the obsolete verb *fui*. *Possum* want's the Imperative mood.

primâ personâ singulari præsentis, sed in cæteris (ferè) omnibus.

Dic, duc, fer, fac, per Apocopen concisæ sunt.

Sci à scio non reperitur, nec solebo à sôleo, nec suo Sci antiquum.

Orior oreris habet Infinitum *oriri*, sic & *morior mori* *Orior, Morior.*
& *moriri.*

Volo, nolo, malo, fero, feror, edo Syncopen ferè admittunt in plerisque temporibus; ut, *Volo, vis, vult, Nolo, vultis. Nolo, non vis, non vult, Nolumus. Malo, mavis, Malo, mavult, Malumus. Fero, fers, fert. Feror, ferris vel ferre, ferrur. Edo, edis vel es, edit vel est, &c. ex quibus Edo.*
volo & malo carent Imperativo. *Nolo* facit Imperativum. *Noli nolito. Plur. Nolite nolitote.*

Eo & queo habent Imperfectum *ibam & quibam, & Eo & queo.*
futurum *ibo & quibo. & Gerundia, eundi, eundo, eundum. Queundi, queundo, queundum.*

Sum cum compositis carent Gerundiis, Supinis, & *Suma* participio præsentis, nisi quod ab *absam, præsam*, veniunt *absens, præsens*; nam *futurus* est à *fui*, quod præteritum olim obsoleti verbi *fuo*. *Possam* caret Imperativo.

Cap. 35. Of the Forming of certain Verbs irregular.

Volo.

Indicativus.

Præsens.	Sing.	1 Vo'o,	I am	} willing.
		2 Vis,	thou art	
		3 Vult,	hee is	
	Plur.	1 Volumus.	Wee are	
		2 Vultis.	ye are	
		3 Volunt.	they are	

Imperfectum. Volebam. I was willing, &c. ut, *Legebam.*Perfectum. Volui. I have been willing, &c. ut, *Legi.*Plusquamperf. Volueram. I had been willing, &c. ut, *Legeram.*Futurum. Voleam. I shall be willing, &c. ut, *Legam.*Imperativo caret, cujus loco utimur præfenti Potentialis, *Velis*, &c.

Potentialis.

Præsens.	Sing.	1 Velim,	I may	} be willing.
		2 Velis,	thou maist	
		3 Velit.	hee may	
	Plur.	1 Velimus.	Wee may	
		2 Velitis.	ye may	
		3 Velint.	they may	

Imperfectum.	Sing.	1 Vellem,	I might	} be willing.
		2 Velles,	thou mightest	
		3 Vellet.	hee might	
	Plur.	1 Vellemus.	Wee might	
		2 Velleis.	ye might	
		3 Vellent.	they might	

Præterperf. Voluerim. I might have been willing, &c. ut, *Legerim.*Præterpluperf. Voluissim. I might had been willing, &c. ut, *Legissim.*Futurum. Voluero. I may be willing hereafter, &c. ut, *Legero.*

Infinitivus.

Præf. & Imperf. Velle. To be willing.

Perfect. & Plusquamperf. Voluisse. To have or had been willing.

Participium præsens. Volens. Willing.

Nolo.

Malo. | Indicativus.

Præsent.	Sing.	1 <i>Malo,</i>	I am	} more willing.		
		2 <i>Mavis,</i>	thou art			
		3 <i>Mavult.</i>	hee is			
	Plur.	1 <i>Milumus,</i>	etlee are			
		2 <i>Mavultis,</i>	ye are			
		3 <i>Milunt.</i>	they are			
	Imperfect. | <i>Malēbam,</i> I was more willing. ut, <i>Legēbam.</i>					
	Præterperf. | <i>Malui.</i> I have been more willing. ut, <i>Legi.</i>					
	Plusquamperf. | <i>Maluēram.</i> I had been more willing. ut, <i>Legēram.</i>					
Futurum. | <i>Malam.</i> I shall be more willing. ut, <i>Legam.</i>						
Imperativo caret, cujus loco utimur <i>Mali,</i> &c.						

Potentialis.

Præfens.	Sing.	1	<i>Malim,</i>	I may	} be more willing.
		2	<i>Malis,</i>	thou maiest	
		3	<i>Malit.</i>	hee may	
	Plur.	1	<i>Malimus,</i>	we may	
		2	<i>Malitis,</i>	ye may	
		3	<i>Malint.</i>	they may	

Imperfect.	Sing.	1	<i>Mallem,</i>	I might	} be more willing.
		2	<i>Malles,</i>	thou mightst	
		3	<i>Mallet.</i>	hee might	
	Plur.	1	<i>Malleamus,</i>	we might	
		2	<i>Malleis,</i>	ye might	
		3	<i>Mallent.</i>	they might	

Perfectum.	1	<i>Miluerim.</i>	I might have been more willing.	ut, <i>Legerim.</i>
Plusquamperf.	1	<i>Maluissē.</i>	I might have had been more willing.	ut, <i>Legissem.</i>
Futurum.	1	<i>Miluerō.</i>	I may be more willing hereafter.	ut, <i>Legerō.</i>

Infinitivus.

Præsens & Imperf. | <i>Malle.</i> To be more willing.
Perfectum & Plusquamperf. | <i>Maluissē.</i> To have or had been more willing.
Sepe leguntur <i>Mavolo, Mavolum, Mavelim, & Mavellem.</i>

Fero.

Fero. | Indicativus.

Præsens.	Sing.	1 Fero,	I bear.
		2 Fers,	thou bearest.
		3 Feri,	hee beareth.
	Plur.	1 Ferimus,	wee } bear.
		2 Fertis,	
		3 Ferunt.	

Imperfectum. | Ferebam. I did bear. ut, Legebam.

Perfectum. | Tuli. I have born. ut, Legi.

Plusquamperf. Tuleram. I had born. ut, Legeram.

Futurum. | Feram. I will bear. ut, Legam.

Imperativus.

Præf. Sing.	Fer,	} Bear thou.	Plur.	Feramini.	Bear wee.
	Ferte.			Ferte.	} Bear yee.
Præf. Plur.	Feras,	} Let him bear.	Fertis.	Ferant.		} Let them bear.
	Fertis.		Ferantur.		

Potentialis.

Præsens. | Feram. I may bear. ut, Legam.

Imperfectum. | Ferebam. I might bear. ut, Legerem.

Perfectum. | Tulerim. I might have born. ut, Legerim.

Plusquamperf. | Tulissem. I might had born. ut, Legissem.

Futurum. | Tulero. I might bear hereafter. ut, Legero.

Infinitivus.

Præsens, & Imperf. Ferre. To bear.

Perfectum & Plusquamperf. | Tulisse. To have or had born.

Futurum. — Laturus est. — To bear hereafter.

Gerundia.	Ferendi.	Of bearing.
	Ferendo.	In bearing.
	Ferendum.	To bear.

Supina. { Latum. To bear.
Latu. To be born.Participia { Ferens. Bearing.
Laturus. About to bear.

[illegible]

Edo. |

Indicativus.

Præsens	Sing.	Edo. I eat.	Plur.	Edimus. Wee	} eat.
		Edis. } Thou eatest.		Editis. } yee	
		Es. } } See eareth.		Edunt. } they	
		Edis. } } See eareth.		Edunt. } they	

Imperfectum. | Edēbam. I ate, ut, Legēbam.

Perfectum. | Edi. I have eaten. ut, Legi.

Plusquamperf. | Ederam. I had eaten. ut, Legeram.

Futurum. | Edam. I shall eat. ut, Legam.

Imperativus.

Præsens.	Sing.	Es. } Eat thou.	Plur.	Edamur. I Eat wee.	} Eat yee.
		Esse. } } Eat thou.		Edite. } } Eat yee.	
		Es. } } Eat thou.		Esse. } } Eat yee.	
		Edis. } } Let him eat.		Edite. } } Eat yee.	
		Es. } } Let him eat.		Edunt. } } Eat they.	
		Esse. } } Let him eat.		Edunt. } } Eat they.	

Potentialis.

Præsens. | Edam. I may eat. ut, Legam.

Imperfect. { Ederem. } I might eat. ut, { Legerem.

Essem. } } Essent à Sum.

Perfectum. | Ederim. I might have eaten. ut, Legerim.

Plusquamperf. Edissem. I might had eaten. ut, Legissem.

Futurum. | Edero. I may eat hereafter. ut, Legero.

Innitivus.

Præsens, & Imperf. | Edere, vel Esse. To eat.

Perfectum & Plusquamperf. Edisse. To have or had eaten.

Futurum. Esurum esse. To eat hereafter.

Gerundia. { Edendi. Of eating.

Edendo. In eating.

Edendum. To eat.

Supina. { Esurus. To eat.

Esu. To be eaten.

Participia. { Edens. Eating.

Esurus. About to eat.

Fio. |

Indicativus.

Præsens. | Fio. I am made. ut, Audio.

Imperfectum. | Fiebam. I was made. ut, Audiebam.

Perfectum. | Feci {sum, fui. I have been made. ut, Ceci {sum, fui.

Plusquamperf. | Feceram {eram, fueram. I had been made. ut, Ceci {eram, fueram.

Futurum. | Fiam. I shall be made. ut, Audiam.

Imperativus.

Præsens.	Sing.	Fi.	} Bee thou made.	Plur.	Fiamus.	} Bee wee made.
		Fice.			Fite,		} Bee yee made.
	Fiat,	} Let him be made.	Fito.		} Let them be made.	
	Fice.		Fiant,			Finto.

Potentialis.

Præsens. | Fiam. I may be made. ut, Audiam.

Imperfect. | Fierem. I might be made. ut, Audirem.

Perfectum. | Feci {sum, fuerim. I might have been made. ut, Ceci {sum, fuerim.

Plusquamperfectum. | Feceram {eram, fuisset. I might have been made. ut, Ceci {eram, fuisset.

Futurum. | Ficiam {ero, fuero. I may be made hereafter. ut, Ceci {ero, fuero.

Infinitivus.

Præsens, & Imperf. | Fieri. To be made.

Perfectum & Plusquamperf. | Fecisse {esse, fuisset. To have or had been made.

Futurum. {Faciendum erit, Faciendum esse. To be made hereafter.

Participia. {Fectus. Made. Faciendus. To be made.

Eo.		Indicativus.	
Præsens.	Sing.	1. Eo.	I go.
		2. Is.	thou goest.
		3. Is.	hee goeth.
	Plur.	1. Imus.	wee } go.
		2. Iis.	ye }
		3. Eunt.	they }
Imperfectum.	Sing.	1. Ibam.	I did
		2. Ibam.	thou didst
		3. Ibat.	hee did
	Plur.	1. Ibamus.	wee did
		2. Ibatis.	ye did
		3. Ibant.	they did
Perfectum.	Sing.	1. Ivi.	I have
		2. Ivisti.	thou hast
		3. Ivit.	hee hath
	Plur.	1. Ivimus.	wee have
		2. Ivistis.	ye have
		3. Iverunt.	they have
Plusquamperfectum.	Sing.	1. Iveram.	I had
		2. Iveras.	thou hadst
		3. Iverat.	hee had
	Plur.	1. Iveramus.	wee had
		2. Iveratis.	ye had
		3. Iverant.	they had
Futurum.	Sing.	1. Ibo.	I will
		2. Ibis.	thou wilt
		3. Ibit.	hee will
	Plur.	1. Ibimus.	wee will
		2. Ibitis.	ye will
		3. Ibunt.	they will

Imperativus.

Eo. Imperativus.																					
Præsens.	<table border="0"> <tr> <td rowspan="3">Sing.</td> <td>1. I.</td> <td rowspan="3">} Go thou.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>2. Iro.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>3. Eas.</td> </tr> <tr> <td rowspan="3">Plur.</td> <td>1. Iro.</td> <td rowspan="3">} Let him go.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>2. Eamus.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>3. Ite.</td> </tr> <tr> <td rowspan="3">Sing.</td> <td>1. Ite.</td> <td rowspan="3">} Go yee.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>2. Ite.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>3. Eant.</td> </tr> <tr> <td rowspan="3">Plur.</td> <td>1. Eant.</td> <td rowspan="3">} Go they.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>2. Eant.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>3. Eant.</td> </tr> </table>	Sing.	1. I.	} Go thou.	2. Iro.	3. Eas.	Plur.	1. Iro.	} Let him go.	2. Eamus.	3. Ite.	Sing.	1. Ite.	} Go yee.	2. Ite.	3. Eant.	Plur.	1. Eant.	} Go they.	2. Eant.	3. Eant.
	Sing.		1. I.		} Go thou.																
			2. Iro.																		
		3. Eas.																			
	Plur.	1. Iro.	} Let him go.																		
		2. Eamus.																			
		3. Ite.																			
	Sing.	1. Ite.	} Go yee.																		
		2. Ite.																			
		3. Eant.																			
Plur.	1. Eant.	} Go they.																			
	2. Eant.																				
	3. Eant.																				
Potentialis.																					
Præsens.	<table border="0"> <tr> <td rowspan="3">Sing.</td> <td>1. Eam.</td> <td rowspan="3">} I may thou maist } go.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>2. Eas.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>3. Eas.</td> </tr> <tr> <td rowspan="3">Plur.</td> <td>1. Eamus.</td> <td rowspan="3">} yee } may go.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>2. Eam.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>3. Eant.</td> </tr> </table>	Sing.	1. Eam.	} I may thou maist } go.	2. Eas.	3. Eas.	Plur.	1. Eamus.	} yee } may go.	2. Eam.	3. Eant.										
	Sing.		1. Eam.		} I may thou maist } go.																
			2. Eas.																		
		3. Eas.																			
	Plur.	1. Eamus.	} yee } may go.																		
		2. Eam.																			
		3. Eant.																			
	Imperfectum.	<table border="0"> <tr> <td rowspan="3">Sing.</td> <td>1. Irem.</td> <td rowspan="3">} I might thou mightest } go.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>2. Ires.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>3. Ires.</td> </tr> <tr> <td rowspan="3">Plur.</td> <td>1. Iremus.</td> <td rowspan="3">} yee might they might }</td> </tr> <tr> <td>2. Iresis.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>3. Irens.</td> </tr> </table>	Sing.	1. Irem.	} I might thou mightest } go.	2. Ires.	3. Ires.	Plur.	1. Iremus.	} yee might they might }	2. Iresis.	3. Irens.									
		Sing.		1. Irem.		} I might thou mightest } go.															
				2. Ires.																	
			3. Ires.																		
		Plur.	1. Iremus.	} yee might they might }																	
2. Iresis.																					
3. Irens.																					
Perfectum.		<table border="0"> <tr> <td rowspan="3">Sing.</td> <td>1. Iverim.</td> <td rowspan="3">} I might thou mightest } have gon.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>2. Iveris.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>3. Iveris.</td> </tr> <tr> <td rowspan="3">Plur.</td> <td>1. Iverimus.</td> <td rowspan="3">} yee might they might }</td> </tr> <tr> <td>2. Iveritis.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>3. Iverint.</td> </tr> </table>	Sing.	1. Iverim.	} I might thou mightest } have gon.	2. Iveris.	3. Iveris.	Plur.	1. Iverimus.	} yee might they might }	2. Iveritis.	3. Iverint.									
		Sing.		1. Iverim.		} I might thou mightest } have gon.															
				2. Iveris.																	
			3. Iveris.																		
		Plur.	1. Iverimus.	} yee might they might }																	
	2. Iveritis.																				
	3. Iverint.																				

Plusquamperf.

Eo.

Plusquamperfectum.	Sing.	1 <i>vissem,</i>	I might	} have had gon.
		2 <i>visset,</i>	thou mightst	
		3 <i>visset,</i>	hee might	
	Plur.	1 <i>vissemus.</i>	wee might	}
		2 <i>vissetis.</i>	ye might	
		3 <i>visserent.</i>	they might	

Futurum.	Sing.	1 <i>iero,</i>	I may	} go hereafter.
		2 <i>ieris,</i>	thou maist	
		3 <i>ierit.</i>	hee may	
	Plur.	1 <i>ierimus,</i>	wee may	}
		2 <i>ieritis,</i>	ye may	
		3 <i>ierint.</i>	they may	

Infinitivus.

Præsens & Imperi. } *ire,* } to go.

Perfectum & Plusquamperf. | *ivisse.* To have or had gon.

Futurum. — *iturum esse.* — To go hereafter.

Gerundia. } *Eundi.* | Of going.
 } *Eundo.* | In going.
 } *Eundum.* | To go.

Supina. } *Itum.* } To go
 } *Itum.* } To bee gon.

Participia. } Geo. *Futurum*, &c. Going.
 } *Iturus*. About to go.

Ad hunc modum etiam variantur *Quæ*, nisi quod Imperative careat.

Quæ.

M

Chap.

Chap. 36.

Of Forming the verb Sum.

The verb *Sum* hath a manner of declining which belong's onely to its self.

Sum, es, fui, esse, futurus.

Verbum *Sum* peculiarem Conjugandi rationem sibi postulat.

Sum, es, fui, esse, futurus.

The Indicative Mood.

The Potential Mood.

Present tense.	Sing.	1 2 3	Sum, Possum, I am. Es, thou art. Est, hee is.	Plur.	1 2 3	Sumus, Estis, Sitis. wee } are. ye } they }	Sim, Possim, I may Sis, thou maiest Sit, hee may	Plur.	1 2 3	Simus, Sitis, Sitis. wee } ye } they }	}	bee.
Present imperfect.	Sing.	1 2 3	Eram, Possem, I was. Eras, thou wast. Erat, hee was.	Plur.	1 2 3	Eramus, Estis, Sitis. wee } were. ye } they }	Essem, Possem, I might Esset, thou mightest Esset, hee might	Plur.	1 2 3	Essemus, Essetis, Essetis. wee } ye } they }	}	bee.
Perfect tense.	Sing.	1 2 3	Fui, Potui, I have Fulisti, thou hast Fuit, hee hath	Plur.	1 2 3	Fuiamus, Estis, Sitis. wee } ye } they }	Fuerim, Potuerim, I might Fueris, thou mightest Fuerit, hee might	Plur.	1 2 3	Fuerimus, Fueritis, Fueritis. wee } ye } they }	}	have been.

Pret. plup.	Sing.	1 Fui etiam, potui	I had	} been.	Fuisse etiam, potuisse	I might	} have had been.
		2 Fuisses,	thou hadst		Fuisses,	thou mightest	
		3 Fuisse at,	hee had		Fuisset,	hee might	
		1 Fuissetis,	allee had		Fuissetis,	allee might	
		2 Fuissetis,	ye had		Fuissetis,	ye might	
Future.	Sing.	1 Ero, Potero	thou shalt	} be.	Fuero, poterō	I may	} be hereafter.
		2 Eris, (ro,	I shall		Fueris, (ro,	thou maist	
		3 Erit,	bee shall		Fuerit,	hee may	
		1 Erunt,	allee shall		Fuerint,	allee may	
		2 Erunt,	ye shall		Fuerint,	ye may	
Present tense.	Sing.	2 Sis, es, e, to,	Be: thou	}	Present and Imperfect.	} Esse, to be.	}
		3 Sis, esto,	bee be.				
		1 Simus,	Be: wee.				
		2 Sitis, este,	bee ye.				
		3 Sitis, esto,	bee they.				
Pret. plup.	Sing.	1 Fuisses,	I had	}	Perfect and Pret. plup.	} Fuisse	} to have or had been.
		2 Fuisses,	thou hadst				
		3 Fuisses,	hee had				
		1 Fuissetis,	allee had				
		2 Fuissetis,	ye had				
Future.	Sing.	1 Fuero,	I shall	}	Future	} Fuisse	} to be hereafter.
		2 Fuero,	thou shalt				
		3 Fuero,	hee shall				
		1 Fuerint,	allee shall				
		2 Fuerint,	ye shall				

The Imperative Mood.

The Infinitive Mood.

Present tense.	Sing.	2 Sis, es, e, to,	Be: thou
		3 Sis, esto,	bee be.
		1 Simus,	Be: wee.
		2 Sitis, este,	bee ye.
		3 Sitis, esto,	bee they.

Present and Imperfect.	} Esse, to be.	}

So likewise are its compounds declined, *Absum* to be absent, *Desum* to be wanting, *Præsum* to be before, *Obsum* to be against; but *Prosum* to profit, take's *d* between two vowels, and *Possum* to be able, (of *potis* able, and *sum* to be) before a vowel and in stead of *f* keep's *t*, but changeth it into *f* before *s*.

Sic variantur & ejus composita, *Absum*, *desum*, *præsum*, *obsum*; *prosum* recipit *d* inter duas vocales, & *Possum* (à *potis* & *sum*) ante vocalem & pro *f* retinet *t*, mutat autem in *f* ante *s*.

Chap. 37.

Of Verbs Impersonals and Derivatives.

Impersonals be declined in the third person only.

Impersonals be declined throughout all Moods and tenses in the voice of the third person singular only.

- And they be either
1. Of the Active voice which end in *t*; as, *Decet it becommeth, decebat, decuit, decuerat, decebit. Deceat, deceret, decuerit, decere.*
 2. Of the passive voice, which end in *tur*; as, *Studetur it is studied, studebatur, studitur est vel fuit, studium erat vel fuerat, studebitur, studetur, studeretur, studium sit vel fuerit, studium esset vel fuisset, studium erit vel fuerit, studeri.*

And they be of the 1. Active voice.

Impersonals want (for the most part) Gerunds, Supines, and Participles.

The Participles by which wee express the Preter tens are put Substantively in the Neuter gender.

Impersonals of the Active voice are these eleven, which (almost) alwaies remain Impersonals; viz. *Decet it becommeth, Libet it listeth, Licet it is lawful, Liqueat it is clear, (whose Preter tens is not exstant) Lubet it listeth, Miseret it pitieth, Oportet it behoveth, Pœnitent it repenteth, Piget it irketh, Pudet it ashameth, and Tædet it irketh, which are also sometimes found in the third person plural, as *decent, oportent, pudent.**

To these are reckoned some personals (which are found absolutely in the third person without a nominative case, having an Infinitive mood presently after them). Such are,

In the first Conjugation, *delectat it delighteth, iuvat it helpeth, praestat it is better, restat it remaineth, stat it is resolved on, constat it is manifest, vacat it is at leisure.*

In

CAP. 37.

De Impersonalibus & Derivativis.

Impersonalia conjugantur in tertiâ personâ singulari per omnes modos & tempora.

Impersonalia conjugantur in tertiâ singulari.

- Sunt autem duplicia,
1. Activæ vocis, quæ in *t* desinunt, ut *deceat, decebat, decuit, decuerat, decebit, deceat, deceret, decuerit, decuisset, decuerit, decere.*
 2. Passivæ vocis, quæ in *tur* desinunt, ut *Studetur, studebatur, studitum est vel fuit, studitum erat vel fuerat, studebitur, studeatur, studeretur, studitum sit vel fuerit, studium esset vel fuisset, studitum erit vel fuerit, studeri.*

Impersonalia Gerundiis, & Supinis & Participiis plerunque carent.

Sunt autem
1. Activæ
vocis.

Participia, per quæ Præterita circumloquimur Substantivè ponuntur in neutro genere.

Impersonalia Activæ vocis sunt hæc undecim, Conjugationis secundæ, quæ semper (ferè) manent Impersonalia, viz. *Decet, libet, licet, liquet*, (cujus non exstat præteritum) *lubet, miseret, oportet, pœnitet, piget, pudet, tædet*, quæ interdum etiam inveniuntur in tertiâ plurali, ut *decent, oportent, pudent*.

His accensentur quædam Impersonalia (quæ absolute inveniuntur in tertiâ persona absque nominativo, sequente mox Infinitivo.) Cujusmodi sunt,

In prima Conjugatione, *delectat, juvat, præstat, restat, stat, constat, vacat*.

In the Second, *apparet* it appeareth, *attinet* it be-
longeth, *debet* it ought, *pater* it is evident, *placet* it
pleaseth, *solet* it is wont.

In the Third, *Accidit* it falleth, *capit* it begin-
neth, *conducit* it belongeth to, *contingit* it hapneth, *de-
finit* it ceaseth, *incipit* it beginneth, *sufficit* it suffi-
ceth.

In the Fourth, *Convenit* it agreeth, *evenit* it fall's
out, *expedit* it is expedient.

Among the irregular verbs, *est* it is, *interest* it con-
cerneth, *prodest* it doth profit, *potest* it may, *fit* it is
don, *refert* it concerneth.

Likewise verbs of an exempt power (i. e. that
signifie an action not of any humane power) com
near the nature of Impersonals, as *Fulgurat* it light-
neth, *pluit* it raineth, *lucescit* it waxeth light.

Or
2. The Pas-
sive voice.

2. Impersonals of the Passive voice have no certain
number, becaus they com of all verbs Actives, and som
Neuters, as, *Legitur* it is read, *curritur* it is run.

Lastly no verb (almost) is so far a personal,
as that it cannot take upon it the form of a Imper-
sonal ; and som Impersonals turn again sometimes
into Personals.

A verb Impersonal may indifferently bee taken
to bee of any person in both numbers, viz. by rea-
son of an oblique case adjoined ; as, *me oportet* I
must, *te oportet* thou must, *illum oportet* hee must. *Opor-
tet nos* wee must, *oportet vos* yee must, *oportet illos* they
must. *Statutur à me* I stand, *statutur à te* thou standest,
statutur ab illo hee standeth. *Statutur à nobis* wee stand, *sta-
tutur à vobis* yee stand, *statutur ab illis* they stand.

Verbs Deri-
vatives are

Derivative verbs are very often used for their
Primitives, as *Timeſco* for *timeo* to fear, *bischo* for *hio*
to gaze.

There bee five kindes of Derivative verbs.

1. Inchoa-
tives.

1. Inchoatives, or Augmentatives, which signifie
begin-

In Secunda, Apparet, attinet, debet, patet, placet, solet.

In Tertia, Accidit, cœpit, conducit, contingit, desinit, incipit, sufficit.

In Quarta, Convenit, evenit, expedit.

Inter anomala, est, interest, prodest, potest, fit, refert.

Ad Impersonalium etiam naturam quodammodo accedunt verba exemplæ potestatis, viz. actionem significantia non humanæ potestatis, ut *Fulgurat, pluit, luceſcit*, &c.

2. Impersonalia Passivæ vocis certum numerum non vel habent, quia fiunt ab omnibus verbis Activis, & quibusdam neutris, ut *Legitur, curritur*. 3. Passivæ vocis.

Denique nullum ferè verbum est tam personale, ut non idem impersonalis formam possit induere; atque nonnulla Impersonalia remigrant aliquando in Personalia.

Verbum Impersonale, pro singulis personis utriusque numeri indifferenter accipi potest, viz. ex vi adjuncti obliqui, ut,

Oportet	{	me, te, illum,	}	Oportet	{	nos, vos, illos.	}
Statutur	{	à me, à te, ab illo.	}	Statutur	{	à nobis, à vobis, ab illis.	}

Derivativa sæpiſſime pro ipsis primitivis usurpantur, ut *Timeſco* pro *timeo*, *hiſco* pro *hio*. Derivativa sunt

Derivatorum quinque sunt genera.

1. Inchoätiva sive Augmentativa, quæ inchoätivam 1. Inchoätiva.

beginning or augmentation, and end in *ſco*; as, *Luceſco* to begin to be light, *Ardeſco* to be hotter & hotter.

2. Frequen-
tatives.

2. *Frequentatives*, which ſignifie a certain aſſidui-
tie or endeavor; and end in *to*, *ſo*, *xo*, or *tor*; as,
Viſito to viſit often, *Viſo* to go to ſee, *nexo* to tie often,
ſector to endeavor to follow.

3. Deſidera-
tives.

3. *Deſideratives*, or *Meditatives*, which ſignifie a cer-
tain deſire or ſtrife, and end in *urio*; as, *Lecturio*
to ſtrive to read, *cenſuario* to deſire a ſupper.

4. Diminu-
tives.

4. *Diminutives*, which ſignifie the leſſening of its
Primitive, and end in *lo* or *ſſo*; as, *Sorbillo* to ſup
often, *pitillo* to ſupple or ſup a little.

5. Imita-
tives.

5. *Imitatives*, which ſignifie imitation, and end in
iſſ, and in *er*; as, *Patriſſo* to reſemble a father, *vul-
pinor* to play the fox.

6. Appara-
tives.

6. Hitherto belong alſo *Apparatives*, which ſignifie a
preparation to, and end in *eo*; as, *Vellico* to pluck,
ſedico to dig.

7. Denomi-
natives.

7. As alſo *Denominatives*, which com from Nouns,
and have no proper appellation; as, *Lignor* to purvey
wood, *ruſticor* to live in the Country.

Chap. 38. Of a Participle.

A Partici-
ple taketh
part of a
Noun and
part of a
Verb.



PARTICIPLE is a part of Speech
derived of a Verb, which taketh part of
a Noun as well as of Verb; as, *Amans*
loving.

A Participle hath from a Noun, gen-
der, caſe, and declenſion; from a Verb, tenſ and ſignifica-
tion; from both theſe number, and figure.

There bee
four kindes
of Partici-
ples.

1. Of the
Preſent tenſ.

According to tenſ there bee four kindes of Partici-
ples.

1. A Participle of the Preſent tenſ hath the ſignifi-
cation of the Preſent tenſ, and endeth in *ans*, *ens*,
and *iens*; as, *Amans*, *docens*, *legens*, *audiens*.

But

inchoationem aut augmentationem significant, & in
fco desinunt; ut, *Lucesco, ardesco.*

2. *Frequentativa*, quæ assiduitatem quandam, vel
conatum significant, & in *to, so, xo, aut tor* desinunt;
ut, *Visito, viso, nexo, sector.* 2. *Frequen-
tativa.*

3. *Desiderativa* sive *Meditativa*, quæ appetentiam
quandam, aut studium significant, & desinunt in
urio; ut, *Lesturio, exnatorio.* 3. *Desidera-
tiva.*

4. *Diminutiva*, quæ diminutionem sui Primitivi
significant, & desinunt in *lo, vel sso*, ut, *Sorbillo,*
pitillo. 4. *Diminu-
tiva.*

5. *Imitativa*, quæ imitationem significant, & desi-
nunt in *isso & or*; ut, *Patrisso, vulpinor.* 5. *Imitativa*

6. Huc pertinent & *Apparativa*, quæ apparatus signi-
ficant, & in *co* desinunt; ut, *Vellico, sedico.* 6. *Appara-
tiva.*

7. Item *Denominativa*, quæ à nominibus veniunt, &
propriam appellationem non habent; ut, *lignor,*
rusticor. 7. *Denomi-
nativa.*

Cap. 38. De Participio.



PARTICIPIUM est pars Orationis à
Verbo derivata, tam à Nomine quàm à
Verbo partem capiens; ut, *Amans.*

Participium habet genera, casus, & de-
clinationem à nomine; tempora & signifi-
cationem à Verbo; numerum & figuram ab utroque.

Secundùm tempus, species Participiorum sunt qua-
tuor.

1. Participium *Præsentis*, habet significationem
præsentis, & desinit in *ans, ens, & iens*; ut, *Amans,*
docens, legens, audiens.

Participi-
um partem
capit à No-
mine, &
Verbo.

Species Par-
ticipiorum
sunt qua-
tuor.

1. Præsentis.

Cæterùm

But *iens* of *eo* is seldom read in the Nominative case, but *euntis*, &c. in the oblique cases. But its compounds have the Nominative case in *iens*, and the Genitive in *euntis*; except *Ambiens*, *ambientis*.

2. Of the
Preter tens.

2. A Participle of the Preter tens signifieth the time past, and endeth in *tus*, *sus*, *xus*, as *Amatus*, loved, *visus* seen, *nexus* knit; and one in *us*, as, *mortuus* dead.

3. Of the
Future in
rus.

3. A Participle of the future in *Rus* hath the signification of the Future tens of its Infinitive Mood Active; as, *Amaturus* to love, *Docturus* about to teach.

4. Of the
Future in
rus.

4. A Participle of the Future in *Dus* hath the signification of the Future tens of the Infinitive Passive; as, *Amandus* to be loved hereafter.

How Par-
ticiples are
formed.

The Participle of the Present tens is formed of the Preterimperfect tens by changing the last syllable into *ns*; as of *Amabam*, *amans*.

The Participle of the Preter tens is formed of the later Supine by putting to *s*; as of *Amatu*, *amatus*.

The participle of the Future in *rus* is formed of the later Supine by putting to *rus*; as of *Amatu*, *amaturus*.

The participle of the Future in *dus* is formed of the Genitive case of the participle of the Present tens by changing *ns* into *dus*; as of *Amantis*, *amandus*.

These participles are derived of their verbs besides the common rule; *Pariturus* about to bring forth, *nasciturus* to be born, *soniturus* to sound, *arguiturus* to reprove, *moriturus* to die, *luciturus*, that shall pay or suffer punishment, *nosciturus* to know, *osurus* to hate, *scuturus* to be, *oriturus* to arise.

These be like participles, but are derived of Nouns, *Tunicatus* costed, *togatus* gowned, *personatus* personated, *larvatus* masked, &c.

From

Cæterùm *iens* ab eo rarò legitur in Nominativo, sed *euntis*, &c. in obliquis. Composita verò Nominativum habent in *iens*, & Genitivum in *antis*, præter *Ambiens*, *ambientis*.

2. Participium *Præteriti*, significat tempus præteritum, & definit in *tus*, *sus*, *xus*, ut, *Amatus*, *visus*, *actus*, & unicum in *us*, ut, *mortuus*.

3. Participium *Futuri in Rus* habet significationem futuri in præsentis Infinitivi sui Activi; ut, *Amaturus*, *docturus*.

4. Participium *Futuri in Dus*, significationem habet Infinitivi sui Passivi; ut, *Amandus*.

Participium Præsens formatur ab imperfecto mutando ultimam syllabam in *ns*; ut ab *Amabam*, *amans*. De modo Participia formandi,

Participium Præteriti formatur à posteriore Supino addendo *s*; ut, ab *Amatu*, *amatus*.

Participium Futuri in *rus* formatur à posteriori Supino, addendo *rus*; ut ab *Amatu*, *amaturus*.

Participium Futuri in *Dus* formatur à Genitivo participii præsentis mutando *tis* in *dus*; ut ab *Aman-tis*, *amandus*.

Hæc participia præter Analogiam à verbis suis deducuntur; *Pariturus*, *nasciturus*, *soniturus*, *arguiturus*, *moriturus*, *luiturus*, *nosciturus*, *osurus*, *futurus*, *oriturus*.

Tunicatus, *togatus*, *personatus*, *larvatus*: &c. similia participiis sunt, à nominibus verò deducuntur.

And of what
Verbs they
com.

From Actives and Neuters which have the Supines com two Participles, one of the present tens, and the other of the Future in *tur*; as of *Amo*, *amans*, *amaturus*, of *Curro*, *currens*, *cursurus*.

But of som Neuters are found also Participles in *dus*, as *Dubitandus* to bee doubted, *Vigilandus* to bee watched, *carendus* to bee wanted, *dolendus* to bee grieved. And of those which make their preterperfect tens in manner of Passives, is made also a participle of the preter tens; as *gaudeo*, *gavissus* glad, *juro*, *juratus* sworn: so likewise from Impersonals in *tur*; as of *Aratur*, *aratus* plowed.

Of Verbs Passives com two participles, one of the preter tens, the other of the Future in *dus*; as of *Amor* cometh *Amatus*, *amandus*.

Of Verbs Deponents com three participles, viz. of the present tens, preter tens, and of the Future in *tur*, as of *Auxilior* to aid cometh *auxilians*, *auxiliatus*, *auxiliaturus*.

To many also belongeth a participle in *dus*, especially to such as govern an Accusative case, as of *Loquor* to speak, cometh *Loquens*, *loquuturus*, *loquutus*, *loquendus*.

Of Verbs Commune com four participles, as of *Largior* to bestow or bee bestowed, cometh *Largiens*, *largiturus*, *largitus*, *largiendus*.

There bee no participles exstant from verbs Impersonals, except *Poenitens* repenting, *decens* becoming, *libens* & *lubens* willing, *persusus* trying, *poenitendus*, to be repented, *pudens* shaming, *pudendus* to be ashamed, *pigendus* to be tried.

Nouns Participials.

Participles are turned into nouns Participial:

1. When they govern another case then the verb doth govern; as, *Amans pecunia* loving of monie.

2. When they are compounded with words which their

Ab Activis & Neutris quæ habent Supina, veniunt *Et à qui.* duo participia, unum Præsentis, alterum Futuri in *bus* verbis *rus*; ut ab *Amo*, *amans*, *amaturus*, à *Curro*, *currens*, *curr-* *derivantur,* *furus*.

A quibusdam verò neutris reperiuntur etiam participia in *du*s; ut *Dubitandus*, *vigilandus*, *carendus*, *dolendus*. Et ab iis quæ præteritum faciunt more passivorum formatur etiam participium præteriti; ut, *Gaudeo*, *gavisus*, *juro*, *juratus*: sic ab Impersonalibus *itur*; ut ab *Aratur*, *aratus*.

A Passivis veniunt duo participia Præteriti & Futuri in *du*s; ut ab *Amor*, *amatus*, *amandus*.

A Deponentibus veniunt tria participia, Præsentis, Præteriti, & Futuri in *rus*; ut ab *Auxilior*, *auxilians*, *auxiliatus*, *auxiliaturus*.

Multis accidit etiam participium in *du*s, præcipuè Accusativum regentibus; ut à *Loquor*, *loquens*, *loquutus*, *loquutus*, *loquendus*.

A Communibus veniunt quatuor participia, ut à *Largior*, *largiens*, *largiturus*, *largitus*, *largiendus*.

Ab Impersonalibus nulla exstant participia præter *Pœnitens*, *decens*, *libens*, *lubens*, *persusus*, *pœnitendus*, *pudens*, *pudentus*, *pigendus*.

Participia degenerat in nomina Participialia.

1. Cùm altum casum quàm suum verbum regunt, ut *Amans pecunia*.

Nomina
Participia-
lia.

2. Cùm componuntur cum dictionibus, cum quibus

their verbs will not bee compounded withal; as, *Infans* an infant, *Indoctus* unskilful.

3. When they bee compared; as, *Amans* loving, *Amantior* more loving, *Amantissimus* very loving.

4. When they signifie no time; as, *Sapiens* wisse, *Sponsa* a bride.

Participles of the Present tense very often become Substantives, sometimes of the Masculine gender; as, *Oriens* the East: sometimes of the Feminine; as, *Consonans* a Consonant: sometimes of the Neuter; as, *Accidens* an accident: sometimes of the Common of three; as, *Appetens* greedy of.

Participles
of the Pre-
sent tense be
declined
like *Felix*;
& of other
tenses like
Bonus.

Participles of the Present tense are declined with three Articles; as, *Hic, hac, & hoc Amans*, like *Felix*.

Participles of other tenses are declined with three terminations; as, *Amatus, ta, tum*; *Amaturus, ta, rum*; *Amandus, da, dum*, like *Bonus*.

Chap. 39. Of an Adverb.

V.
An Adverb
explaineth
a verb.

AN ADVERB is a part of Speech added to other words (but especially to the Verb) to declare and perfect their sense and signification.

The Significations of Adverbs are many, whose varietie must bee gathered out of the Circumstances of the Verbs.

According

bus ipsorum verba componi non possunt, ut, *Infans, indoctus.*

3. Cum comparantur; ut, *Amans, amantior, amantissimus.*

4. Cum tempus non significant; ut, *Sapiens, sponsa.*

Participia præsentis temporis non rarò fiunt Substantiva, modò masculini generis; ut, *Oriens*: modò scæminini; ut, *Consonans*: modò neutrius; ut, *Accidens*: modò communis; ut, *Appeteris*.

Participia præsentis variantur tribus Articulis; ut, *Hic, hac, & hoc Amans*, sicut *Felix*.

Participia reliquorum temporum variantur tribus terminationibus; *Amatus, ta, tum*; *Amaturus, ra, rum*; *Amandus, da, dum*, sicut *Bonus*.

Participia
Præsentis
variantur
sicut *Felix*;
Reliquo-
rum verò
temporum
sicut *Bonus*.

Cap. 39. De Adverbio.

ADVERBIUM est pars Orationis adjecta aliis vocibus (sed præcipuè verbis) ad sensum & significationem earum perficiendum & explanandum.

v.
Adverbium
explanat
Verbum.

Significationes Adverbiorum sunt multæ, quarum varietas ex Verborum circumstantiis colligenda est.

Secundùm

There bee
33 kindes
of Adverbs.

According to their signification some are called Adverbs of

Place,
and
sig-
nific

In a Place ; as, *Hic* here, *Illic* there.
To a Place ; as, *Huc* hither, *Illuc* thither.
From a Place ; as, *Hinc* hence, *Illic* thence.
By a Place ; as, *Hac* this way, *Illac* that way.

Time ; as, *Nunc* now, *tunc*, *then*, *hodie* to day ; *usque* until or as far as, is both of Time and Place.

Number ; as, *Semel* once, *bis* twice, *ter* thrice, *iterum* again.

Order ; as, *Indè* after that, *deniq;* lastly, *demum* lastly.

Asking ; as, *Cur* why, *quare* wherefore, *unde* whence.

Calling ; as, *Hæus* ho, *ô* cho so ho.

Affirming ; as, *Certe* truly, *ne* truly, *professò* truly, *scilicet* yes.

Denying ; as, *Non* not, *haud* not, *minimè* no.

Swearing ; as, *Po!* by *Æpollo*, *adipol* by *Æpollo's* temple, *hercle* by *Hercules*.

Exhorting ; as, *Agè* go to, *sodes* if you dare, *sûltis* if you will.

Granting ; as, *Licèt* it may bee so, *estò* bee it so, *sit* *sa* è bee it indeed so.

Forbidding ; as, *Nè* not, *non* not.

Flattering ; as, *Amabò* prettily.

Wishing ; as, *Utinam* would to God, *ô* *fi* *Q* that.

Gathering together ; as, *Simul* together, *una* in one, *pariter* alike.

Parting ; as, *Scorsim* severally, *gregatim* by flocks, *bisariam* two waters.

Choosing ; as, *Potius* rather, *imò* yea rather, *satiùs* better.

Excluding ; as, *Tantum* onely, *modò* onely, *solum* onely.

Including or denying onely ; as, *Non modò* not onely, *non solum* not onely, *nedum* much less.

Diver-

Secundum eorum significationem quædam

Species Ad-
verbiorum
sunt 33.

Loci, $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{In Loco ; ut, Hic, illic.} \\ \text{Ad Locum ; ut, Huc, illuc.} \\ \text{A Loco ; ut, Hinc, illinc.} \\ \text{Per Locum ; ut, Hac, illac.} \end{array} \right.$
câque

Secundum eorum significationem quædam dicuntur Adverbia

Temporis ; ut, *Nunc, tunc, hodie ; usque Temporis*
& Loci est.

Numeri ; ut, *Semel, bis, ter, iterum.*

Ordinis ; ut, *Indè, denique, demum.*

Interrogandi ; ut, *Cur ? quare ? unde ?*

Vocandi ; ut, *Heus, ô echo.*

Affirmandi ; ut, *Certè, nã, professò, scilicet.*

Negandi ; ut, *Non, haud, minimè.*

Jurandi ; ut, *Pol, adipol, hercle.*

Hortandi ; ut, *Agè, sodes, sùltis.*

Concedendi ; ut, *licèt, estò, sit-sanè.*

Prohibendi ; ut, *Nè, non.*

Adulandi ; ut, *Amabò.*

Optandi ; ut, *Utinam, ô si.*

Congregandi ; ut, *Simul, unà, pariter.*

Segregandi ; ut, *Seorsim, gregatim, bifariam.*

Eligendi ; ut, *Potius, imò, satius.*

Excludendi ; ut, *Tantum, modò, solùm.*

Includendi, sive negatæ solitudinis ; ut, *Non
modò, non solùm, nedum*

N

Diver-

- According to their signification some are called Adverbs of
- Diversitie** ; as, *Aliter otherwise, secus otherwise.*
Propinquitie or **Nearness** ; as, *Obviâ meeting, præsto at hand.*
Intending or **Increasing** ; as, *Valdè very, nimis too, funditus utterly, omnino altogether.*
Remitting or **diminishing** ; as, *Vix scarce, ægrè hardly, paulatim by little and little, pedetentim foot by foot.*
Restraining ; as, *Quatenus as far as, quoad as much as concerneth, in-quantum in as much as.*
Of a thing not finished ; as, *Penè almost, ferme in a manner.*
Explaining ; as, *Patè suppose, utpote as, nimirum to wit, id est that is, videlicet to wit, quasi dicat as if one should say.*
Doubling ; as, *Forſan perhaps, forſitan perhaps ſo, fortâſſis if it be ſo.*
Chance ; as, *Fortè as it fall's out, fortuito by chance, fortè-fortunâ by fortune.*
Shewing ; as, *En lo, ecce behold, ſic thus, ita ſo.*
Likeneſs ; as, *Sic ſo, ſicut as, cœu as, tanquam as, ita as.*
Quantitie ; as, *Favum a little, minimè very little, ſatis enough, abunde in abundance.*
Qualitie ; as, *Bene well, malè ill, and ſuch as end in e, and com of Adjectives of three terminations; as, Doctè learnedly, Pulchrè beauly; alſo ſuch as end in er, and com of Adjectives of three Articles ; as, graviter heavily, feliciter happily.*
Comparing ; as, *Tam as well, quàm as, minus leſs, æquè as well as, magis atque rather then.*
Adverbs derived of Adjectives are compared like Ad
Adjectives, and differ onely in termination ; as, *Doctum He learnedly, doctius more learnedly, doctiſſimè moſt learnedly ; fortiter ſtrongly, fortiùs more ſtrongly, fortiſſimè moſt ſtrongly.* Like

Secundum eorum significationem quædam dicuntur Adverbia

Diversitatis ; ut, *Aliter, secus.*

Propinquitatis ; ut, *Obviàm, præstò.*

Intendendi ; ut, *Valdè, nimis, funditus, omnino.*

Remittendi ; ut, *Vix, agrè, paulatim, pederentim.*

Restringendi ; ut, *Quatenus, quoad, in-quantum.*

Rei non peractæ ; ut, *Penè, ferme.*

Explanandi ; ut, *Putà, utpote, nimirum, i. e. (id est) viz. (videlicet) q.d. (quasi dicat.)*

Dubitandi ; ut, *Forsan, forsitan, fortassis.*

Eventûs ; ut, *Fortè, fortuitò, fortè-fortunâ.*

Demonstrandi ; ut, *En, ecce, sic, ità.*

Similitudinis ; *Sic, sicut, ceu, tanquam, velut.*

Quantitatis ; ut, *Parùm, minimè, satis, abunde.*

Qualitatis ; ut, *Benè, malè, & quæ in e desinunt ab Abiectivis trium terminationum* ; ut, *Dolè, pulchrè* : item in *er* ab Adiectivis trium Articulorum ; ut, *Graviter, feliciter.*

Comparandi ; ut, *Tam, quàm, minùs, aquè, magis atque.*

Adverbia ab Adiectivis derivata more Adjectivorum comparantur, sed solâ terminatione differunt ; ut, *dolè, doleùs, doleissimè* ; *fortiter, fortius, fortissimè.*

Likewise *Bene* well, *melius* better, *optimè* very well; *Sape* often, *sapius* more often, *sapissimè* very often; *Nuper* lately, *nuperrimè* very lately, with many others.

Sometimes Adjectives of the Neuter Gender take upon them the nature of Adverbs, in imitation of the Greeks; as, *Recentis* for *recenter* newly; *Torvum* for *torvè* frowningly.

Chap. 40. Of a Conjunction.

VI.
A Conjunction con-
joineth
words and
sentences.
Its kinds
according
to signifi-
cation are 17.

A CONJUNCTION is a part of Speech which fitly joineth words and sentences together.

According to their signification some be

- [Copulatives, which couple both the sense and the words; as, *Et* and, *que* and, *nec* nor.
- Suspensives, which stay the speech, or make another thing to be expected; as, *Cum* both, *um* both, *&* both, *vel* either, *nec* neither, being set two together.
- Disjunctives, which sever the sense and couple the words; as, *Aut* or, *sive* or, *vel* or.
- Causals, which give the reason of the former sentence; as, *Nam* for, *enim* for, *quia* because.
- Discretives, which make a difference; as, *Sed* but, *verò* but, *at* but.
- Conditionals, which imply a condition; as, *Si* if, *sin* but if, *nisi* except, *dum* so that.
- Exceptives, which except some thing; as, *Nisi* unless, *nisi* except, *quin* but, *alioquin* otherwise.
- Interrogatives, which ask a question; as, *Num* whether, *an* whether, *utrum* whether.
- Dubitatives, which propound a doubt; as, *An* whether or no, *num* whether or no, *nunquid* what.

[Rationals, or Illative, which infer the conclusion.

Quoad potestatem significationis, Conjunctionum alia sunt

Similiter & Bene, melius, optimè; saepe, sapius, sapissimè; nuper, nuperrimè, cum paucis aliis.

Aliquando Neutra Adiectiva induunt formam Adverbiorum, ad Græcorum imitationem; ut, Recens pro recenter; Torum pro torè.

Cap. 40. De Coniunctione.

CONIUNCTIO est pars orationis, quæ voces & sententias aptè connectit.

VI.
Coniunctio
voces &
sententias
conjungit.
Species ejus
quoad signi-
ficationem sunt
17.

Quoad potestatem sive significationem, Coniunctionum alia sunt

Copulativæ, quæ & sensum & verba copulant; ut, Et, que, nec.

Suspensivæ, quæ orationem suspendunt sive aliud expectari faciunt; ut, Cum, tum, &, vel, nec, geminata.

Disjunctivæ, quæ sensum disjungunt, verba verò copulant; ut, Aut, sive, vel.

Causales, quæ causam reddunt superioris sententiæ; ut, Nam, enim, quia.

Discretivæ, quæ discretionem faciunt; ut, Sed, verò, at, atque.

Conditionales, quæ conditionem implicant; ut, Si, sin, nisi, dum.

Exceptivæ, quæ aliquid excipiunt; ut, Ni, nisi, quin, alioquin.

Interrogativæ, quæ interrogant; ut, Nè, an, utrum.

Dubitativæ, quæ dubitant; ut, An, num, nunquid.

Rationales, sive I'lativæ, quæ ex ratione proposita

According to their signification some be

tion from the reason set down ; as, *Ergo therefore, ideo therefore, itaque therefore.*

Continuatives, which continue the members of a speech in order ; as, *Deinde after, porro further more, proinde thereupon, insuper moreover.*

Concessives, or Adversatives, which grant somewhat which the following sentence may oppose ; as, *Etsi although, quanquam although, licet though, tamen although, quamvis although.*

Redditives to the same, which being referred to their Concessives, make a sentence diverse from the former ; as, *Tamen yet, attamen but yet, verum but, veruntamen yet notwithstanding.*

Electives, which shew the former member of the sentence to be preferred ; as, *Quam as, ac as, atque as.*

Diminutives, which lessen the sense ; as, *saltem at least, vel even.*

Expletives, or Completives, which fill up a sentence for ornament's sake ; as, *Quidem indeed, autem and, scilicet forsooth, enim vero truly.*

Conjunctions adverbial, or Adverbs conjunctive, which with a very little difference are discerned from Adverbs ; as, *Quando when, or seeing that, proinde therefore, or then.*

According to its Order four.

According to their Order some be

Prepositives, which are set in the beginning of sentences ; as, *Nam for, quare wherefore, at but.*

Subjunctives, or Postpositives, which have the second, third, or fourth place in a clause ; as, *Quidem indeed, quoque also, vero indeed, enim for.*

Commons, which may indifferently be set before or after ; as, *Ergo therefore, igitur therefore, itaque therefore, sed but.*

Enclj-

Quoad ordinem sunt

Quoad potestatem five significationem Conjunctionum alia sunt

posita conclusionem inferunt ; ut , *Ergò, ideo, itaque.*

Continuativa , quæ membra orationis ordine continuant ; ut , *Deinde, porro, proinde, insuper.*

Concessivæ, five Adversativæ, quæ aliquid concedunt, cui posterior sententia adversetur ; ut , *Esse, quanquam, licet, tamen, quamvis.*

Redditivæ earundem, quæ ad Concessivas relaxatam sententiam superiori reddunt ; ut , *Tamen, attamen, veruntamen.*

Electivæ, quæ ostendunt præcedens membrum sententiæ præferri ; ut , *Quàm, ac, atque.*

Diminutivæ, quæ diminuunt sensum ; ut , *Saltem, vel.*

Expletivæ, vel Completivæ, quæ ornatûs gratiâ sententiam complent ; ut , *Quidem, autem, scilicet, enim vero.*

Conjunctiones adverbiales, vel Adverbia conjunctionis, quæ tenui discrimine ab adverbis discernuntur ; ut , *Quando, proinde.*

Quoad ordinem sunt

Præpositivæ, quæ in sententiarum exordio ponuntur ; ut , *Nam, quare, at.*

Subjunctivæ, five Postpositivæ, quæ secundum, tertium, vel quartum locum in clausula occupant ; ut , *Quidem, quoque, verò, enim.*

Communes, quæ indifferenter & præponi & postponi possunt ; ut , *Ergò, igitur, itaque, sed.*

Quoad Ordinem quatuor.

* Enclitics, or Inclinations, which are annexed to the former word, and incline or turn back their accent into the last syllable of it; as, *Que, nè, ve, dum, sis, nam.*

Chap. 41. Of a Preposition.

VII.
A Preposition is set before other words.
There be 54 Prepositions, some of which are 1. Separable.

A PREPOSITION is a part of Speech which is set before other words,
either $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Apposition; as, } \textit{Ad scholam} \text{ to the school.} \\ \text{Composition; as, } \textit{Advenio} \text{ to com to.} \end{array} \right.$

Prepositions are either $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} 1. \text{ Separable.} \\ \text{Or,} \\ 2. \text{ Inseparable.} \end{array} \right.$

Separable Prepositions are used both in and out of Composition; of whose regiment we shall treat
LIB. 3. CAP. 8.

For thirtie one of these govern an Accusative case, viz.

<i>Ad</i> to.	<i>Erga</i> towards.	<i>Præter</i> besides.
<i>Apud</i> at	<i>Extra</i> without.	<i>Propter</i> because of.
<i>Adversus</i> } against.	<i>Infra</i> below.	<i>Secundum</i> according to.
<i>Adversum</i> }	<i>Inter</i> between.	
<i>Ante</i> before.	<i>Intra</i> within.	
<i>Cis</i> } on this side.	<i>Juxta</i> by.	<i>Secus</i> by.
<i>Citra</i> }	<i>Ob</i> for.	<i>Supra</i> above.
<i>Circum</i> }	<i>Penes</i> in the power of.	<i>Trans</i> beyond.
<i>Circa</i> } about.	<i>Per</i> by.	(cr. <i>Versus</i> towards.)
<i>Circiter</i> }	<i>Ponè</i> behind.	
<i>Contra</i> against.	<i>Post</i> after.	<i>Ultra</i> beyond.

Which some have comprised in these four Verses.

Ad, penes, adversus, cis, citra, circiter, extra, Erga, apud, ante, secus, trans, supra, versus, ob, infra, Ultra,

* Encliticæ sive Inclinativæ, quæ affixæ præcedenti voci, accentum suum in ejus ultimam syllabam inclinant; ut, *Que, nè, ve, dum, sis, nam.*

Cap. 41. De Præpositione.

PRÆPOSITIO est pars Orationis quæ aliis vocibus præponitur,

vel in { Appositione; ut, *Ad Scholam.*
Compositione; ut, *Advenio.*

Præpositiones sunt vel { 1. *Separabiles.*
Sive
2. *Inseparabiles*

1. *Separabiles* sunt. quæ & in & extra Compositionem usurpantur; de quarum regimine dicemus, LIB. 3. CAP. 8.

Ex his enim triginta una Accusativum regunt, viz.

<i>Ad.</i>	<i>Erga.</i>	<i>Præter.</i>
<i>Apud.</i>	<i>Extra.</i>	<i>Prope.</i>
{ <i>Adversus.</i>	<i>Infra.</i>	<i>Propter.</i>
{ <i>Adversum.</i>	<i>Inter.</i>	<i>Secundum.</i>
<i>Ante.</i>	<i>Intra.</i>	<i>Secus.</i>
<i>Cis.</i>	<i>Juxta.</i>	<i>Supra.</i>
<i>Citra.</i>	<i>Ob.</i>	<i>Trans.</i>
<i>Circum.</i>	<i>Penès.</i>	<i>Versus.</i>
<i>Circa.</i>	<i>Per.</i>	<i>Ultra.</i>
<i>Circiter.</i>	<i>Ponè.</i>	
<i>Contra.</i>	<i>Post.</i>	

Quas aliqui quatuor versibus complectuntur.

Ad, penès, adversus, cis, citra, circiter, extra,
Erga, apud, ante, secus, trans, supra, versus, ob, infra,
Ultra,

VII.
Præpositio
aliis voci-
bus præpo-
nitur
Præpositio-
nes sunt 54.
Quarum
aliæ sunt,
1. Separabi-
les.

The Latine Grammar.

Ultra, post, præter, præter, prope, pone, secundum
Per, circum, circa, contra, juxta, inter, & intra.

And twelv govern an Ablative case, viz. *A, ab, abs,*
from, absque without, coram before, cum with, de, è,
ex of, præ before, pro for, sine without.

Five govern both these cases; viz. *Clam privately,*
in in, sub & subter under, super above; only *tenu*
up to, will have an Ablative case singular, and Geni-
 tive plural.

3. Others
 Inseparable

Inseparable Prepositions are such as are never found
 without Composition, viz.

<i>Am,</i>	} as {	<i>Ambio, to go about.</i>
<i>Di,</i>		<i>Diduco, to bring unto sundrie parts.</i>
<i>Dis,</i>		<i>Distrabo, to distract.</i>
<i>Re,</i>		<i>Recipio, to receive.</i>
<i>Se,</i>		<i>Sepono, to set aside.</i>
<i>Con,</i>		<i>Contivo, to lye together.</i>
<i>Ve,</i>		<i>Vesanus, outrageous.</i>

The signification of Prepositions is not so much to
 bee learned by rules, as by daily use of reading and
 writing.

Som Prepositions are wont to bee set after their
 cases. viz. *Cum, as quibuscum with whom, tenu, as*
pube tenu up to the private parts; *versus, as Londinum*
versus towards London; to which *usque* may bee
 added, as *ad Orientem usque as far as the East.*

Prepositions when they bee put without a case
 becom Adverbs; as, *Coram laudare, clam vituperare,*
to praise one in presence, and dispraise privately.

Som Adverbs, Conjunctions, and Prepositions, ac-
 cording to their severall signification, are judged som-
 times Prepositions, sometimes Adverbs, and sometimes
 Conjunctions.

Som Prepositions do make Adjectives of the Com-
 parative and Superlative degree, as in Chap. 17. l. 2.

Ultra, post, præter, propter, prope, pone, secundum,

Per, circum, circa, contra, juxta, inter, & intra.

Duodecim verò regunt Ablativum; *A, ab, abs, a-*
que, coram, cum, de, è, ex, prae, pro, sine.

Quinque serviunt utrique casui; *Clam, in, sub, sub-*
ter, super; unicum *tenus* gaudet Ablativo singulari, &
Genitivo plurali.

2. Inseparabiles sunt, quæ nunquam extra compo-
sitionem inveniuntur.

2. Alia In-
separabiles.

<i>Am,</i>	} ut,	<i>Ambio.</i>
<i>Di,</i>		<i>Diduco.</i>
<i>Dis,</i>		<i>Distraho.</i>
<i>Re,</i>		<i>Recipio.</i>
<i>Se,</i>		<i>Sepono.</i>
<i>Con,</i>		<i>Convivo.</i>
<i>Ve,</i>		<i>Vesanus.</i>

Præpositionum significatio non tam regulis, quàm
assiduo legendi ac scribendi usu discenda est.

Quædam Præpositiones suis casibus postponi so-
lent; viz. *Cum*, ut *quibuscum*; *tenus*, ut *pube tenus*;
versus, ut *Londinum versus*: quibus addi potest *usque*,
ut *ad Orientem usque*.

Præpositiones cùm sine casu ponuntur fiunt Ad-
verbia; ut, *Coram laudare, & clam vituperare.*

Quædam Adverbiorum, Conjunctionum, & Præ-
positionum, pro variâ eorum significatione, modò
Adverbia, modò Conjunctiones, modò Præpositio-
nes censi possunt.

Quædam Præpositiones procreant Adjectiva Com-
parativi & Superlativi gradûs, ut videre est. Cap. 17.
Lib. 2.

CAP.

Chap. 42. Of an Interjection.

AN *Interjection* is a part of Speech interposed among other, which signifieth a passion of the minde suddenly breaking forth.

There bee so many Interjections then, as there are motions of a troubled minde, viz. of

Rejoicing ; as, *Evax hey brave, vab how, io ô fine.*

Sorrowing ; as, *Hew alas, hei, hei welladay, ô oh ah.*

Dreading ; as, *Atat out alas.*

Marvelling ; as, *Pape ô strange.*

Disdaining ; as, *Hem oh, vab away with it.*

Shunning ; as, *Apagte avant, apagite bee gon.*

Calling ; as, *Eho how, ho, io so ho.*

Praising ; as, *Euge well don, eja aha.*

Scorning ; as, *Hui wheo.*

Exclaiming ; as, *Proh ô.*

Curfing ; as, *Malum with a mitchief, v.e malum wo with a mitchief.*

Disliking ; as, *Phy out upon it.*

Threatning ; as, *Va wo.*

Laughing ; as, *Ha, ha, he.*

Silence ; as, *Au'tt, whisht, Pax peace.*

Sometimes Nouns, Verbs, and other words are put into a Speech in manner of Interjections ; as, *Infandum uot to bee spoken, Amabò of all loves, or as thou lovest mee, Malum with a mitchief, mirabile diffu wonderful to bee said, &c.*

Cap. 43. De Interjectione.

Interjectio est pars Orationis quæ subito prorumpentem animi affectum demonstrat.

Tot igitur sunt Interjectiones, quot sunt animi perturbati motus, viz,
 Exultantis; ut *Evax, vah, io.*
 Dolentis; ut, *Heu, hoi, hei, oh, ah.*
 Timentis; ut, *Atat.*
 Admirantis; ut, *Papa.*
 Indignantis; ut, *Hem, vah.*
 Vitantis; ut. *Apage, apagite.*
 Vocantis; ut *Eho, ho, io.*
 Laudantis, ut, *Euge, eja.*
 Deridentis; ut, *Hui.*
 Exclamantis; ut, *Oh, proh.*
 Imprecantis; ut, *Malum, vae malum.*

Fastidientis; ut, *Phy.*

Minantis; ut, *Vae,*

Ridentis; ut, *Ha, he, he.*

Silentium orationi injungentis; ut, *Au, 'st, pax.*

Aliquando Nomina, Verba, & aliæ voces interjiciuntur, more Interjectionum; ut, *Insandum, amabo, malum, mirabile dictu, &c.*



LIB. III.

OF SYNTAX.

Syntax
teacheth the
due joining
of words
By rules,

SYNTAX, or Constrution, is the third part of Grammar, which teacheth the due joining of words together.

And that is the due joining of words which the most approved among the antients have used both in writing and speaking.

There bee two parts	{	Concordance,	CHAP. I
of Syntax,		& Government,	CHAP. 2

Chap. I. Of Concordance.

Y. Of Con-
cordance,

Concordance is the constrution of words according to their agreement in som of the things that belong unto them.

There bee three Concords,	{	The first between the Nominative case and the Verb. §. I.
		The second between the Substantive and the Adjective. §. II.
		The third between the Antecedent and the Relative. §. III.
To which may bee added the Rules	{	Of the case of the Relative. §. IV.
		Of the word that asketh, and the word that answereth to the question. §. V.

§. I. The

LIB. III.

DE SYNTAXI.

SYNTAXIS, five Constructio, est tertia pars Grammatices, quæ debitam partium Orationis inter se Compositionem docet. Syntaxis
debitam
partium
Orationis
Compositi-
onem docet.
Per Resu-
Ea verò est debita Compositio, quâ veterum probatissimi, tum in scribendo, tum in loquendo sunt
usi.

Syntaxis
debitam
partium
Orationis
Compositionem docet.
Per Regu-
las.

Syntaxeos partes { Concordantia.
duæ sunt, &
Regimen.

C A P. I.

CAP. 2.

Cap. I. De Concordantiâ.

Concordantia est dictionum constructio secundum earum in accidentibus quibusdam convenientiam. 1. Concordantia.

1. Concordantia.

Sunt autem Concordantiæ tres, { *Prima inter Nominativum & Verbum. §. I.*
Secunda inter Substantivum & Adjectivum. §. II.
Tertia inter Antecedens & Relativum. §. III.

Quibus adjun-
gi possunt { De casu Relativi. §. I V.
Regulæ { De Interrogativo & Redditi-
vo. §. V.

S. I. Re-

§. I. The Rule of the first Concord.

- I. " **A** Verb Personal agreeth with its Nominative["]
 " case in Number and Person ; as,

The Master readerth, and yee neglect.

Whilest the cat sleepeth, the mice dance.

1. *Obs.* The Nominative case of the first or second person is very seldom set down ; as,

Withour God (wee) can do nothing.

1. *Exc.* Unless it bee for differencing sake, *i. e.* when wee signifie several employments ; as,

Thou plaieſt, I ply my book.

2. *Exc.* Or for Emphasis sake, *i. e.* when wee mean more then wee ſpeak expreſly ; as,

Thou art our Patron, thou art our Father, if thou forſakeſt us, wee are undon.

2. *Obs.* The Verb Subſtantive is very often underſtood ; as, *There (is) no ſafetie in War.*

Such a Maſter, ſuch a Man.

3. *Obs.* Oft-times other Verbs (alſo) are underſtood ; as, (** To prick out*) *the Raven's eies.*

The ſow (+ will return) to the mire.

§. II. The Rule of the ſecond Concord.

- II. " **T**he Adjective agreeth with its Subſtantive in["]
 " case, gender, and number ; as,

True faith is a rare bird in the earth, and very like to a black Swan.

An haſtie bitch bringeth forth blinde whelps.

1. *Obs.* An Adjective put like a Subſtantive doth ſupply the place of a Subſtantive ; as,

A learned poor man is better then an unlearned rich man.

All evil things are to bee avoided.

A good man is a common good.

§. I. Regula prime Concordantie.

Verbum Personale cohæret cum Nominativo¹
 Numero & personâ ; ut,
Præceptor legit, vos verò negligitis.
Dum felix dormit, saliant mures.

1. *Obj.* Nominativus primæ vel secundæ personæ rarissimè exprimitur ; ut,

Absque Deo nihil possumus.

1. *Exc.* Nisi causâ discretionis ; viz. cum diversa studia significamus.

Tu ludis, ego studeo.

2. *Exc.* Aut Emphasis gratiâ ; viz. cum plus significamus, quàm expressè dicimus ; ut,

Tu es patronus, tu pater, si deferis tu, perimus.

2. *Obj.* Verbum Substantivum sæpissime subauditur ; ut, *Nulla salus bello.* (* est)

Qualis Dominus, talis Servus.

3. *Obj.* Sæpe reticentur & alia verba ; ut,

Cornici oculum.

(* configere)

Sus ad lutum.

(† redibit)

§. II. Regula secunde Concordantie.

Adjectivum cum Substantivo, genere, numero²
 & casu consentit ; ut,

Rara avis in terris, nigroque simillima cygno.

Vera fides.

Canis festinans cæcos parit catulos.

1. *Obj.* Adjectivum Substantivè positum supplet locum Substantivi ; ut,

Doctus pauper indocto divite præstantior est.

Omnia mala sunt fugienda.

Vir bonus est commune bonum.

3.
§. III.

§. III. The Rule of the third Concord.

III. 3. The third

THE Relative (*qui*) agreeth with its Antecedent in gender, number, and person ; as,
The man is wise that speaketh few words.
The first hour that gave life, took from it.
The burden is made light, which is well born.

N. B. The Antecedent (most commonly) is a word that goeth before the Relative, and is rehearsed again of the Relative.

The Nominative case, the Substantive, and the Antecedent bee called *Supposites*, becaus in Concordance they bee (as it were) put under the Verb, Adjective, and Relative (which also by som are called *Apposites*) and bear them up : hence

1. *Obs.* In speeches which belong onely to men the Supposite is often understood ; as,

Thus (men) say commonly.

Good (boies) learn diligently.

A good (woman) com of good parents.

Hee) that maketh too much hast, dispatcheth too late.

**(Things) which hurt us teach us.*

2. *Obs.* Somtimes a whole claus, a member of sentence, a Verb of the Infinitive mood, an Adverb with a Genitive case, or a word put for it self, supplie the place of supposites ; as,

To-have-faithfully-learned-the-Liberal-Arts, doth quicken men's manners.

To-rise-early is verie wholesom.

Part of the Ensigns are burnt.

I-came-in-season, which is the chiefeft of things.

Farewel beeing often said, I again spake many words.

S. III. Regula tertiæ Concordantiæ.

III.

Relativum (*qui*) cum Antecedente concordat 3. Tercia
 genere, numero, & personâ; ut,

Vir sapit, qui pauca loquitur.

Prima, quæ vitam dedit, hora carpsit:

Leve fit, quod bene fertur onus.

N. B. *Antecedens* (ferè) est dictio quæ Relativum
 antecedit, & à Relativo refertur.

Nominativus, Substantivum, & Antecedens dicun-
 tur *Supposita*, quia Verbo, Adjectivo & Relativo (quæ
 etiam à quibusdam *Apposita* vocantur) in Concor-
 dantia quasi supponuntur atque ea sustentant:
 hinc

1. *Obs.* In orationibus quæ ad homines tantum per-
 tinent Suppositum sæpe subauditur; ut,

Sic vulgò dicunt.

Boni discunt seduli.

Bona bonis prognata.

Qui nimium properat, seriùs absolvit.

Quæ nocent, docent.

2. *Obs.* Aliquando oratio, membrum orationis, ver-
 bum Infiniti modi, Adverbium cum Genitivo, aut
 dictio pro se posita, suppleant locum Suppositorum;
 ut,

Ingenuas didicisse fideliter artes, emollit mores.

Diluculo surgere saluberrimum est.

Partim signorum sunt combusta.

In tempore veni, quod omnium rerum est primum.

Sæpe vale dicto, rursus sum multa loquutus.

3. Obs. The Verb, Adjective or Relative, sometimes agree with the Supposite in sense rather than words; as,

A companie rust. Both are detuded, or mocked.

An armed Nation fight.

Where is that rogue that hath undon mee?

I also am undon too, which is dearer to mee.

4. Obs. A Verb, Adjective or Relative set between two Suppositives of divers numbers or genders, may agree with either of them; as,

The falling out of lovers is the renewing of love.

Povertie seemeth a great burden.

A living-creature full of reason, whom wee call a man.

A bird which is called a sparrow.

The Citie Lutetia which wee call Paris.

5. Obs. Many Suppositives Singular, having a Conjunction Copulative between them, will have a Verb Adjective, or Relative plural, and these will agree with the more worthie Supposite; as,

I and thou, who plie our books diligently are in safetie.

Thou and hee, who sit so negligent, take heed you bee not whipt

6 Obs. The Relative and the Antecedent agree also in case, if they bee joined to the same Verb; as,

What citie I build, it is yours.

That what Comedies bee made might pleas the people

N. B. The worthiness of a Supposite is considered according to its

1. Gender;

or,

2. Person.

1. The First Person is more worthie then the Second or Third; & the Second more worthie then the Third

2. The Masculine Gender is more worthie then the Feminine, or Neuter; and the Feminine is more worthie then the Neuter.

Excep. But in things not apparent to have life, the Neuter Gender is more worthie; as,

3. *Obs.* Verbum, Adjectivum aut Relativum quandoque cum Supposito sensu nagis quàm voce convenit. ut,

Turba ruunt. Vterque deluduntur.

Gens armati pugnant.

ubi illic scelus est qui me perdidit ?

Ego etiam unà pereo, quod mihi est carius.

4. *Obs.* Verbum, Adjectivum, aut Relativum inter duo supposita diversorum numerorum, aut generum collocatum, cum alterutro convenire potest; ut,

Amantium iræ amoris redintegratio est.

Paupertas visum est magnum onus.

Animal plenum rationis, quem vocamus hominem.

Avis (qui vel) quæ passer appellatur.

Urbs Lutetia (quam vel) quos Parisios dicimus.

5. *Obs.* Plura Supposita singularia per Conjunctionem copulata saepe verbum, vel Adjectivum, vel Relativum plurale exigunt, atque hæc cum Supposito digniore quadrabunt; ut,

Ego & tu, qui studemus seduli, sumus in tuto.

Tu atque ille, qui sedetis tam supini, cavete nè vapuletis.

6. *Obs.* Relativum & antecedens etiam in casu conveniunt, si eidem verbo jungantur; ut,

Urbem, quam statuo, vestra est.

Populo ut placerent quas fecisset fabulas.

N. B. Suppositi dignitas { 1. Genus.
aut,
spectatur secundum 2. Personam.

1. Dignior enim est persona prima quàm secunda, aut tertia, & dignior secunda quàm tertia.

2. Dignius etiam est masculinum genus quàm femininum, aut neutrum, & dignius femininum quàm neutrum.

Exc. At in rebus inanimatis neutrum genus adhibetur tanquam dignius; ut,

The Bows and the Arrows are good.

Thy rod and thy staff, (these) have comforted mee.

7. *Obs.* When the Verb or Adjective answereth to many Suppositives, it agreeth expressly with that which is nearest to it, and with the rest by supplying it; as,

Thou liest where I (lie,) thou suppest when wee (sup).

The husband and the wife is angrie.

Exc. Yet when there is a comparison or likeness, the Verb or Adjective agreeth with the Supposite which is further from it; as,

I write better then thou (writest).

God's law is sweet, as bonie (is sweet).

7. *Obs.* A Pronoun Primitive seem's to bee included or understood in a Possessive, and therefore the Relative or Adjective do oft agree with such a Primitive; as,

It concerneth not mee, who am the eldest.

Seeing no bodie readeth my writings fearing to recite them publickly.

§. I V. Rule, Concerning the case of the Relative.

To which
add,

4. The case
of the Re-
lative.

When there cometh no Nominative case between the Relative and the Verb, the Relative shall bee the Nominative case to the Verb; as,

Hee that bewareth not afore, shall bee sorrie afterward. That which (is) rare, (is) dear.

Hee may easily finde a stick, who desire's to beat a dog.

But if there doth come a Nominative case between the Relative and the Verb, the Relative shall bee governed of the Verb, or of som other word in the same sentence; as,

Oft-times thou maist conquer by patience, whom thou canst not conquer by force. If

Arcus & calami sunt bona.

Virga tua & baculus tuus (ipsa) me consolata sunt.

7. *Obs.* Cùm Verbum vel Adjectivum pluribus Suppositis responder, cum viciniore convenit expresse, cum reliquis per supplementum; ut,

Cubas ubi ego, cœnas, quando nos.

Maritus & uxor est irata.

Exc. Attamen quando est comparatio vel similitudo, Verbum vel Adjectivum convenit cum remotiore Supposito; ut,

Ego melius, quàm tu scribo.

Divina lex, sicut mel, dulcis est.

7. *Obs.* Pronomen Primitivum includi vel subintelligi in Possessivo videtur, ideoque Relativum aut Adjectivum cum tali Primitivo sæpe concordant; ut,

Nil meâ refert, qui sum natus maximus.

Scripta cùm mea nemo legat, vulgo recitare timentis.

§. IV. Regula. De casu Relativi.

Quoties nullus Nominativus interseritur inter Relativum & Verbum, Relativum erit Verbo Nominativus; ut,

Quibus ad-
das,

4. De casu
Relativi.

Qui antè non cavet, post dolebit.

Quod rarum charum.

Facilè inveniatur baculum qui cupit cedere canem.

At si Nominativus Relativo & Verbo interponatur, Relativum regetur à Verbo, aut ab alia dictione in eadem oratione; ut,

Sæpe vincas patientiâ quem non vincas impetu.

If (thou) canst not do *what* (thou) *wouldest* ; will
that, *which* (thou) *maiest* do.

Whose shadow I reverence.

Like to whom I have not seen.

1. *Obs.* As the Relative may bee the Nominative
case to the Verb, so it may bee the Substantive to an
Adjective ; as,

Hee *that* rejoiceth at other men's evils is twice
wretched.

Happie is hee, *whom* other men's harms make
warie.

2. *Obs.* Nouns Interrogatives and indefinites do
follow the rule of the Relative, which evermore go
before the Verb, like as the Relative doth ; as,

*What an one was hee ? Hee was such an one as I never
saw.*

V.

S. V. The rule of the Question and Answer.

3. Of the
Question
and Answer

WHEN a question is asked, the answer must
bee made by the same case and tens that
the question is asked by ; as,

What do yee ? Wee *plie* our books.

Who is rich ? Hee that desireth nothing. *Who* is
poor ? The covetous man. What is now *a doing* in
England ? They *consult* about Religion.

1. *Obs.* This rule faileth when the divers nature of
words requireth divers cases ; viz.

1. When a question is made by *Cujus, ja, jum* ; as,
Whose cattle are these ? *Egon's*.

2. Or by a word that may govern divers cases ; as,
Is hee accused of theft ? or of murder ? Of both.
What cost it ? A pennie.

3. When one may answer by a Possessive ; as,
Whose book is this ? *Mine*.

Whose house is this ? *My Fathers*.

Si non potes quod vis, id velis quod possis.

Cujus umbram veneror.

Cui similem non vidi.

1. *Obs.* Sicuti Relativum Verbo Nominativus, ita Adjectivo Substantivum fieri potest; ut,

Qui malis gaudet alienis bis miser est.

Felix quem faciunt aliena pericula cautum.

2. *Obs.* Nomina Interrogativa & Indefinita regulam Relativi sequuntur, quæ semper præcedunt verbum sicuti Relativum; ut,

Qualis erat? Talis erat, qualem nunquam vidi.

§. V. *Regula de Interrogativo, & ejus Redditivo.* V.

Interrogativum & ejus Redditivum ejusdem casus, & temporis erunt; i. e. quo casu vel tempore queritur, in eodem respondebitur; ut, 5. De Interrogativo & Redditivo.

Quid agitis? Studemus.

Quis dives? Qui nil cupiat. Quis pauper? Avarus.

Quid rerum nunc geritur in Anglia?

Consultitur de Religione.

1. *Obs.* Fallit hæc regula, quoties diversa vocum natura diversos casus exigit; viz.

1. Quoties interrogatio fit per *Cujus, ja, jum, j;* ut,
Cujum pecus? Ægonis.

2. Aut per dictionem variæ Syntaxeos; ut,
Furtive accusatur, an homicidii? Utroque, vel de Quanti constitit? Denario. (utroque.)

3. Quoties per Possessivum respondere licet; ut,
Cujus est hic codex? Meus.

Cujus est hæc domus? Paterna.

Cap.

Chap. 2. of the Government of Nouns.

2. Of Construction.

Government is the Construction of words, according to which every foregoing word governeth a certain case, or mood, of the word which followeth it.

[Government is {	Of Nouns {	Substantives,	Chap. 2.
		Adjectives,	Chap. 3.
	Of Pronouns,		Chap. 4.
	Of Verbs,		Chap. 5.
	Of Participles,		Chap. 6.
	Of Adverbs,		Chap. 7.
	Of Conjunctions,		Chap. 8.
	Of Prepositions,		Chap. 9.
	Of Interjections,		Chap. 10.

For all parts of Speech govern cases except a Conjunction, which yet will have certain moods and tenses.

1. Of Nouns.

Nouns govern four cases: {
 A Genitive, §. VII.
 A Dative, §. VIII.
 An Accusative, §. IX.
 An Ablative, §. X.

VI.

§. VI. Rule. Of Nouns Substantives.

1. Substantives.

Substantives govern a Genitive case.

For when two Substantives com together betokening divers things, the later of them shall bee the Genitive case; as,

*The fear of the Lord is the beginning of wisdom.
 God's Word remaineth for ever.*

1. Obs. But if two or more Substantives belong to one thing, they shall bee put in the same case; as,

My

Cap. 2.

De Regimine Nominum.

Regimen est constructio dictionum, secundum ^{2. Regimi-} quam præcedens quæque dictio regit certum ^{nis.} casum vel modum sequentis.

Est autem Regimen	{	Nominum	{	Substantivorum, Cap. 2.
			{	Adjectivorum, Cap. 3.
	{	Pronominum, Cap. 4.		
		Verborum, Cap. 5.		
		Participiorum, Cap. 6.		
		Adverbiorum, Cap. 7.		
		Conjunctionum, Cap. 8.		
		Præpositionum, Cap. 9.		
		Interjectionum, Cap. 10.		

Omnes enim partes orationis regunt casus, excepta Conjunctione, quæ tamen certos modos & tempora postulat.

Nomina regunt quatuor casus : viz.	{	Genitivum,	§. VII.
		Dativum,	§. VIII.
		Accusativum,	§. IX.
		Ablativum,	§. X.

1. Nominum.

§. VI. Regula. De Nominibus Substantivis.

VI.

Substantiva Genitivum regunt. ^{1. Substantivorum.} Quum enim duo Substantiva diversæ significati-
onis concurrant, posterius in Genitivo ponitur ;
ut,

Timor Domini est initium sapientiæ.

Verbum Dei manet in æternum.

1. *Obs.* Sin duo vel plura Substantiva sunt ejusdem rei, in eodem casu ponentur ; ut,

Pater

The Latine Grammar.

My father beeing a man loveth mee a childe.

Mark Tullie Cicero the Prince of Orators.

2. *Obs.* The Genitive case of the owner is often changed into an Adjective Possessive ; as,

My father's house.

My Master's son.

3. *Obs.* The former Substantive is sometime understood by an *Ellipsis*, or defect of a word ; as,

To * *St Marie's.*

* *Church.*

I saw this man's † *Byrrhia.*

† *Servant.*

The third * of the Kalends.

* *Daie.*

4. *Obs.* An Adjective of the Neuter gender, beeing put without a Substantive, will have a Genitive case ; as,

As much monie as any man keeps in his chest, so much credit hee hath.

Wee do not see *that* (end) of the wallet which is on the back.

So also will others after the Greek fashion ; as,

Black wooll will take no die.

Sneaking dogs clap the rail under the bellie.

5. *Obs.* Words importing any qualitie to the praise or dispraise of a thing, coming after a Noun or Verb Substantive, shall bee put in the Ablative or Genitive case ; as,

A childe of an ingenuous look, and ingenuous blush.

Everie basest fellow is of a most lavish tongue.

6. *Obs.* *Opus* and *Usus* when they bee Latine for need, will have an Ablative case ; as,

What need words ?

Hee hath need of twentie pounds.

But *Opus* necessarie, admit's of divers cases ; as,

A guide is necessarie for us.

Get such things as are necessarie for you.

7. *Obs.* Substantives derived of Verbs, do sometimes govern the cases of their Verbs ; as,

A man banished from his Countie.

Obedience

Pater meus vir amat me puerum.

Marcus Tullius Cicero Princeps Oratorum.

2. Obs. Genitivus possessoris sæpiissime in Adjectivum possessivum mutatur ; ut,

Patris domus, vel Paterna domus.

Heri filius, vel herilis filius.

3. Prius Substantivum quandoque per Ellipsin subauditur ; ut,

Ad * Sic Mariæ.

* Templum.

† Hujus video Byrrhiam.

† Servum.

Tertio * Kalendarum.

* Die.

4. Adjectivum in neutro genere absque Substantivo positum Genitivum postulat ; ut,

Quantum quisque suâ nummorum servat in arca,

Tantum habet & fidei.

Non videmus id mantica quod in tergo est.

Sic & alia Græcorum imitatione ; ut,

Nigræ lanarum nullum bibunt colorem.

Canum degeneres caudam sub alvum reflectunt.

5. Obs. Nomina qualitatem denotantia ad laudem vel vituperium rei efferentur in Ablativo vel Genitivo post Nomen vel Verbum Substantivum ; ut,

Ingenui vultûs puer, ingenuique pudoris.

Contemptissimus quisque solutissimâ est lingua.

6. Obs. Opus & usus pro necesse, gaudent Ablativo ; ut,

Quid verbis opus est ?

Usus est viginti minis.

Opus verò pro necessarius variè construicitur ; ut,

Dux nobis opus est.

Quæ tibi opus sunt para.

7. Obs. Substantiva verbalia verborum suorum casus interdum regunt ; ut,

Exul à patria.

Obtem?

Obedience to the Laws.

What have you to do to minde this matter.

Chap. 3.

VII.

§. VII. Rule. Of Adjectives governing a Genitive case.

3. Adjectives.

1. With a Genitive case.

Adjectives also govern a Genitive case, that signifie desire, knowledg, remembrance, care, fear, or such like passion of the minde ; as,

The nature of man is *eager of news*.

The minde is *forefighted of that which is to com*.

Live *mindeful of death*. *Fearful of a storm*.

Ignorant of learning.

X III. Adjectives derived of Verbs that end in *ax* ; “ as, *Virtue is an abandoner of vices*.

Time is a consumer of things.

† IV. Nouns Partitives ; as, *Som of you*.

Take wheiber of these thou wilt.

X V. Nouns beeing put partitively ; viz. having “ after them this english *of* or *among* ; such as are ,

x I. Certain Interrogatives ; as, *Which of the brethren ? Is there anie among men so miserable as I am ?*

x 2. Certain nouns of Number ; viz. Cardinals and Ordinals ; as, *Four of the Judges*.

It is not yet apparent who was the *eighth of the wise men*.

X 3. Nouns of the Comparative and Superlative degree ; as,

Of the hands the right is the stronger.

The middle finger is the longest among the fingers.

I. Obs. Yet these in another sens will have an *Ab-*
lative case with a Præposition ; as,

The first from Hercules. The third from Æneas.

2. And in another sens a *Dative* ; as,

Second to none in godliness.

3. They

Obtemperatio legibus.
Quid tibi curatio est hanc rem?

Cap. 3.

§. VII. Regula. De Adjectivis Genitivum regentibus.

VII.

Genitivum etiā regunt Adjectiva quæ desiderium, notitiam, memoriam, curam, timorem, aut ejusmodi animi affectionem significant; ut, *Est natura hominum novitatis avida.* 2. Adjectivorum, cum Genitivo.

Mens est præsaga futuri.

Vive memor mortis. Timidus procella.

Rudis literarum.

„ III. Verbalia in *ax*; ut,

Virtus est vitiorum fugax.

Tempus edax rerum.

IV. Partitiva; ut, *Aliquis vestrum.*

Utrum horum mavis accipe.

„ V. Partitivè posita; viz. quæ per *de*, *ex*, aut *inter* exponuntur, cujusmodi sunt,

1. Interrogativa quædam; ut *Quis fratrum?*

An quisquam hominum est æquè miser ut ego?

2. Certa Numeralia; viz. Cardinalia & Ordinalia; ut, *Quatuor judicum.*

Sapientum octavus quis fuerit nondum constat.

3. Comparativa & Superlativa; ut,

Manuum fortior est dextra.

Digitorum medius est longissimus.

1. Obs. Hæc tamen in alio sensu Ablativum exigunt cum præpositione; ut,

Primus ab Hercule. Tertius ubi Ænea:

2. In alio verò sensu Dativum; ut,

Nulli pietate secundus.

2. Usur.

The Latine Grammar.

3. They are used also with the Prepositions by which their Genitive case is explained ; as ,

One of you is a god. One alone of a great manie.

The chief amongst all.

VI. Besides a great companie of other Adjectives , (viz. *Compos, reus, exfors, particeps*, and the like) which may better bee learned by frequent reading ; as ,

That hath got his desire. Accused of theft. Exempted from all fault. Partaking of his counfel.

Touching which see LINACER'S and DISPAUTER'S Grammars.

VIII.

§. VIII. Rules of Adjectives governing a Dative case.

§. A Dative

THese govern a Dative case ;

1. Adjectives that betoken

1. Profit or Disprofit ; as ,

O bee good and favorable to thine own.

Fit for the Countrie, profitable for the field.

A rout grievous to the peace, and enemy to gentle rest.

2. Likeness or Unlikeness ; as ,

A Poet is very near to an Orator. Equal to Hector.

Disagreeing to the truth.

3. Pleasures as , *Pleasant to all persons.*

4. Submitting ; as , *Reseeching his father.*

5. Belonging to any thing ; as ,

Idleness will bee troublesome to thee.

There is no wale unpasseable for virtue.

6. Hitherto are referred nouns compounded with *Con* ; as , *Cognatus mihi*, a kin to mee.

1. Obs. Yet some of these which signifie Likeness

may have a Genitive case ; as ,

Thou art like thy Master.

Hee was equal to this man. Partaker of his roguerie.

2. Obs.

3. Usurpantur etiam cum Præpositionibus per quas Genitivus exponi solet ; ut,

Est deus è vobis alter. Solus de plurimis.

Primus inter omnes.

VI. Ingens præterea Adjectivorum turba, (viz. *Compos, reus, exfors, particeps*, &c.) crebrâ lectione melius addiscenda ; ut,

Compos voti. Reus furti. Omnis culpæ exfors.

Illius consilii particeps.

De quibus videfis LINACRUM & DESPAUTERIUM.

§. VIII. Regula. De Adjectivis Dativum regentibus.

VIII.

Dativum regunt :

1. Dativus

„ I. Adjectiva quibus significatur

1. Commodum aut Incommodum ; ut,

Sis bonus, ô felixque tuus.

Patria idoneus, utilis agro.

Turba gravis paci, placidaque inimica quieti.

2. Similitudo aut Dissimilitudo ; ut,

Est finitimus Oratori Poëta. Aequalis Hecitori.

Veritati dissentaneum.

3. Voluptas ; ut, *Fucundus omnibus.*

4. Submissio ; ut, *Parenti supplex.*

5. Relatio ad aliquid ; ut,

Orium tibi molestum erit.

In via virtuti nulla est via.

6. Huc referuntur ex Con Præpositione composita ; ut, *Mihi cognatus.*

1. Obs. Quædam tamen ex his quæ Similitudinem significant, Genitivo gaudent ; ut,

Domini similis es.

Pat huius erat Affinis scelestis vel sceleris.

P

2. Obs.

- X 2 Obs. *Communis, alienus, immunitus, proprius, conscius* and *superstes* will have divers cases; as,
Common to all living creatures.
Death is common to all men.
This is common betwixt mee and thee.
Unmeet for the purpose. Far from ambition.
Estranged from Scevola's studies.
Free from this evil. Free to all.
We are free from those evils
It's proper to fools. Proper to mee.
I am guiltie to my self of no fault.
Hee was privie to the prank.
Hee outlived his honor.
That surviveth all other things.

3. Obs. *Natus, commodus, incommodus, utilis, inutilis, vehemens, aptus, ineptus, par, aqualis*, will have sometimes an Accusative case with a Preposition; as,

Born to glorie. Shoo's fit for the feet.

A man good of no fide.

Virtues are equal and even amongst themselves.

- X „ I I. Nouns Adjectives derived of Verbs, and of
 „ the Passive signification in *bilis*; as,
Hee is dead, beeing to bee lamented of all good men.
And more to bee lamented by none then thee.

I X.

§. I X. Rule. Of Nouns that govern an Accusative case.

3. An Accu- „ A Djectives govern an Accusative, which signifie
 sative. X „ the measure of length, bredth, or thickness of
 any thing; as, *A foot high. An hand broad.*

Three fingers thick. Seven foot long.

- X But they sometimes } A Genitive case; as, *Borders*
 also govern } *ten foot broad.*
 } An Ablative; as, *A well*
 } *three foot wide.*

§. X. Rule.

2. Obs. Communis, alienus, immunis, proprius, conscius;
& superstes variis casibus serviunt; ut,

Commune animantium omnium.

Mors omnibus communis est.

Hoc mihi tecum commune est.

Alienum consilii. Alienus ambitioni.

Alienus à Scevolæ studiis.

Immunis hujus mali. Omnibus immunis.

Immunes ab illis malis sumus.

Proprium est stultorum. Mihi proprium.

Mihi Nullius culpa conscius sum.

Is conscius illi facinori fuit.

Superstes dignitati suæ vixit.

Superstes omnium rerum.

3. Obs. Natus, commodus, incommodus, utilis, inutilis,
vehemens, aptus, ineptus, par, æqualis, interdum etiam

A accusativo cum Præpositione junguntur; ut,

Natus ad gloriam. Calcei ad pedes apti.

Homo ad nullam partem utilis.

Virtutes ipsæ inter se æquales & pares. Cic.

II. Verbalia in bilis accepta passivè; ut,

Multis ille bonis flebilis occidit,

Nulli flebilior, quàm tibi.

§. IX. Regula. De Nominibus Ablati-
vum regentibus.

IX.

„ A Djectiva regunt Accusativum significantem 3. An Ac-
longitudinem, latitudinem, aut crassitiem; ut, cusative.

Alius pedem. Latus manum.

Crassus tres digitos. Septem pedes longus.

Sed interdum } Genitivum; ut, Aræ lata pedum
regunt } denum.
Ablativum; ut, Fons latus pedibus
tribus.

P 2

§. X. Rega

X.

§. X. Rule. Of Nouns governing an Ablative case.

4. An Ablative. **I.** These govern an Ablative case.
I. Nouns and Adverbs of the Comparative degree, having *then, by or in* after them; as,
 Silver is *baser then gold*, and *gold then virtue*.
 No Theatre to truth is *greater then conscience*.
Higher by a foot. To excel in strength.
i. Obs. *Tanto, quanto, multo, paulo, nimio, eò, quò, hoc, atque, natu*, are joined to both degrees of comparison; as,
 Hee is far more skilful *then* the rest, but not *much* better.
 By *how much* one is *less* learned, by *so much* hee is more impudent. The greatest in age, *i. e.* The eldest. The least by birth, *i. e.* The youngest.
- II.** These Adjective *dignus, indignus, praeclitus, captus, contentus, extorris, fretus*; as,
 Thou art *worthie of hatred*.
Unbefitting the gravitie of a wiseman.
Endued with every virtue. Deprived of eies
 Get thee hence, *content with thy condition.*
Banished from his own house. Trusting to thy clemencie.
i. Obs. But *dignus*, and *indignus* will have sometimes a Genitive case; as, A warfare *worth thy labor*.
Not unworthie of his great Ancestors.
- III.** Nouns of Diversitie will have an Ablative case with a Preposition; as, *Another thing from this.*
Another man from him.
 And sometimes a Dative; as, *Different from this thing.*
- IV.** Adjectives and Verbs that signifie *plentie or want*, will have an Ablative, and sometimes a Genitive case; as, Love is *verie full both of honie and gall*.
 Loue is a thing *full of thoughtfom fear*.

Thou

§. X Regula. De Nominibus Ablativum regentibus.

X.

Ablativum regunt, 4. Ablativus.
 I. Comparativa (Nomina, Verba, & Adverbia) quum exponuntur per quam, aut post se habent nomen significans mensuram excellens; ut,

Vilius argentum est auro, virtutibus aurum.

Nullum theatrum veritati conscientiam majus est.

Uno pede altior. Viribus prestare.

I. Obs. Tanto, quanto, multo, paulo, nimirum, eò, quò, hoc. etate, natu, utrique gradui apponuntur; ut,

Longè ceteris peritior est, sed non multò melior.

Quò quis indoctior, eò impudentior.

Maximus etate. Minimus natu.

II. Dignus, indignus, præditus, captus, contentus, extorris, fretus, ut,

Dignus es odio.

Indignam sapientis gravitate.

Omni virtute præditus. Captus oculis.

Sorte tuâ contentus abi.

Extorris suâ domo. Fretus tuâ clementiâ.

„ Obs. Dignus & indignus interdum etiam Genitivum vendicant; ut, *Militia operis digna tui.*

Magnorum non indignus avorum.

„ III. Nomina diversitatis, Ablativum sibi cum Præpositione subjiciunt; ut, *Aliud ab hoc. Alter ab illo.*

Et nonnunquam Dativum; ut, *huic diversum.*

„ IV. Adjectiva & verba quæ ad copiam egestatémve pertinent, interdum Ablativo, interdum & genitivo gaudent; ut, *Amor & melle & felle est fecundissimus.*

Res est solliciti plena timoris amor.

The Latine Grammar.

Thou aboundest in love. Thou wantest virtue.

Rich in white cattle. Rich in grounds.

Void of guile. Blessed with grace.

Go on or increas in virtue. Upright in life.

„ 1. *Obs.* Som of these will have also an Ablative case with a Preposition; as, *Void of anger.*

X „ V. Any Adjective or Verb wil have an Ablative case,

X 1. Of the *Instrument*; as, *Stout at the sword.*

Better at Oar. J E S U S vanquished the Devil, not with weapons, but with death.

X 2. Of the *Caus*; as, *Pale with anger.*

Worf for too much libertie.

X 3. Of the *Circumstance*, of the manner of doing or of the thing; as,

An envious man groweth lean at the prosperitie of another. By name a Grammarian, but indeed a Barbarian. A Trojane by birth, a Syrian by nation.

Crooked old age will com by and by with a still pace.

1. *Obs.* But somtimes the Ablative case of the caus, or manner of doing will have a Preposition; as, *Unprovided of monie.*

Hee used the man with a great deal of courtesie.

X „ VI. Adjectives and Verbs of *buying and selling* will „ have an Ablative case of the price; as,

Cheap at twentie pounds. Dear at a farthing.

Not to bee sold for pearls, or purple, or Gold.

That victorie cost much blood, and manie wounds.

Hee taught for wages. Wheat is sold at a low rate.

„ *To hire for a pennie. To let for a shilling.*

Hee live's at ten pounds rent.

1. *Obs.* Yet these words, when they are without Substantives, are put after Verbs in the Genitive case; viz. *Tanti, quanti, pluris, minoris*; as, *I sell not for more then others, but for less.*

Things are so much worth, as they may bee sold for.

„ VII. Adjectives, and Verbs Passives and Neuters that

*Amore abundas. Cares virtute.
Dives nivei pecoris. Dives agris.
Expers fraudis. Gratiâ beatus.
Masse sis virtute. Integer vita.*

1. *Obs.* Ex his quædam junguntur Ablativo cum Præpositione ; ut, *Vacuus irâ, irâ, ab irâ.*

V. *Quodvis Nomen aut Verbum* admittit Ablativum,

1. *Instrumenti*, ut, *Ense validus. Melior remis.*

Dæmona non armis, sed morte subegit I E S U S.

2. *Causa* ; ut, *Pallidus irâ.*

Deteriores licentiâ.

Invidus alterius rebus macrescit opimis.

3. *Circumstantiæ modi actionis aut rei* ; ut,

Nomine Grammaticus, re barbarus.

Troianus origine, Syrus natione.

Jam veniet tacito curva senectâ pede:

1. *Obs.* Sed Ablativo causæ aut modi aliquando additur Præpositio ; ut,

Imparatus à pecuniâ.

Cic.

Summâ cum humanitate tractavit hominem.

„ VI. *Adjectiva & Verba mercandi regunt Ablativum pretii* ; ut,

Vilius viginti minis. Asse carus.

Nec gemmis, nec purpurâ venale, nec auro.

Multo sanguine ac vulneribus ea victoria stetit.

Mercede docuit: Vili venit triticum.

Addicere denario. Locare solido.

Habitat decem minis.

1. *Obs.* Hæc tamen sine Substantivis posita, verbis subjiciuntur in Genitivo ; viz. *Tanti, quanti, pluris, minoris* ; ut,

Non vendo pluris quàm alii, sed minoris.

Tanti valent res, quanti vendi possunt.

„ VII. *Adjectiva, & Verba Passiva, & Neutralia, si-*

X that signifie som proprietie or passion, will have an Accusative case, or Ablative, signifying the part or place wherein the proprietie or passion is ; as,

Hee is diseased in his feet. Hee is sick in minde rather then in bodie.

Hee hath red hair. Red-haired.

X 1. Obs. But the part affected is sometimes put in the Genitive case ; as, O thou ! that hast an happie wit. Thou troublest thy self in minde.

2. Obs. These bee Greek phrases :
Merrie as concerning other things. Like in other things. Like him both in speech and color.

XI. §. XI. Rule. Of the Ablative case Absolute.

X N.B. A Noun or Pronoun Substantive, joined with a Participle, expressed or understood, and having no other word whereof it may bee governed, shall bee put in the Ablative case absolute ; as,

The King coming the enemies ran away, i. e. When the King com's. I being Captain.

And it may bee resolved by whilst, when, if. &c.

Chap. 4. Of the Government of Pronouns.

2. Of Pronouns.

THESE Genitive cases of the Primitives *Mei, tui, sui, nostri* and *vestri* bee used when suffering or passion is signified, but *Meus, tuus, suus, noster* and *vester* bee used when action or possession is signified ; as,

Part of thee, Thy part. The image of us, Our image. The love of himself, His own love.

1. Obs. Possessives are sometimes put for Primitives, as, Hee did it for my sake.

2. Obs. *Nostrum* and *vestrum* bee used after Distributives, Partitives, Comparatives and Superlatives ; as,
Som

Grammatica Latina.

gnificantia aliquam proprietatem vel passionem, possunt regere Accusativum, vel Ablativum, significantem, partem in qua est proprietas aut passio; ut,

Eger pedes, vel pedibus. Ægrotat animo magis quam corpore.

Rubet capillos. Ruber crine.

1. Obs. Sed pars affecta interdum in Genitivo ponitur; ut, *O te felicem cerebri.*

Angis te animi.

2. Obs. Græcæ Phrasæ sunt:

Cætera latus. Cætera similis.

Huic vocemque coloremque similis est.

§. XI. Regula. De Ablativo absolutè posito.

XI.

N.B. **A**blativus absolutè ponitur expresso Participio, vel subaudito; ut,

Rege veniente hostes fugerunt.

Me duce.

Et resolvitur per *Dum, cùm, si, &c.*

Cap. 4. De Regimine Pronominum.

M Ei, tuî, suî, nostrî, vestrî ponuntur cùm passio; sed *Meus, tuus, suus, noster, vester*, cùm actio vel possessio significatur; ut, 2. Pronominum.
Pars tuî, pars tua. Imago nostrî, Imago nostra.
Amor suî, Amor suus.

1. Obs. Possessiva verò interdum pro Primitivis usurpantur; ut, *Meâ causâ fecit, i.e. meî.*

2. Obs. *Nostrûm & vestrûm* sequuntur Distributiva, Partitiva, Comparativa & Superlativa; ut,

Aliquis

Som of you. The bigger of you. The eldest of us.

3. *Obs.* *Meus, tuus, suus, noster, vester*, will have certain Genitive cases after them, viz. *Ippius, solius, unius, duorum, trium, &c. omnium, plurium, paucorum*, and the Genitives of Participles, which are referred to the Primitive, understood in the Possessive ; as,

Thou may'st guess out of *thine own minde*.

Thou hast seen the eies of *mee weeping*.

II. *Ipse* and *idem* may bee joined to all persons:

I my self will see. Thou thy self go on to do it.

Plato himself said. Hee himself did it.

Idem governeth sometimes a Dative case ; as,

Hee that saveth a man against his will, doth *the same as hee that kill's him*.

But more commonly an Ablative case with a Preposition ; as, *The same with it*.

III. *Ille* noteth the eminencie or worth of a thing ; and *Iste* the baseness or contempt of it ; as,

That brave Alexander the great. That mean fellow.

Hic is for the most part referred to the later Antecedent, and the nearer to its self ; *Ille* to the former, and the further from it ; as,

The husbandman's aim is contrarie to the shepherd's ; hee look's for profit from his land ; and hee from his stock of cattle.

Chap. 5. Of the government of Verbs.

V	Erbs go- vern a	{	Nominative	{	C <small>ase</small>	§. XII.
			Genitive			§. XIII.
			Dative			§. XIV.
			Accusative			§. XV.
			Ablative			§. XVI.

Aliquis *vestrū*. Major *vestrū*. Maximus natu *nostrū*.

3. Obs. *Meus*, *tuus*, *suus*, *noſter*, *veſter*, quosdam Genitivos poſt ſe recipiunt; viz. *Ipfius*, *ſolius*, *unius*, *duorum*, *trium*, *omnium*, *plurium*, *paucorum*, & Genitivos Participiorum qui referuntur ad Primitivum in Poſſeſſivo incluſum; ur,

Ex *tui ipſius* animo conjecturam feceris.

Noſtros vidisti *ſentis* ocellos.

II. *Ipſe* & *idem* omnibus personis adjungi poſſunt; ur,

Ego-ipſe videbo. *Idem* perge facere.

Ipſe Plato dixit. *Hic idem* fecit.

Idem regit aliquando Dativum; ur,

Invitum qui ſervat, *idem* facit occidenti.

Sed frequentius Ablativum cum Præpoſitione, ur,

Idem cum illo.

III. *Ille* eminentiam rei denotat; *Iſte* verò contemptum; ur,

Alexander ille. *Iſte* homuncio.

Hic ad poſterius & proprius antepoſitum; *Ille* ad prius & remotius uſitatiffimè refertur; ur,

Agricola contrarium eſt *Pæſtoris* propoſitum; *ille* fructum è terra ſperat; *hic* è pecore.

Cap. 5. De Regiminè Verborum.

V Erba regunt	{	Nominativum	{	§. XII.
		Genitivum		§. XIII.
		Dativum		§. XIV.
		Accuſativum		§. XV.
		Ablativum		§. XVI.

Quibus

To which also belong the Rules	{ Of Verbs passives.	§. XVII.
	{ Of such as have a divers construction.	§. XVIII.
	{ Of the Infinitive mood.	§. XIX.
	{ Of the Gerunds and Supines.	§. XX.
	{ Of the Gerund in	Di. §. XXI.
		Do. §. XXII.
		Dum. §. XXIII.
	{ Of the first Supine.	§. XXIV.
	{ Of the later Supine.	§. XXV.
	{ Of Time.	§. XXVI.
	{ Of Space.	§. XXVII.
	{ Of Place.	§. XXVIII.
	{ Of Impersonals.	§. XXIX.

XII.

§. XII. Rule. Of Verbs governing a Nominative case.

1. Of Verbs
with
1. A Nomi-
native.

Verbs Substantives, certain Passives, and Verbs of Gesture will have a Nominative case after them as well as before them ; as,

God is the chiefest good.

Faith is accounted the foundation of our Religion.

An evil shepherd sleepeth void of care.

Hee will become a learned man.

1. Obs. All manner of Verbs (almost) will have after them a Nominative case of the Noun Adjective, that agreeth with the Nominative case of the Verb, in Case, Gender, and Number ; as,

*The earth remaineth unmoveable. I write very seldom
Good boies learn diligently. I speak often.*

XIII.

§. XIII. The Rule of Verbs governing a Genitive Case.

2. A Geni-
tive.

These Verbs govern a Genitive case :
1. *Sum*, when it betokeneth possession, or otherwise

Quibus accidunt Regulae

De Verbis Passivis.	§. XVII.	
De variam constructionem habentibus.	§. XVIII.	
De Modo Infinitivo.	§. XIX.	
De Gerundiis & Supinis.	§. XX.	
De Gerundiis in {	Di.	§. XXI.
	Do.	§. XXII.
	Dum.	§. XXIII.
De priore Supino.	§. XXIV.	
De posteriore Supino.	§. XXV.	
De Tempore.	§. XXVI.	
De Spatio.	§. XXVII.	
De Loco.	§. XXVIII.	
De Impersonalibus.	§. XXIX.	

§. XII. Regula. De Verbis Nominativum regentibus.

XII.

Verba Substantiva, passiva quædam, & Verba gestûs, utrinque Nominativum expetunt ; ut, 3. Verborum, cum
1. Nominativo,
Deus est summum bonum.
Fides Religionis nostræ fundamentum habetur.
Malus pastor dormit supinus.
Hic evadet vir doctus.

1. Obs. Omnia ferè Verba post se Nominativum habebunt Adjectivi nominis, quod cum Supposito Verbi, casu, genere, & numero concordat ; ut,

Terra manet immobilis. Scribo rarissimus.
Boni discunt seduli. Loquor frequens.

§. XIII. Regula. De Verbis Genitivum regentibus.

XIII.

Genitivum regunt :
1. Sum, quoties significat possessionem aut ad aliquid 2. Genitivo,

otherwise pertaining to a thing, as a propertie or dutie; as, This house is my Father's house.

It is (the dutie) of a young man to reverence his elders.

It is the propertie of a good shepherd to shear his sheep, not to pill them.

1. *Obs.* But some Adjectives as *meum, tuum, humanum*, &c. are put in the Nominative case where *officium* or *munus* (a dutie) seem's to bee understood, by an Ellipsis; as,

It is not my dutie to speak against the Autoritie of the Senate.

It is incident to a man to bee angrie; but a beastly part to rage.

It is a Kingly part to do well.

2. *II.* Verbs that betoken to esteem or regard; as, Honestie is reckoned little worth.

Monie is every where much regarded.

I care not this for thee, who valuest mee but an hair.

I take it in good part.

3. *Obs.* But *estimo* will have an Ablative case; as, Virtue is much to bee esteemed.

Hee valued it at three-pence.

4. *Obs.* *Valeo* will have a Genitive, an Accusative, or an Ablative case; as, It is so much worth.

It is worth two farthings.

5. *Obs.* Wee say also, I account, or esteem it as nothing.

6. *III.* Verbs of accusing, condemning, warning, or acquitting, will have a Genitive case of the crime or punishment; as, It behooveth him to look to himself, that accuseth another of dishonestie.

They condemned most innocent Socrates to lose his life.

Hee admonished mee of a mistake.

Hee is acquitted of theft.

7. *Obs.* And this Genitive case is turned sometimes into

aliquid pertinere ; ut,
Hæc domus est patris.
Adolescentis est majores natu revereri.

Boni Pastoris est tondere pecus, non deglubere.

I. Obs. At hi Nominativi *meum, tuum, humanum* ;
 &c. usurpantur ubi *officium* aut *munus* subintelligi
 videtur per Ellipsin ; ut ,

Non est meum contra Auctoritatem Senatûs dicere.

Humanum est irasci ; Belluinum verò sævire.

Regium est benefacere.

II. Verba æstimandi : ut,
Parvi penditur probitas.
Plurimi passim fit pecunia.
Non hujus te facio, qui me pili æstimas.
Æqui, boni consulo, vel facio.

I. Obs. *Æstimo* Ablativum etiam adsciscit ; ut
Magno virtus æstimanda est.
Tribus denariis æstimavit.

2. Obs. *Valeo* cum Genitivo, frequentius autem cum
 Accusativo, & Ablativo junctum reperitur ; ut,
Tanti valet. Valet duos asses, vel duobus assibus.

3. Obs. Dicimus etiam, *Pro nihilo putô, habeo, duco, &c.*
 „ III. Verba accusandi, damnandi, monendi, &
 „ absolvendi, Genitivum criminis, vel pœnz postu-
 lant ; ut, *Qui alterum incusat probri, cum ipsam se*
intueri oportet.

Socratem innocentissimum capitis condemnabant.

Admonuit me errati.

Furti absolutus est.

I. Obs. Vertitur hic Genitivus aliquando in Abla-
 tivum vel cum Præpositione, vel sine Præpositione,
 ut,

into an Ablative, either with, or without a Preposition; as, I will condemn thee of the same fault.

Is hee accused of theft, or dishonestie? Of both.

I thought that thou wert to bee admonished of that matter.

X „ IV. *Satago, misereor and miseresco,*
Hee is busie about his own matters. Pitie the pains.
Pitie thine own stock.

X I. Obs. But *misereor* and *miseresco*, are sometimes read with a Dative case; as,
Pitie this man. Have compassion on the bad.

X „ V. *Reminiscor, obliviscor, and memini*; as,
Hee remembreth his promise. It is the propertie of fools to see other men's faults and forget their own.
I will make thee to remember mee alwaies.

I. Obs. And these will have also an Accusative case; as, I remember my lesson. I forget the song.

„ VI. Som also, after the manner of the Greeks, will have a Genitive case; as,
Ceas thy womanish complaints.
It is time to give over the fight.
Hee is worthie of all mischief, that blusbeth at his Fortune.

XIV.

§. XIV. Rule. Of Verbs governing a Dative case.

3. Dative.

X „ A Ll manner of Verbs put acquisitively, (i. e. which are known commonly by these tokens to or for after them) will have a Dative case; as,
I have it for this man, and not for thee.

I sleep not to all men. Neither is there sowing nor mowing for mee there.

X And to this rule do also belong Verbs that betoken,

„ I. To

tivum vel cum Præpositione, vel fine Præpositione ;
ut, *Condemnabo te eodem crimine.*

Accusatur furti, an stupri ? Utroque, vel de utroque.

Putavi eâ de re admonendum esse te.

„ IV. *Satago, misereor, miseresco ; ut,*
Is rerum suarum satagit, Miserere laborum.
Generis miseresce tui.

I. Obs. At *misereor* & *miserescō* rariùs cum Dativo le-
guntur ; ut,

Huic misereor. Miseresce malis.

„ V. *Reminiscor, obliviscar, & memini ; ut,*
Data fidei reminiscitur. Proprium est stultorum,
aliorum vitia cernere, oblivisci suorum.

Faciam ut mei semper memineris.

I. Obs. Et hæc Accusativum etiam desiderant ; ut,
Reminiscor lectionem. Obliviscor carmen.

„ VI. Quædam etiam, more Græcorum, Genitivum
admittunt ; ut,

Desine mollium querelarum. Hor.

Tempus desistere pugna. Virg.

Dignus est omni malo, qui erubescit fortune. Curt.

S. XIV *Regula. De Verbis Dati-*
vum regentibus.

XIV.

3. Dativo.

„ **D** Ativum regunt,
„ **D** Omnia verba acquisitivè posita ; ut,
Huic habeo, non tibi.
Non omnibus dormio.
Mihi istuc nec seritur, nec metitur.

Atque huic regulæ appendent Verba.

- X " 1. To profit or disprofit ; as,
It cannot profit or disprofit mee.
Hee hurteth the good, who spareth the bad.
- X " 2. To compare ; as,
To compare great things with small.
Hee made himself equal to his Brother.
1. *Obj.* But these will have sometimes an Accusative or an Ablative case with a Preposition ; as,
If hee bee compared to him, hee is nothing.
I compare Virgil with Homer.
- X " 3. To give or to restore ; as, Fortune hath given
too much to manie, enough to none.
Hee is ungrateful that requite's not a favor to him
that deserveth it.
- X " 4. To promise or paie ; as,
I promise thee these things.
Hee hath paid the debt unto mee.
- X " 5. To command or to shew ; as,
Monie hoarded up commandeth or serveth everie bodie.
Take heed oftimes, what thou saiest of any bodie,
and to whom.
- X " 6. To trust ; as, Believ not a woman, no though
shee seem dead. I commit this to thy trust.
- X " 7. To Obey, or to bee against ; as,
A dutiful son alwaies obeith his father.
Fortune resisteth sluggish praers.
- X " 8. To threaten or to bee angrie with ; as,
Hee threatned death to them both.
I am angrie with thee.
- X " 9. *Sum*, with its Compounds, except *possum* ; as,
Hee is a father to the citie, and a husband to the citie.
Manie things are wanting to them that desire manie
things.
- X 1. *Obj.* Likewise *Sum* and *Suppetit* signifying to
have ; as, Everie man bath his own liking.
Wee have mellow apples:

- „ 1. Significantia Commodum aut Incommodum ;
ut,

Non potest *mibi commodare* nec *incommodare*.
Bonis nocet qui *malis parcat*.

- „ 2. Comparandi ; ut,
Parvis componere magna.
Fratri se adequavit.

1. Obs. His autem interdum additur Accusativus
aut Ablativus cum Præpositione ; ut,
Si ad eum comparatur, nihil est.
Comparo Virgilium cum Homero.

- „ 3. Dandi & reddendi ; ut, *Fortuna multis nimium
dedit*, *nulli satis*.
Ingratus est qui *gratiam bene merenti non reponit*.

- „ 4. Promittendi ac solvendi ; ut, *Hæc tibi promitto*.]

Æs alienum mibi numeravit.

- „ 5. Imperandi aut nuntiandi ; ut,
Imperat, aut *servit collecta pecunia cuique*.
Quid de quoque viro, aut *cui dicas*, sæpe *caveto*!

- „ 6. Fidendi ; ut, *Mulierî nē credas*, nē *mortuæ
quidem*. *Hoc tuæ mando fidei*.

- „ 7. Obsequendi & repugnandi ; ut,
Semper obtemperat pius filius patri.
Ignavis precibus fortuna repugnat.

- „ 8. Minandi & irascendi ; ut,
Vtrique mortem minatus est.
Irascor tibi.

- „ *Sum*, cum *compositis*, præter *possum* ; ut,
Urbi pater est, *Vrbique maritus*.
Multa petentibus desunt multa.

1. Obs. Item *Sum* & *suppetit* pro *habeo* ; ut,
Velle suum cuique est.
Sunt nobis mitia poma.

The Latine Grammar.

Hee is not poor, *who hath* the use of things.

2. *Obs.* *Sum*, with manie others will have a double Dative case; as,

The sea is a destruction to greedie seamen.

A godly King is an ornament to the Common-wealth.

Thou hopest it will bee a praise to thee, which thou imputeest as a fault to mee.

13. Verbs compounded with the Adverbs, *Satis*, *bene*, *malè*, and the Præpositions, *Præ*, *ad*, *con*, *sub*, *ante*, *post*, *in*, and *inter*; as,

Hee hath don good to manie, hee hath don ill to none.

I prefer no man before thee.

A new relator addeth something to things hee hath heard.

1. *Obs.* A few of these sometimes change their Dative case into another case; as,

One man excell's another in wit.

I forbid thee fire and water.

2. *Obs.* But *Præco*, *præcedo*, *præcurro*, with som other Compounds of *præ*, will have rather an Accusative case; as, *Thou shalt go before mee.*

3. *Obs.* There is oft-time a Pleonasm or redundancy of the Dative cases, *Mihi*, *tibi*, *sibi*; as,

I Slaie *this man* with his own sword.

N. B. Sometimes a Dative case is put figuratively instead of an Accusative or Ablative with a Præposition: and of som it is called the eighth case; as,

The crie goeth unto heaven. Keep the heat from the cattle.

XV.

§. XV Rule. Of Verbs governing.

accusative an Accusative case.

4. An Accusative.

Verbs Transitives, are all such as have after them an Accusative case of the doer or sufferer, as, Fear God. Honor the King.

It's

Pauper non est cui rerum suppetit usus.

2. *Obs.* Sum cum multis aliis geminum adsciscit
Dativum ; ut,

Exitio est avidis mare nautis.

Rex pius est Reipublicæ ornameto.

Speras tibi laudi fore, quod mihi vitio vertis:

„ 10. Composita cum Adverbiis *Satis, bene, malè,*
„ & Præpositionibus, *præ, ad, con, sub, ante, post, ob, in,*
„ *inter, ut,*

Benefecit multis, malefecit nulli.

Neminem tibi antepono.

Auditis aliquid novus adjicit Autor.

1. *Obs.* Pauca ex his mutant Dativum aliquoties in
alium casum ; ut,

Prestat ingenio alius alium.

Interdico tibi aquâ & igni.

2. *Obs.* Sed *Præo, præcedo, præcurro,* & quædam alia
Composita cum *præ* Accusativo potius junguntur ; ut,
Præibis me.

3. *Obs.* Sæpe fit Pleonasmus sive redundantia Da-
tivorum, *Mihi, tibi, sibi ; ut,*
Suo sibi hunc jugulo gladio.

N. B. Aliquando Dativus figuratè ponitur pro
Accusativo aut Ablativo cum Præpositione ; & à non-
nullis dicitur octavus casus ; ut,

It clamor calo pro ad cælum.

Solstitium pecori defendite, pro à pecore..

§. XV Regula. De Verbis Accusativum
Regentibus.

XVI

„ Verba Transitiva exigunt Accusativum ; ut,

Deum time. Regem honora.

4. Accusati-
vo.

Q 3

Filii

The Latine Grammar.

It's a son's dutie to reverence his parents.

The fierce lioness followeth the wolf, and the wolf the kid.

1. *Obs.* Verbs absolute may have an Accusative case of their own signification, and sometimes an Ablative; as, *I live a life. To live a life long.*

Thou sleepest Endymion's sleep. They rejoiced with exceeding great joie. To go a long waie. To go the right waie. Hee died a sudden death.

2. *Obs.* Som verbs will have an Accusative case figuratively; as, *Hee smell's like a goat. Thy voice sound's like a man. Hee offend's in the same thing.*

They counterfeite sober men, and live riotously.

3. Verbs of Asking, teaching, and arraying, will have two Accusative cases, one of the Person, and another of the Thing; as,

Do thou onely ask God leav.

Hunger teacheth a man manie things.

Hee put on his shoes which hee had first put off.

4. But som of these sometimes change the one Accusative case into the Dative or Ablative, with, or without a Preposition; as, *I put on thy coat, or, I put thy coat on thee. Hee informeth the Senate of his journie. Let us intreat leav of him.*

XVI.

§. XVI. Rule. Of Verbs governing an Ablative case.

§. Ablative.

THese govern an Ablative case.
I. All Verbs; so that the Ablative case bee

1. Of the Instrument.

2. Of the caus.

3. Of the Manner of doing.

II. Verbs of Price.

III. Verbs that signifie som proprietie or passion :

Concerning which wee have spoken afore in the Regiment of Nouns. p.

IV.

Filii est, revereri parentes.

Torva Leæna lupum sequitur, lupus ipse capellam.

1. Obs. Verba absoluta Accusativum admittunt cognatæ significationis & aliquando Ablativum; ut,

Vivo vitam. Vitâ diu vivere.

Endymionis somnum dormis.

Gaudebant gaudium valdè magnum.

Longum ire viam. Ire restâ viâ.

Morte obiit repentinâ.

2. Obs. Quædam etiam figuratè Accusativum habent; ut,

Olet hircum. Vox sonat hominem.

Eadem peccat. Curios simulant & Bacchanalia vivunt.

3. Verba Rogandi, docendi, vestiendi, duplicem regunt Accusativum; unum personæ, alterum rei; ut,

Tu modò posce Deum veniam.

Multa hominem fames docet.

Induit se calceos, quos priùs exuerat.

4. Sed interdum mutant alterum Accusativum in Dativum vel Ablativum, cum, vel sine Præpositione, ut,

Induo te tunicâ, vel tibi tunicam. Senaturn edocet de itinere. Veniam oremus ab ipso.

§. XVI Regula. De Verbis Ablativum regentibus.

XVI.

„ **A**blativum regunt
„ I. Quodvis Verbum; modò iste
Ablativus fit

1. Instrumenti,
2. Causæ,
3. Modi Actionis.

„ II. Verba Pretij.

„ III. Verba proprietatem vel passionem significantia.

De quibus in
Regimine No.
minum supra
dictum est,
p.

§. Ablati-
vo.

IV.

X IV. Verbs of plentie or scarceness.

V. Som certain DePonents and Neuters, viz.

x Fungor,	}	[	They that would get true glorie,
x Fruor,			must discharge the duties of Justice.
x Utor,	}	[	It is the best to make use of another's
x Vescor,			madness.
x Nitro,	}	[	It helpeth in a bad matter, if thou
			canst use a good courage.
x Dignor,	}	[	I eat flesh.
x Prosequor,			I trust to my strength. It becometh
x Muto,	}	[	one to relie on his virtue, nor his
x Munero,			blood. (nor.
x Supersedeo,	}	[	I think not my self worthie of such ho-
x Communico,			I pursue thee with love, i. e. I love
x Afficio,	}	[	thee.
			Hee changeth square things for round.
	}	[	Hee rewarded him with the fellowship
			of his Kingdom.
	}	[	Wee must leav off the multitude of ex-
			amples. (table.
	}	[	I will give thee allowance alwaies at my
			I affect thee with joie, or, I make thee
	}	[	glad, with som few others.

VI. Verbs of Comparing or Exceeding ; as,

X I prefer this man by many degrees.

Hee is beyond him but a little space.

It is seemly to bee overcom in virtue by those
whom thou excellest in eminencie of place.X VII. Verbs that betoken Receiving, Distance or ta-
king away, will have an Ablative case with a Pre-
position ; as, I heard it of many. It is far distant from
us. I delivered thee from the evils.1. Obs. And this Ablative may bee turned into the
Dative ; as, Hee took his life from him.VIII. Mereor will have an Ablative case with the
Preposition De ; as,

Thou

„ IV. Verba Abundandi, & Implendi,

„ V. Certa quædam Deponentia & neutra, viz.

<i>Fungor,</i>	{	Qui adipisci veram gloriam volunt, Justitiæ fungantur officiis.
<i>Fruor,</i>		Optimum est alienâ insanîâ frui.
<i>Utor,</i>	{	In re malâ, animo si bono utare, juvat.
<i>Vescor,</i>		<i>Vescor carnibus.</i>
<i>Nitor,</i>		<i>Nitor meis viribus. Virtute decet, non sanguine niti.</i>
<i>Dignor,</i>	{ ut, {	Haud equidem tali me dignor honore,
<i>Prosequor,</i>		<i>Prosequor te amore.</i>
<i>Muto,</i>	{	<i>Mutat Quadra ta rotundis.</i>
<i>Munero,</i>		<i>Regni cum societate muneravit.</i>
<i>Supersedeo,</i>	{	<i>Exemplorum multitudine superseden- dum est.</i>
<i>Communico,</i>		<i>Communicabo te semper mensâ meâ.</i>
<i>Afficio,</i>		<i>Afficio te gaudio. cum paucis aliis.</i>

VI. Verba quæ vim Comparisonis obtinent ; ut,

Præfero hunc multis gradibus.

Paulo intervallo illum superat.

Deforme est ab iis virtutibus superari, quos dignitate præstas.

„ VII. Verba Accipiendi, Distandi & Auferendi Ab-

„ tivum cum Præpositione optant ; ut,

Audivi ex multis. Longè distat à nobis.

Eripuit te à malis.

1. Obs. Vertitur hic Ablativus aliquando in Dativum;
ut, *Eripuit illi vitam.*

VIII. Mereor Ablativo adhæret cum Præpositione
De ; ut,

De

Thou never deservedst well of mee.

Catiline deserved very ill of the Common-wealth.

XVII.

§. XVII Rule. Of Verbs Passives.

VERBS Passives will have after them an Ablative case with a Preposition, and sometime a Dative; as, *Virgil is read of mee.*

A Boar is oft-times held by a little dog. (men.

Honest things, not hidden things are desired of good

I. *Obs.* The other cases remain in the Passives which belonged to their Active; as,

Thou art accused by mee of theft.

Thou shalt bee made a mocking-stock.

2. *Obs.* *Vapulo, venen, liceo, exsulo* and *fo* do follow the construction of Passives, i. e. they govern an Ablative case with a Preposition, or a Dative; as,

Thou shalt bee whipt by the master. I had rather bee spoiled by a citizen, then sold by an enemy.

What will becom of him? Virtue is cheapned by all at a low rate. Why is Philosophie banished from banquets?

XVIII.

§. XVIII Rule. Of Verbs having divers Constructions.

With a divers Construction.

I. **T**HE same Verb may have divers cases in a several respect or consideration; as,

Hee gave mee his garment for a pawn, thou beeing present, with his own hand.

II. These Verbs have a divers Construction,

I. In the same signification; as,

1. *I flatter thee.*

2. *Hee bespotted mee.*

3. *I hearken to thee.*

4. *I agree with thee.*

5. *I dissent from thee.*

6. *I bestow a book on thee.*

7. I

De me nunquam bene meritus es.
Catilina pessimè de Republica meruit.

§. XVII Regula. De Verbis Passivis.

XVII.

Verba Passiva admittunt Ablativum cum Præpositione, & interdum Dativum; ut,

Virgilius legitur à me.

A cane non magno sæpe tenetur aper.

Honesti bonis viris, non occulta, petuntur.

1. Obs. Cæteri casus manent in Passivis qui fuerunt Activorum; ut,

Accusaris à me furti.

Habeberis ludibrio.

2. Obs. Vapulo, veneo, liceo, exsulo, fio, Passivorum constructionem habent; i. e. Ablativum admittunt cum Præpositione, vel Dativum; ut,

A Præceptore vapulabis.

Malo à cive spoliari, quàm ab hoste venire.

Quid fiet ab illo? Virtus parvo pretio licet omnibus.

Cur à conviviis exsulat Philosophia?

§. XVIII. Regula. De Verbis variam constructionem habentibus.

XVIII.

1. Idem Verbo diversi casus diversæ rationis apponi possunt; ut,

Cum diversa significatione.

Dedit mihi vestem pignori, te præsentem, propriam manum.

II. Hæc variam habent constructionem,

1. In eadem significatione; viz.

1. { Adulo { tibi. } 2. Asspergit { mihi labem. }
{ Adulor { te. } { me labe. }

3. Attendo { tibi. } 4. Consentio { tibi. }
{ te. } { tecum. }

5. { Dissentio { tibi, à te, } 6. Dono { tibi librum? }
{ Dissideo { tecum. } { te libro. }

7. Illu-

7. I mock thee.
8. I bestow my means on thee.
9. I put on thy coat.
10. Hee spread his cloak on the horse.
11. I forbid thee this thing.
12. I cure $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{my son,} \\ \text{that diseas.} \end{array} \right.$
13. I moderate my affection.
14. I deprave thee.
15. I tarrie for thee.
16. I forbid thee the house.
17. I go into the house.
2. In a different signification ; as,
1. I assent $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{I com} \end{array} \right.$ to thee.
2. I envie $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{I imitate} \end{array} \right.$ thee.
3. I obeie $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{I hear} \end{array} \right.$ thee.
4. $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{I see to thee.} \\ \text{I avoid thee.} \\ \text{I make a caution, or I am careful for thee.} \end{array} \right.$
5. $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{I give place to thee.} \\ \text{I go out of the Citie.} \\ \text{Give mee a book.} \end{array} \right.$
6. $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{I advise, or look to thee.} \\ \text{I ask advice of thee.} \\ \text{I resolv concerning thee.} \end{array} \right.$
7. $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{It hapneth to mee.} \\ \text{It toucheth mee.} \end{array} \right.$
8. $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{I favor thee.} \\ \text{I desire thee.} \end{array} \right.$
9. $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{It is wanting to mee.} \\ \text{Hee faileth mee.} \\ \text{Hee revolteth from mee.} \end{array} \right.$

7. Illudo { tibi, } 8. Impertio { tibi fortunas meas.
te, } te fortunis meis.
9. Induo { tibi tunicam } 10. Instravit { equo penulam.
te tunicâ. } equum penulâ.
11. Interdico tibi hanc rem, vel te hâc re.
12. Medico { gnato tuo,
istum morbum.
13. Moderor { affectui, } 14. Obtreſto { laudem.
affectum. } laudi.
15. Praestolor { tibi. } 16. Prohibeo { te domo.
te. } tibi domum.
17. Subeo { testum.
testo.
2. In diversâ significatione.
1. Accedo { tibi, i. e. Assentior. } 2. Æmulor { tibi, i. e. Invi-
te, i. e. Adeo. } te, i. e. imitor. ^{deo.)}
3. Ausculto { tibi, i. e. Obedio.
te, i. e. Audio.
4. Caveo { tibi, i. e. periculum à te avertio.
te, } i. e. declino.
à te, }
de te, i. e. do aliquid ad cautionem.
5. Cedo { tibi.
urbe.
librum.
6. Consulo { tibi, i. e. consilium do, vel prospicio.
te, i. e. consilium à te peto.
in te, i. e. statuo
7. Contingit { mihi, i. e. accidit.
me, i. e. tangit :
8. Cupio, { tibi, i. e. faveo.
te, i. e. expeto.
9. Descit { mihi, i. e. deest,
me, i. e. destituit.
à me, i. e. in alteram partem transit.

10. { I give, or send } to carrie to one.
 letters to thee } to read.
 11. { I lend thee on usurie.
 I borrow of thee on usurie.
 12. { I am sick of a Fever.
 I take pains for the publick safetie.
 13. { I am careful for thee.
 I am affraid of thee.
 14. { I remember thee.
 I speak of thee.
 15. { I conquer the citie.
 I obtain my desire.
 16. { I promise you.
 I entertain you.
 I betake my self home.
 17. { I report it to you.
 I propound it to you.
 18. { I refuse a gift.
 I declare him Consul.
 19. { I paie thee.
 I free thee.
 20. { I endeavor this.
 I desire this.
 I labor about trifles:
 21. { I have leisure for trifles:
 I am void of blame.
 The place is emptie.
 use will teach the rest.

XIX.

S. XIX Rule. Of the Infinitive mood.

Of the Infinitive mood.

Verbs of the Infinitive mood are put after verbs or Adjectives; as,
 Ponticus, wilt thou bee made rich? Thou must desire nothing.

And

10. Do { tibi literas, i. e. ut ad aliquem feras.
Mitto { ad te literas, i. e. ut legas.
11. Fœnero, { tibi i. e. do ad usuram.
Fœneror { abs te, i. e. accipio ad usuram.
12. Laboro { febrî.
{ de salute publicâ.
13. Metuo, Timeo, { te, vel à te i. e. nè mibi noceas.
Formido. { tibi, vel de te, i. e. sollicitus sum.
14. Memini tuî, te, de te.
15. Potior urbis. Potior voto.

16. Recipio { tibi i. e. promitto.
{ te, i. e. accipio.
{ domum, i. e. conféro.
17. Refero { tibi, i. e. narro.
{ ad te, i. e. propono.
18. Renuntio { muneri, i. e. recuso.
{ consulem, i. e. declaro.
19. Solvo { tibi, i. e. satisfacio.
{ te, i. e. libero.
20. Studeo { huic, i. e. operam do.
{ hoc, i. e. cupio.
21. Vaco { nugis, i. e. operam do.
{ ad nugas, i. e. otium habeo.
{ culpâ, i. e. careo.
Vacat locus.

Cætera docebit usus.

§. XIX Regula. De Infinitivo Modo.

XIX.

1. Verba Infinita quibusdam tum Verbis tum
Adjectivis subiiciuntur ; ut,
Vis fieri dives, Pontice ? nîl cupias.

De Infinitivo modo.

Et

And hee was worthe to bee loved.

Bold to endure all things. Enduring to bee called.

X 1. *Obs.* They have an Accusative case before them in stead of a Nominative ; as, *I bid thee to go hence.*
I bid thee bee in good health.

Which may bee resolved by *that* ; as, *I bid that thou go hence.* *I am glad that thou art in good health.*

X 2. *Obs.* They have like cases before and after them ; as, *An Hypocrite desireth to seem just.*

Nature hath granted to all men to bee happie, if any knew how to use it.

3. *Obs.* They are sometimes put absolutely by an Ellipsis ; as,

That these villanies should bee committed. i.e. It is fit,
 The Lamb trembled. i. e. Begun to tremble.

XX.

Of the Gerunds in

§. XX The Rule of the Gerunds.

X GERunds and Supines will have such a case as the Verbs that they com of ; as,

Wee must use age. To hear a sermon.

And they are as it were Nouns of both Numbers :

These in { *Di*
 { *Dum* } of the { Genitive
 { *Do* } { Accusative } Case.
 { Ablative }

as, { *An occasion of studying.*
 { *Fit to studie.*
 { *Wearie with studying.*

XXI.

Di.

Hence is it that,

X „ 1. The Gerund in *Di* may bee used after certain Substantives and Adjectives that govern a Genitive case ; as,

There is no place for telling.

The wicked love of having.

Certain of going. Skilful in darting.

i. *Obs.*

Et erat tum *dignus amari*.

Audax omnia perpeti. Patiens vocari.

1. *Obs.* Pro Nominativo Accusativum ante se statuunt; ut, *Jubeo te abire.*

Gaudeo te bene valere.

Atque resolvuntur per quod & ut; ut, *Jubeo, ut tu abeas. Gaudeo quod tu bene valeas.*

2. *Obs.* Utrunque eisdem casus habent; ut, *Hypocrita cupit videri justus, vel se videri justum. Natura beatis omnibus esse dedit, siquis cognoverit uti.*

3. *Obs.* Pontineur interdum absolute per Ellipsin; ut,

Hæccine fieri flagitia? i. e. decet.

Agnus trepidare. i. e. cœpit.

§. XX Regula de Gerundiis.

XX.

Gerundia & Supina regunt casus suorum Verborum; ut, De Gerundiis in

Utendum est atate. Auditum concionem.

Et se habent ut nomina utriusque numeri.

In	{ Di Dum Do	tanquam	{ Genitivi Accusativi Ablativi	Casus.
----	----------------------	---------	---	--------

ut, {
Occasio studendi.
Aptus ad studendum.
Fessus studendo.

Hinc est quod,

1. Gerundia in *Di* pendent à quibusdam tum Substantivis tum Adjectivis Genitivum regentibus; ut,

Non est narrandi locus.

Amor sceleratus habendi.

Certus eundi. Peritus jaculandi.

R

L. *Obs.*XXI.
Di.

X 1. *Obs.* This Gerund is often joyned with a Genitive case Plural; as,

For the caus of seeing them.

Leav of getting apples.

Libertie of increasing new comedies.

2. *Obs.* The Infinitive mood is sometimes put in stead of this Gerund; as,

Skilful to heal.

XXII.

Do.

X 3. Gerunds in *Do* bee used with one of these Prepositions; *A, ab, abs, de, è, ex, cum, in, pro*; as,

Idle boies are quickly frighted from learning.

The manner of right writing is joined with speaking.

1. *Obs.* Sometimes they are used without a Preposition; as,

Wee learn by teaching.

XXIII.

Dum.

X 3. The Gerund in *Dum* is used after one of these Prepositions, *Inter, ante, ad, ob, propter*; as,

In supper while bee merrie.

Christ died to redeem us.

X 1. *Obs.* When you have this English *must* or *ought*, it may bee put in the Gerund in *Dum*, with the Verb *est*, and a Dative case expressed or understood; as,

I must go hence. Wee ought to pray, that there may bee a sound minde in a sound bodie.

N.B. Gerunds are often turned into Participials in *Dus*, which agree with their Substantives; as,

In reading old Autors thou shalt profit.

It is the next to theft to bee drawn on by a reward to accuse men.

1. *Obs.* Hoc Gerundium sæpiſſime conjungitur Genitivo plurali ; ut,

Illorum videndi gratiâ.

Licentia diripiendi pomorum.

Crescendi copia novarum.

2. *Obs.* Infinitivus aliquando loco hujus Gerundii ponitur ; ut,

Peritum medicari.

3. Gerundia in *Do* pendent ab his Præpositionibus;

A, ab, abs, de, è, ex, cum, in, pro ; ut,

Ignavi à discendo citò deterrentur.

Rectè scribendi ratio cum loquendo, conjuncta est.

XXII.

Do.

1. *Obs.* Ponuntur & absque Præpositione ; ut,

Docendo discimus.

3. Gerundia in *Dum* pendent ab his Præpositionibus, *Inter, ante, ad, ob, propter* ; ut,

Inter cœnandum hilares este.

Christus moriebatur propter nos redimendum.

1. *Obs.* Cum significatur necessitas, ponuntur citra Præpositionem, addito Verbo *est*, cum Dativo expresse vel subintellecto ; ut,

Abeundum est mihi. Orandum est, ut sit mens sana in corpore sano.

N. B. Sæpe vertuntur Gerundia in Participalia in *Dus*, quæ suis Substantivis conveniunt ; ut,

Legendis veteribus proficies.

Ad Accusandos homines duci præmio proximum latrocinio est.

XXIII.

Dum.

XXIV.

§. XXIV Rule. Of Supines.

Of the
Supines.
Hm.

- I. **T**He first Supine is put after Verbs and Participles that beroken moving to a place; as,
They com to look on.
Why goest thou about to undo thy self.
 1. Obs. But these have a motion scarce discernable;
I set to sale. I bestow my daughter to bee married.
 2. The Poets say, *I go to visit. I go to see.*

XXV.
H.

- II. The later Supine is put after Nouns Adjectives; as,
Ease to bee don. Unhonest to bee spoken.

XXVI.

§. XXVI Rule. Of Time.

Of time.

- N**Ouns are commonly used
 1. In the Ablative case, which beroken part of time; i.e. with answer to *when*; as,
No man is wise at all hours.
Thou wakest in the night, and sleepest in the day.
 2. In the Accusative case, which signifie continual term of Time, without ceasing or intermission; i.e. with answer to the question *how long*? as,
Thou sleepest the whole winter.
Black Pluto's gate lieth open night and day.
 3. Sometimes a Preposition is added; as,
Three months ago. About three years. In a few daies. For a day. About that age. About that time.

§. XXVII. Rule.

§. XXIV Regula. De Supinis.

XXIV.

I. **P**rius Supinum sequitur Verbum aut Participium significans motum ad locum; ut,
Speſtatum veniunt.
Cur te is perditum.

De Supinis.
m.

1. *Obſ.* Illa verò, *Do venum*, *do filiam nuptum*, latentem habent motum.

2. Poëticè dicunt, *Eo viſere. Vado videre.*

II. Poſterius Supinum ſequitur nomina Adjectiva; ut,
Facile factu. Turpe diſtu.

XXV.
n.

§. XXVI Regula. De Tempore.

XXVI.

Frequentius uſurpantur

De Tempore.

1. In Ablativo, quæ ſignificant partem temporis, i. e. quando? ut,

Nemo mortalium omnibus horis ſapit.

Noſte vigilas, luce dormis.

2. In Accuſativo, quæ durationem temporis denotant, i. e. quamdiu? ut,

Hyemen totam ſtertis.

Noſtes atque dies patet atri janua Ditis.

1. *Obſ.* Interdum additur Præpoſitio; ut,

Ante tres meſes. Per tres annos. In paucis diebus. Circa id ætatis. Id tempus, per vel ſub.

R 3

§. XXVII. Regula.

XXVII. §. XXVII Rule. Of space or distance of place.

Of Space. **X** Nouns that betoken space between place and place bee commonly put in the Accusative case, and somtimes in the Ablative; as,
 Depart not a *foot-breadth* from a good conscience.
 They are not *many paces* one from another.

XXVIII. §. XXVIII Rule. Of Nouns of place.

Of Place. **X** Nouns of place, when they follow a Verb that signifieth action or motion,

X 1. In a place, to a place, from a place, or by a place (if they bee nouns Appellatives, or proper names of great places,) bee put with a Preposition, as,

Hee is *in the market*.

I live *in England*. Hee went hence *to the Church*.

Hee came *through France into Italie*.

Hee is gon *out of the town*.

1. *Obs.* But somtimes the Preposition is understood; as, Hee went *to Italie*.

X 2. In a place, or at a place (if they bee Proper names of cities or towns) of the first or second Declension and the Singular Number bee put in the Genitive case; But of the third Declension or Plural number onely in the Ablative; as,

What should I do *at Rome*?

Hee lived *at London*.

Hee was born *at Athens*.

I beeing unconstant love Tibur *at Rome*, and Rome *at Tibur*.

X 3. To a place (if they bee Proper names) are put in the Accusative case; as,

I go *to London* to buy wares.

I went *to Cambridge*.

4. *From*

§. XXVII Regula. De spatio Loci.

XXVII.

Spatium loci in Accusativo effertur, interdum & in Ablativo; ut, De spatio:

A rectâ conscientiâ transversum pedem nè discedas.
Nec multis inter se passibus absunt.

§. XXVIII Regula. De Loco.

XXVIII.

Nomina loci, cùm apponuntur Verbis significan- De Loco:
tibus actionem aut motum,

1. In loco, ad locum, à loco, aut per locum (si sint nomina Appellativa, vel nomina majorum locorum) adduntur ferè cum Præpositione; ut, In foro versatur.

Vivo in Anglia. Ad templum abiit.

Venit per Galliam in Italiam.

Profectus est ex oppido.

1. Obs. Sed omittitur aliquando Præpositio; ut, Italiam petiit.

2. In loco aut ad locum (si sint Propria nomina Urbium aut oppidorum) primæ vel secundæ Declinationis & Singularis numeri, Genitivum; sin tertiæ declinationis & pluralis duntaxat numeri, Ablativum admittunt; ut,

Quid Romæ faciam?

Londini vixit.

Athenis natus est.

Romæ Tibur amo ventosus, Tibure Romam.

3. Ad locum (si sint Propria) ponuntur in Accusativo; ut,

Eo Londinum ad merces emendas.

Concessi Cantabrigiam.

X 4. From a place or by a place (if they bee Proper names) are put in the Ablative case; as,
Hee went *by London* to Cambridg.

Hee went *from London*.

X Obs. *Humus, militia, bellum, domus, and rus* do follow the Rules of Proper Names of Cities or Towns; as,
Wee live together *at home*, and *in the ways*.

Hee was brought up *in the Countrie*.

I will go *into the Countrie*.

Go *home*.

Hee is returned *out of the Countrie*.

Hee is newly gon *from home*.

XXIX. §. XXIX Rule. Of the government of Impersonals.

Of Impersonals.

I Active.

I. Impersonals of the Active voice govern
I. A Genitive case, viz. *Interest, refert, and est* for interest; as, *It concerneth all men to do well*.

It much concerneth a Christian Common-wealth, that the Bishops bee learned and pious.

X 1. Obs. Except these Ablative cases, *Meâ, tuâ, suâ, nostrâ, vestrâ, and cuiâ*, as,

It is expedient to thee to know thy self.

It little concerneth you.

2. Obs. *Est* in such clauses as these is put for *licet* after the Greek fashion; viz.

You may see.

Nor is it for any man to deceiv you.

X II. A Dative, viz. *Accidit, certum est, contingit, constat, confert, &c.* which bee put acquisitively; as,

It is not lawful for any man to sin.

It is better for mee to die manfully, then to live with disgrace.

I am resolved to run all hazards.

X III. An Accusative 1. Onely, viz. *Juvat, decet, delestat, oportet*, as, *It becometh not men to scold like women.*

2. With

4. A loco aut per locum, (si sint Propria) ponuntur in Ablativo ; ut,

Profectus est Londino (vel per Londinum) Cantabrigiam. Discessit Londino.

Obs. Humus, militia, bellum, Domus, & Rus propriorum sequuntur formam ; ut,

Domi bellicque simul viximus.

Rure educatus est.

Ego rus ibo.

Ite domum.

Rure reversus est.

Nuper domo exiit.

§. XXIX Regula. De Regimine Impersonalium. XXIX.

I. Impersonalia activæ vocis regunt

De Impersonalibus.
I. Activis.

I. Genitivum, viz. Interest, refert, & est pro interest; ut, Interest omnium rectè agere.

Refert multam Christianæ Reipublicæ Episcopos doctos & pios esse.

1. Obs. Præter Ablativos meâ, tuâ, suâ, nostrâ, vestrâ, & cuiâ, ut,

Tuâ refert teipsum nōsse.

Vestrâ parvi interest.

2. Obs. Est in huiusmodi clausulis ponitur pro licet ad imitationem Græcorum ; viz.

Videre est.

Neque est te fallere cuique.

II. Dativum, viz. Accidit, certum est, contingit, constat, confert, &c. quæ acquisitivè ponuntur ; ut.

Peccare nemini licet.

Emori per virtutem mihi præstat, quàm per dedecus vivere.

Stat mihi casus renovare omnes.

III. Accusativum i. solum, viz. Juvat, decet, delectat, oportet ; ut, Dedecet viros muliebriter rixari.

2. Cum

- X 2. With the Prepositiō *Ad*, viz. *Attinet, pertinet, spectat*; as, *It belongeth to thee. It belongeth to all men to live well.*
- X 3. With a Genitive, viz. *Pœnitet, tadet, miseret, miserescit, pudet, piget*, as,
It repenteth every one of his own estate.
It irketh mee of my life.
2. Passives. II. Impersonals of the Passive voice have such cases as other Verbs Passives have; as,
 X Neither is there sowing nor mowing there for mee.
Hee is gon to Athens. They slept all night.
The enemies fought stoutly.
1. Obs. Yet many times the case is not exprest; as,
What do they in the School? They ply their books.

Chap. 6.

XXX. §. XXX Rule. Of the Government of Participles.

6. Of Participles.

- X P Participles govern such cases as the verb that they com of; as, *Like to enjoy his friends.*
Taking order for thee. Called the seven wise men.
- X 1. Obs. But when they bee changed into Nouns they will have a Genitive case; as,
Greedie of another man's goods. Most desirous of thee.
- X 2. Obs. Participials in *Dus* will have a Dative Case; as, *Hee is to bee earnestly entreated by mee.*
- X 3. Obs. *Exosus*, and *perosus* having the active signification will have an Accusative case; as,
Hating crueltie.
 But having the Passive, a Dative; as,
Hated of God and good men.
- X 4. Obs. *Persusus* will have a Genitive or an Accusative case; as, *Wearie of wedlock. Wearie of his sluggishness.*
- X 5. Obs. *Natus, prognatus, satus, cretus, creatus, ortus, editus*, will have an Ablative case; as,
O thou that art born of a Goddess!
A good woman com of good parents.
Of what blood is hee com?

6. The

2. Cum Præpositione Ad, viz. Attinet, pertinet, spectat.
Ad te attinet. Spectat ad omnes bene vivere.

3. Cum Genitivo, viz. Pœnitet, tadet, miseret, misere-
rescit, pudet, piget; ut,

Suæ quemcunque fortunæ pœnitet.

Tadet me vitæ.

II. Impersonalia passivæ vocis similes cum Perso- 3. Passivis.
nalibus passivis casus obtinent; ut,

Mihi istuc nec feritur, nec meritur.

Itur Athenas. Dormitur totam noctem.

Ab hostibus constanter pugnatur.

I. Obs. Sed & horum casus interdum non expri-
muntur; ut, Quid agitur in ludo literario? Studetur.

Cap. 6.

§. XXX Regula. De Regimine Participiorum.

XXX.

PARTICIPIA regunt casus suorum Verborum; ut,
Fruiturus amicis.

6. Participiorum.

Consulens tibi. Septem vocati sapientes.

I. Obs. Sed cùm fiunt nomina Genitivum postu-
lant; ut,

Alieni appetens. Cupientissimus tuus.

2. Obs. Quæ in Dus verò Dativum; ut,

Mihi exorandus est.

3. Obs. Exosus & perosus, activè significantia regunt
Accusativum; ut,

Exosus sævitiam.

Passivè verò Dativum; ut,

Exosus Deo & sanctis.

4. Obs. Pertasus nunc Genitivum, nunc Accusativum
regit; ut, Pertasus thalami. Pertasus ignaviam suam.

5. Obs. Natus, prognatus, satus, cretus, creatus, ortus, editus,
in Ablativum feruntur; ut,

Natè Deâ.

Bona bonis prognata parentibus.

Quæ sanguine cretus?

6. Peri-

6. The words put in stead of a Verb by way of circumlocution do sometimes govern the case of the verb : as, *Hee doth earnestly minde that.*

Do you perswade mee to that ?

XXXI.

Chap. 7. §.XXXI Rule. Of the Government of Adverbs.

1. Of Adverbs which govern cases.

7. Adverbs.

1. With Case.

A Dverbs govern
I. A Nominative case, viz. *En see,* and *Ecce* behold, beeing adverbs of Shewing ; as,
Behold Priam. Lo two Altars.

1. Obs. But beeing Adverbs of upbraiding they will have an Accusative ; as,

See his habit or fashion. Look thou the other fellow.

II. A Genitive, viz. Adverbs of quantitie, time, and place ; as, *In what Countrie. To what land. At that time. An abundance of tales. Words enough.*

Part of the men.

1. Obs. So also *Ergo* for *Causa* ; as, *For his sake.*

2. Obs. *Pridie* the day before, and *postridie* the day after, will have a Genitive or an Accusative case ; as,
The day before that day. The day after the Kalends.

3. Obs. *Minimè gentium* in no wise, is a proper phrase, or manner of speech.

III. A Dative, viz. such as bee derived of Nouns that govern a Dative case ; as, *Hee came to meet him.*

Hee singeth like him. Hee liveth unprofitable to himself.

1. Obs. These Datives bee used Adverbially, *Temporè* betime, *lucè* by day, *vesperi* at even ; as,

Wee must rise betime. Wee must go to bed at even.

Wee must take pains by day.

IV. An Accusative case of the Preposition they bee com of ; as, *Nearer the citie. Next to Spain.*

N.B. Plus,

6. Periphrasis etiam verbi aliquando regit casum
ipsum; ut,

Id studiosè operam dat, i.e. curat.

Idne estis auctores mihi. i. e. id suadetis.

Cap. 7. §. XXXI Regula. De Regimine
Adverbiorum.

XXXI.

1. De Adverbiis quæ casus regunt.

Adverbia regunt,

I. Nominativum, viz. *En & Ecce*, demonstrandi;
ut, *En Priamus. Ecce duo altaria.*

7. Adver-
biorum.
1. Cum
Casu.

1. Obs. Exprobrantis verò Accusativo junguntur;
ut, *En habitum. Ecce alterum.*

II. Genitivum, viz. Adverbia loci, temporis, &
quantitatis; ut, *Ubi gentium. Quò terrarum. Tunc
temporis. Abunde fabularum. Satis verborum.*

Partim virorum.

1. Obs. Sic & ergò pro causâ, ut, *Illius ergò.*

2. Obs. Pridie & Postridie Genitivum aut Accusati-
vum regunt; ut, *Pridie ejus diei.*

Postridie Kalendas, sive Kalendarum.

3. Obs. Minimè gentium peculiaris phrasis est.

III: Dativum, viz. quæ derivantur à Nominibus
Dativum regentibus; ut, *Venit obviam illi.*

Canit similiter huic. Sibi inutiliter vivit.

1. Obs. Sunt & hi Dativi Adverbiales Tempori, luci,
vesperi; ut,

Tempori surgendum. Vespero cubandum.

Luci laborandum.

IV. Accusativum Præpositionis unde sunt pro-
fecta; ut, *Proprius urbem. Proximè Hispaniam.*

N.B. Plus,

N. B. *Plus, minus, amplius*, will have a Nominative, a Genitive, a Dative, and an Ablative case; as,
Above three hundred wagons. Above 50 men. Above half a mile. More then that.

2. Of Adverbs, which govern Moods.

2. With a Mood.

1. *U* Bi when, *postquam* after that, *cum* when, do govern an Indicative; as, *When I shall sacrifice an heifer for my fruits, com thou.*
 Or a Subjunctive; as, *When I sung of Kings, and wars, Apollo pulled mee by the ear.*
2. *Donec* until govern's an Indicative; as,
Until hee had to fold the sheep and count them.
 Or a Subjunctive; as, *Until that water, which thou hast set on, bee boiled.*
Donec as long as, an Indicative; as,
As long as I was safe.
3. *Dum* whilst, or as long as, govern's an Indicative; as, *Whilst the maid is making readie.*
As long as thou doest what befitteeth thee.
Dum so that, or until, doth govern a Subjunctive; as,
So that I may profit thee:
Until the third Summer shall see him reigning in Italie.
4. *Quoad* as long as, govern's an Indicative; as,
As long as thou expectest thy Chamber-fellow.
 Or a Subjunctive; as, *As long as I could.*
Quoad until doth govern a Subjunctive; as,
I will keep all things safe till the Armie bee sent hither.
5. *Simulac & simulatque* as soon as, do govern an Indicative; as, *As soon as hee was able to abide war.*
 Or a Subjunctive; as, *As soon as his age waxed ripe.*
6. *Quemadmodum* as, *ut* as, *utcumque* as, *sicut* as, do govern

N. B. *Plus, minùs, ampliùs*, Nominativo, Genitivo, Accusativo, & Ablativo junguntur ; ut,
Plus trecenta vehicula. Plus quinquaginta hominum.
Plus quingentos passus. Plus ea.

2. De Adverbiis, quæ Modos regunt.

1. *U*bi, postquam, & cùm, Indicativum regunt ; ut,
Cùm faciam vitulâ pro frugibus, ipse venito.

2. Cum
 Modo.

Et Subjunctivum ; ut,

Cùm canerem Reges, & prælia, Cynthius aurem vellit.

2. *Donec* pro quousque regit Indicativum ; ut,

Cogere donec oves stabulis numerumq; referre jussit.

Aut Subjunctivum ; ut,

Donec ea aqua, quam adjeceris, decocta sit.

Donec pro quamdiu regit Indicativum ; ut,

Donec eram sospes.

3. *Dum* de re imperfectâ, regit Indicativum ; ut,

Dum apparatur virgo.

Dum quod te dignum est facis.

Dum pro quamdiu, dummodo, & donec, regit Subjunctivum ; ut, *Dum profim tibi.*

Tertia dum Latio regnantem viderit ætas.

4. *Quoad* pro quamdiu, Indicativum regit ; ut,

Quoad expectes contubernalem.

Aut Subjunctivum ; ut, *Quoad possem & liceret.*

Quoad pro donec regit Subjunctivum ; ut,

Omnia integra servabo, quoad exercitus huc mittatur.

5. *Simulac, Simulatque* Indicativum regunt ; ut,

Simulac belli patiens erat.

Vel Subjunctivum ; ut, *Simulatque adoleverit ætas.*

6. *Quemadmodum, ut, utcumque, sicut,* regunt Indicativum ;

*hæc non
 deinde
 deinde
 deinde*

vern an Indicative ; as, *As thou salurest, so shalt thou bee salured again.*

Or a Subjunctive ; as, *As thou shalt sow, so shalt thou reap.*

Ut after that, doth govern an Indicative ; as,
After that they came into the citie.

7. *Quasi* as, *cen* as, *tanquam* as, *Perinde acsi* like as, *Haud secus acsi* no other wise then as, do govern a Subjunctive ; as,

As though wee knew not our selvs among our selvs.

And these also couple like cases ; as,

I knew the man even as thy self.

Hee smileth on mee as on a friend.

8. *Nē* not, an Adverb of Forbidding, doth govern an Imperative ; as, *Bee not so wroth.*

Or a Subjunctive ; as, *This is a great knave, do not fear him.*

Chap.8. §. XXXII Rule. Of the Government of Conjunctions.

XXXII.

1. Of Conjunctions which do couple Words.

8. Of Conjunctions which do couple.

Conjunctions Copulatives & Disjunctives, and these four *quā, nisi, praterquam, an*, do couple like cases, and most commonly like moods and tenses ; as, *The night, and love, and wine do perswade no moderate thing.*

Hee is younger, then thou art.

Hee pleaseth no body, but himself.

Peter and John did pray and preach in the Temple.

1. *Obs.* But oftentimes som particular reason of words, requireth divers cases, moods and tenses ; as,

I bought a book for an hundred asses and more.

I lived at Rome and at Venice.

I gave thee thanks, and will do so whil't I live.

2. *Obs.*

vum ; ut, *Ut salutaris, ita & resalutaberis.*

Aur Subjunctivum ; ut, *Ut sementem feceris, ita & metes.*

*Ut postquam Indicativum regit ; ut,
Ut ventum est in Urbem.*

7. *Quasi, ceu, tanquam, perinde acsi, haud secus acsi, re-*
gunt Subjunctivum ; ut,

Quasi non adrimus nos inter nos.

Atque hæc copulant similes casus ; ut,

Novi hominem tanquam te.

Arridet mihi quasi amico.

8. *Nè Prohibendi Imperativum regit ; ut,*

Nè savi tantopere.

Aur Subjunctivum ; ut, *Hic nebulo magnus est,
nè metuas.*

Cap.8. §. XXXII Regula. De Regimine XXXII.
Conjunctionum.

1. De Conjunctionibus quæ voces copulant.

Conjunctiones Copulativæ & Disjunctivæ, cum his quatuor, *quàm, nisi, præterquam, an,* similes conjunctionibus 1. quæ
omnino casus, & aliquoties similes modos & tempora conglutinant ; ut, *Nox, & Amor, viximque*
nihil moderabile suadent.

Est minor natu, quàm tu.

Nemini, nisi sibi, placet.

Petrus & Joannes precabantur & docebant in templo.

1. Obs. Sæpe verò dictionum aliqua privata ratio
diversos casus, modos, & tempora postulat ; ut,

Emi librum centum & pluris.

Vixi Roma & Venetiis.

Tibi gratias egi, atque agam dum vivo.

S

2. Obs.

2. *Obs.* Cum & tum, item tum geminatum, similes casus copulant; ut,

Amplectitur cum eruditos omnes, tum inprimis Marcellum. Odit tum literas, tum virtutes.

2. De Conjunctionibus quæ Modos regunt.

1. *E*t si, tametsi, etiamsi, quanquam, in principio Orationis regunt Indicativum; ut, 2. Regunt Modos.
Et si nihil novi afferebatur.

Sed in medio Orationis, Subjunctivum; ut,

Me culpas, etiamsi ipse feceris.

2. *Quamvis*, & *licet* frequentius Subjunctivum regunt; ut,

Ipse licet venias.

3. *Ni*, *nisi*, *si*, *siquidem*, *quod*, *quia*, *quam*, *postquam*, *posteaquam*, *ubi* pro *postquam*, *nunquam*, *priusquam*,

regunt $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Indicativum,} \\ \text{aut,} \\ \text{Subjunctivum,} \end{array} \right\}$ ut, $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Quod tu rediisti,} \\ \text{(vel redieris) incolu-} \\ \text{mis, gaudeo.} \end{array} \right.$

Si regit $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Indicativum; ut, } Si \text{ vales, bene est.} \\ \text{\&} \\ \text{Subjunctivum; ut, } Si \text{ negaveris, vapulabis.} \end{array} \right.$

Si pro *quamvis* Subjunctivum; ut,

Non; si me obsecret.

4. *Quando*, *quandoquidem*, & *quoniam* regunt Indicativum; ut,

Dicite, quandoquidem in molli consedimus herbâ.

5. *Quippe* regit Indicativum; ut,

Quippe agrotat.

Quippe qui as hee that, doth govern an Indicative, or Subjunctive; as,

As hee hath twice forsworn himself.

Qui, when *quippe* is understood, signifying a Cause, a Subjunctive; as,

Thou art a fool to believ this fellow, i.e. becaus thou believest.

6. *Cum* for *quamvis* although, *quandoquidem* seeing that, *quoniam* becaus, govern a Subjunctive; as,

Seeing thou art fit.

7. *Nè, an, num*, whether, of Asking, will have an Indicative; as, *Whether is hee alive or no?*

Of Doubting, a Subjunctive; as,

See whether hee bee returned?

8. *Ut* to the end that, for *nè non* lest not, for *quamquam* although, and *utpote* becaus, govern's a Subjunctive as, *To the end that hee might bee with you.*

I am affraid hee cannot stand it out.

Though all things fall out as I would.

Becaus thou hast deceived mee so oft.

Ut for *postquam* after that, *quemadmodum* even as, *scilicet* as, or used in Asking, will have an Indicative; as

After that I went from the citie.

Go on to do, as thou dost.

Like as is his madness. How doth hee?

XXXIII. Chap. 9. §. XXXIII Rule. Of the Government of Prepositions.

9. Of Prepositions.

I. **T**Hirtie Prepositions govern an Accusative case viz.

1. *To the Church.*
2. *At the market.*
3. *Before death.*
4. *Against two.*

5. *Towards thee.*
6. *On this side Thames.*
7. *On this side the River.*
8. *About the town.*

9. *About*

Quippe qui, Indicativum & Subjunctivum; ut,
Quippe qui bis pejeravit, sive pejeraverit.

Qui, cùm *Quippe* subintelligitur, habens vim Causalem, Subjunctivum; ut,
Stultus es qui huic credas.

6. Cùm pro *quamvis*, *quandoquidem*, & *quoniam*, regit Subjunctivum; ut,

Cùm sis aptus.

7. Nè, *an*, *num* Interrogandi regunt Indicativum; ut,
Superátne?

Dubitandi, Subjunctivum; ut,

Vise num redierit.

8. Ut, causalis, & pro nè non, pro *quanquam*, & utpote Subjunctivum regit; ut,

Ut unà esset tecum.

Metuo ut subflet.

Ut omnia contingant, quæ volo.

Ut qui toties sefelleris.

Ut pro postquam, quemadmodum, sicut, & Interrogativum regit Indicativum; ut,

Ut ab urbe discessi.

Perge facere, ut facis.

Ut est dementia. Ut valet?

Cap. 9. §. XXXIII Regula. De Regimine
Præpositionum.

XXXIII.

I. **T**riginta Præpositiones Accusativum regunt;

o. Præpositionum.

1. *Ad Ecclesiam.*

2. *Apud forum.*

3. *Ante obitum.*

4. *Adversos duos.*

5. *Adversum te.*

6. *Cis Tamesin.*

7. *Citra fluvium.*

8. *Circa oppidum.*

S 3

9. C

A

- | | |
|-------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| 9. About the hill. | 20. Through the plain fields. |
| 10. About two thousand. | 21. Behinde the Back. |
| 11. Against the prick. | 22. After death. |
| 12. Towards the people. | 23. Besides the cottage. |
| 13. Without the hous. | 24. For my Neighbor. |
| 14. Betwixt the cup & the lip | 25. According to Aristotle. |
| 15. Within the hous. | 26. By the water-courses. |
| 16. Below all men. | 27. Above his capacitie. |
| 17. By the well. | 28. Beyond the Alps. |
| 18. For a reward. | 29. Towards London. |
| 19. In his power. | 30. Beyond the Indians. |

II. And twelv govern an Ablative case ; viz.

- | | |
|-----------------------|------------------------|
| 1. From God. | 7. Concerning trifles, |
| 2. From anemie. | 8. Out of a well. |
| 3. Of any bodie. | 9. From an high rock. |
| 4. Without monie. | 10. Before all things. |
| 5. Before the master. | 11. Without bread. |
| 6. With los. | 12. For the poor. |

III. Five govern an Accusative and an Ablative case.

- | | |
|--|---------------------|
| 1. Privie to his father. | 4. Upon a stone. |
| 2. { Into the hous. | 5. Under the earth. |
| 2. { In the hous. | |
| 3. { A little before night. | |
| 3. { In the night. | |
| 6. So Procul when it is a Preposition ; as,
Far from the citie. Far from the wall.
To which you may add tenus up to ; as,
Up to the privie parts.
Up to the breasts. Up to the ears. | |
| 1. Obs. A Preposition is often understood ; as,
I expect to day, or at the furthest to morrow.
Hee appeared in the shape of a man. | |

2. Obs.

- | | |
|----------------------------|----------------------------|
| 9. Circū montem. | 20. Per campos. |
| 10. Circiter duo millia. | 21. Ponè tergum. |
| 11. Contra stimulum. | 22. Post mortem. |
| 12. Erga populum. | 23. Præter casam. |
| 13. Extra ades. | 24. Propter vicinum. |
| 14. Inter calicem & labrū. | 25. Secundū Aristotelem. |
| 15. Intra domum. | 26. Secus decursus aquatū. |
| 16. Infra omnes. | 27. Supra caput. |
| 17. Juxta fontem. | 28. Trans Alpes. |
| 18. Ob præmium. | 29. Londinum versūs. |
| 19. Penès illum. | 30. Ultra Indos. |

II. Duodecim verò regunt Ablativum, viz.

- | | |
|----------------------|---------------------|
| 1. A Deo. | 7. De nugis. |
| 2. Ab inimico. | 8. E fonte. |
| 3. Abs quovis. | 9. Ex altâ rupe. |
| 4. Absque pecuniâ. | 10. Præ omnibus. |
| 5. Coram præceptore. | 11. Sine pane. |
| 6. Cum damno. | 12. Pro pauperibus. |

III. Quinque regunt Accusativum & Ablativum.

- | | |
|-----------------------------|--------------------------------|
| 1. Clam { patrem,
patre. | 4. Super { lapidem,
lapide. |
| 2. In { testum,
testo. | 5. Subter { terram,
terra. |
| 3. Sub { noctem,
nocte. | |

6. Item Procul quando fit Præpositio ; ut,
Procul urbem. Procul muro.

Quibus addas Tenus ; ut,
Pube tenus.

Pectoribus tenus. Aurium tenus.

1. Obs. Præpositio sæpe subauditur ; ut,
Exspectat hodie, aut * summum cras. * Ad.
Apparuit † humanâ specie. † Sub.

2. *Obs.* And oft-times it is more then needs; as, *Abstein from vices. I will call my friends to this matter.*

3. *Obs.* A Preposition in composition doth sometimes govern the same case, which it governed beeing without composition; as,

I pass by thee unsaluted. I leav my office.

4. *Obs.* These seem to bee singular expressions; as,
To go out of the doors.

To prevent the windes in running.

XXXIV.

Chap. 10. §. XXXIV Rule. Of the Government of Interjections.

10. Inter-
jections,

Certain Interjections govern cases, viz.
1. *O* of Exclamation, a Nominative, Accusative, and Vocative; as,

O gladfom day! O happie busbandman! O prettie boy!
But of calling, a Vocative only; as,
Com hither ô Galatée!

2. *Heu*, and *ohe*, a Vocative; as,
O Syrus! Ho little book!

3. *Pro* and *proh*, *ah* and *vah*, an Accusative and Vocative; as, *O the faith of God and man!*
O holy Jupiter! Ah mee poor man! Ah the inconstancie!
Alas unhappie maid! Oh you villain!

4. *Heu*, a Nominative, Dative, and Accusative; as,
Alas the godlinesse. O the hated stock.
Alas for mee poor man.

5. *Hem* and *apage* an Accusative; as, *Fie upon craft.*
See Davus for you. Away with such complements.

6. *Hei* and *væ* a Dative; as, *Wo is mee.*
Wo bee to thee.

1. *Obs.* Interjections are often put without a case; as,

Alas, I am afraid. What madness, with a mischief?

2. *Obs.*

2. *Obs.* Sæpe verò redundat; ut, *Abstine à vitiis. Amicos advocabo ad hanc rem.*
3. *Obs.* Præpositio in compositione eundem nunquam casum regit quem & extra compositionem regebat; ut,
Prætereo te insalutatum. Decedo magistratu.
sua interjacet sancta.
4. *Obs.* Limen exire. Cursu prævertere ventos, &c. videntur singularia.

C A P. IO. §. XXXIV Regula. De Regimine Interjectionum. XXXIV.

- Q**Uædam Interjectionum regunt casus; viz. 10. Interjectionum:
1. *O* Exclamantis, Nominativum, Accusativum, & Vocativum; ut,
O festus dies! O fortunatos agricolas! O formose puer!
 Vocantis verò Vocativum tantum; ut,
Huc ades ô Galatæ!
2. *Heu* & *ohe* Vocativum; ut,
Heu Syre! Ohe libelle!
3. *Pro* & *proh*, *ah* & *vah*, Accusativum & Vocativum; ut, *Proh Deum atque hominum fidem!*
Proh sancte Jupiter! Ah me miserum! Vah inconstantiam!
Ah virgo infelix! Vah scelus!
4. *Heu* Nominativum, Dativum, & Accusativum; ut,
Heu Pietas. Heu stirpem invisam.
Heu misero mihi.
5. *Hem* & *apage* Accusativum; ut, *Hem astutiss.*
Hem Davum tibi. Apage istiusmodi salutem.
6. *Hei* & *væ* Dativum; ut, *Hei mihi.*
Væ tibi.
1. *Obs.* Interjectiones non rarò absolute & sine casu ponuntur; ut,
Hei vereor, Quæ malum dementia?

2. *Obs.*

2. *Obs.* And they are often understood ; as,
O mee poor wretch. O the base prank.
I think you wonder, Sirs !

Chap. 11.

XXXV. §. XXXV Rule. Of the Figures of a word.

Of Figures,
 1. Of a
 Word.

Figure is a kinde of speaking on som new fashion ;
 or, the altering of a word or speech from the
 usual manner of speaking, and that by autoritie of
 good writers.

Figure is $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} 1. \text{Of a Word:} \\ \text{of two} \\ \text{sorts,} \end{array} \right. \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{which} \\ \text{belong's} \\ \text{to} \end{array} \right. \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Etymologie.} \\ \\ \text{Syntaxis.} \end{array} \right.$

A Figure of a Word (or that which belong's to *Ety-
 mologie*) is that which any way changeth the form of
 a word ; and these bee its chief kindes :

1. *Prosthesis*, is the putting a letter or syllable to the
 beginning of a word ; as, *Gnatus* for *natus*, *tetuli* for
tuli.

2. *Aphæresis*, is the taking a letter or syllable from
 the beginning of a word ; as, *Ruit* for *eruit*, *temnere*
 for *contemnere*.

3. *Epenthesis*, is the putting of a letter or syllable
 into the middle of a word ; as, *Religio* for *religio*, *Indu-
 perator* for *Imperator*.

4. *Syncope*, is the taking a letter or syllable from the
 middle of a word ; as, *Abiit* for *abivit*, *dixti* for *dixisti*.

5. *Paragoge*, is the putting of a letter or syllable to
 the end of a word ; as, *Dicier* for *dici*, *emori* for
emori.

6. *Apocope*, is the taking of a letter or syllable from
 the end of a word ; as, *Ingeni* for *Ingenii*.

7. *Diæresis*, is the dividing of one syllable into two ;
 as, *Aulâi* for *aula*, *evoluisse* for *evoluisse*.

8. *Synæresis*,

2. Obs. Sæpe etiam subintelliguntur; ut,
Me miserum. Facinus indignum.
Credo vos mirari, iudices!

Cap. 11.

§. XXXV Regula. De Figuris Dictionis. XXXV.

Figura est novarâ arte aliquâ dicendi forma; sive, De Figuris,
 mutatio formæ dictionis aut orationis à commu- 1. Dictionis.
 ni loquendi consuetudine, idque bonorum scripto-
 rum autoritate.

Est autem $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} 1. Dictionis: \\ \text{Figura} \\ \text{duplex,} \end{array} \right. \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{quæ} \\ 2. Constructionis: \end{array} \right. \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Etymologia} \\ \text{Syntaxi} \end{array} \right. \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{accidit.} \end{array} \right.$

Figura Dictionis, (sive Etymologica) est quæ dictio-
 nis formam aliquo modo mutat; ejus hæ sunt præ-
 cipuæ species.

1. *Prosthesis*, (sive *adjectio*) est appositio literæ vel
 syllabæ ad principium dictionis; ut, *Gnatu* pro *natu*,
teruli pro *tuli*.

2. *Aphæresis*, (sive *detractio*) est ablatio literæ vel
 syllabæ à principio dictionis; ut, *Ruit* pro *eruit*,
temnere pro *contemnere*.

3. *Epenthesis*, (sive *insertio*) est interpositio literæ
 vel syllabæ in medio dictionis; ut, *Religio* pro *religio*,
Induperator pro *Imperator*.

4. *Syncope*, (sive *concessio*) est ablatio literæ vel syllabæ
 à medio dictionis; ut, *Abiit* pro *abivit*, *dixti* pro *dixisti*.

5. *Paragoge*, (sive *productio*) est appositio literæ vel
 syllabæ ad finem dictionis; ut, *Dicier* pro *dici*, *emorier*
 pro *emori*.

6. *Apocope*, (sive *abscissio*) est ablatio literæ vel syl-
 labæ à fine dictionis; ut, *Ingeni* pro *ingenii*.

7. *Diaresis*, (sive *divisio*) est divisio unius syllabæ
 in duas; ut, *Aulæi* pro *aula*, *evoluisse* pro *evoluisse*.

8. *Synæresis*,

8. *Synæresis*, is the contracting of two vowels into one syllable, which belong to two divers syllables ; as, *Thesēi* for *Thesēi*, *vēmens* for *vehemens*.

9. *Metathesis*, is the mis-placing of a letter or syllable ; as, *Pistris* for *pristis* a long ship.

10. *Antithesis*, or *Antistæchon*, is the putting of a letter for a letter ; as, *Olli* for *illi*.

11. *Imesiss*, is the parting of a compound word betwixt the parts whereof another is put ; as, *Quæ mihi cunque placent*, What things soever pleas mee.

12. *Enallage*, is the putting of the Parts of Speech, or their Accidents one for another ; as, *The people beeing as King. i. e. ruling all abroad. Agnus trepidare for trepidabat*, The Lamb did tremble.

13. *Archaismus*, is an old fashion of speaking, which is now out of use ; as, *Valdè tonit* for *tonuit*, It thundered exceedingly. *Tam nulli consilii*, So void of counsel. *Operam abuit*, To bestow his labor to a wrong end.

14. *Metaplasmus*, is any change (at all) in a word ; as, *Agræsse* for *agresti*.

Chap. 12.

XXXVI. §.XXXVI Rule. Of the Figures of Construction.

2. Of Construction.

A Figure of Construction is that which any way changeth the frame of a Speech. Its kindes are,

1. *Appositio*, is the putting together of two or more Substantives in the same case ; as, *The river Rhine. The city Athens. M. T. C.*

And it is either to { 1. Restrain generalitie ; as, *A living creature, an hors.*
2. Take away Equivocation ; as, *The dog-star.*
3. To attribute a proprietie to one ; as, *Erasinus a man of most exact judgment.*

2. *Syllepsis*,

8. *Synæresis*, (five *complexio*) est contractio duarum vocalium (quæ ad diversas syllabas pertinent) in unam syllabam; ut, *Theſei* pro *Theſei*, *vemens* pro *vehemens*.

9. *Metathesis*, (five *trajeſtio*) est transpositio literæ vel syllabæ; ut, *Piſtris* for *piſtis*.

10. *Antithesis*, five *Antistæchon*, (five *oppositio*) est positio literæ pro litera; ut, *Olli* pro *illi*.

11. *Tmesis*, est dissectio vocis compositæ, cujus partibus alia interponitur; ut, *Qua mihi cunque placeant*.

12. *Enallage*, (five *Animeria*) partes Orationis, earumque Accidentia alia pro aliis ponit; ut, *Populum latè regem*, i. e. *regnantem*. *Agnus trepidare*, pro *trepidabat*.

13. *Archaismus*, est vetus & jam obſolutus loquendi mos; ut, *Valdè tonit*, pro *tonuit*. *Tam nulli consili*, pro *nullius consilii*. *Operam abuti*.

14. *Metaplasmus*, (five *transformatio*) est quævis mutatio vocis; ut, *Agreste* pro *agrestii*.

Cap. 12.

§. XXXVI Regula. De Figuris Constructionis. XXXVL

Figura Syntaxeos, five *Constructionis*, est quæ orationis structuram aliquo modo mutat. Ejus Species sunt, 2. Constructio.

1. *Appositio*, est duorum vel plurium Subjunctivorum ejusdem casûs conjunctio; ut, *Flumen Rhenus. Urbs Athena. M. T. C.*

Fit autem causa, {

1. Restringendæ generalitatis; ut, *Animal, equus*.
2. Tollendæ æquivocationis; ut, *Canis astrum*.
3. Ad proprietatem attribuendam; ut, *Erasmus vir exactissimo judicio*.

2. *Syllæpsis*,

2. *Syllepsis*, is the comprehending of the more unworthy gender or person under the more worthy; as,
I and my brother are white. Mars and Venus, both beeing naked, lie tied fast together in the snares.

3. *Prolepsis*, is a brief expression of things; as,
Two Eagles flew, this from the East, that from the West. The people live, some in want, some in delights. Bear yee one another's burdens. Let both of us take an equal share.

4. *Zeugma*, is the bringing back of one Verb or Adjective to divers Suppositives, to one expressly, and to the other by supplying it; as,

*John was a Fisher, and Peter.
 The husband and the wife is angrie.*

5. *Synbesis*, is a Speech which agreeth in sense, though not in words; as, *An armed nation fall on.*

Wee are both hurt. A brood goos. Two thousand slain.

6. *Antiptosis*, is the putting one case for another; as,
All kinde of elegancie. Are yee authors of it?

7. *Synecdoche*, is when that which belongs to a part is spoken of the whole; as,

A Blackmoor having white teeth. Wounded in the forehead. Flowers that have the names of Kings written on them.

8. *Ellipsis*, is the want of a word in a Speech; as,
I remember that I saw.

I (thought) presently with my self.

9. *Pleonasmus*, is the abounding of a word in a Speech beyond any necessitie of it; as,

I saw it with these eyes.

I slaughtered him with his own sword.

10. *Asyndeton*, is the want of Conjunctions in a Speech; as, *It shall bee don will thou, nill thou.*

Eat, drink, play.

11. *Polyssyndeton*, is an over-plus of Conjunctions in a Speech; as,

Sleep,

2. *Syllepsis*, est comprehensio indignioris generis vel personæ sub digniore ; ut,

Ego & frater sumus candidi.

Mars & Venus, impliciti laqueis, nudus uterque jacet.

3. *Prolepsis*, est pronuntiatio quædam rerum summaria ; ut, *Dua aquila volaverunt, hac ab Oriente, illa ab Occidente. Populus vivit, alii in penuriâ, alii in deliciis. Alter alterius onera portate.*

Cutemus æquam uterque partem.

4. *Zeugma*, est Verbi vel Adjectivi, ad diversa Supposita reductio, ad unum quidem expressè, ad alterum verò per supplementum ; ut,

Joannes fuit piscator & Petrus.

Maritus & uxor est irata.

5. *Synthesis*, est Oratio congrua sensu non voce ; ut, *Gens armati ruunt.*

Uterque lasi sumus. Anser fæta. Duo millia cæsi.

6. *Antiphrasis*, est positio casus pro casu ; ut, *Omne genus elegantia, i. e. omnis generis. Idne estis autores, i. e. ejus.*

7. *Synecdoche* est, cùm id quod partis est, attribuitur toti ; ut, *Æthiops albus dentes. Saucius frontem, vel fronte. Flores, inscripti nomina Regum.*

8. *Ellipsis*, est defectio vocis in Oratione ; ut,

*Memini * videre, i. e. * me.*

*Ego continuo * mecum, i. e. * cogitabam.*

9. *Pleonasmus*, est abundantia vocis in Oratione supra necessitatem ; ut,

Vidi his oculis.

Suo sibi hunc jugulo gladio.

10. *Asyndeton*, est Conjunctionum in Oratione defectus ; ut, *Velis, nolis, fiet.*

Ede, bibe, tude.

1. *Polyasyndeton* est Conjunctionum in Oratione redundantia ; as,

Somnus,

The Latine Grammar.

Sleep, and wine, and good chear, and whores, and baths, do weaken men's bodies and mindes.

12. *Anastrophe*, is when a Preposition is set before its case; as,

The command is *in thy power*.

13. *Synchysis*, is a confused order of words; as,

1 2 3 4 5
For it is bad for such as have blear'd-eyes and raw stom-
6 7
acks to play at ball.

14. *Hypallage*, is a placing of words contrariwise; as,

To commit the South-windes to the ships.

15. *Hellenismus*, is a going from the Latine use to imitate the Greeks; as,

Do not fight against two.

The rest which belong rather to the handfoming then the making of a Speech, are to bee sought for among the Rhetoricians.

Somnus, & vinum, & epulæ, & scorta, & balnea corpora atque animos enervant.

12. *Anastrophe*, est cum Præpositio suo casui postponitur; ut,

Te penès imperium.

13. *Synchysis*, est ordo Verborum confusus; ut,

¹ ⁷ ³ ² ⁴ ⁶ ⁵
Námque pilâ lippis inimicum & ludere crudis.

14. *Hypallage*, est mutua casuum permutatio;

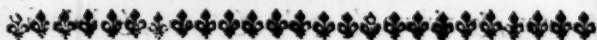
ut,

Dare classibus Austros.

15. *Hellenismus*, sive *Gracismus* est recessus à Latinâ consuetudine in imitationem Græcorum; ut,

Noli pugnare duobus, i. e. contra duos.

Cæteræ, quæ ad ornatum magis Orationis, quàm structuram ejus spectant, à Rhetoricis inquirendæ sunt.



LIB. IV.
OF PROSODIE.

IV.
Prosodie,

PROSODIE is the fourth part of Grammar, which teacheth *the right pronunciation of words.*

A *right pronunciation* is that which observeth in every word, the Spirit, Tone, and Time of the Syllables.

treateth of Prosodia there-
fore treateth

}	1. <i>Of the Spirits.</i>	}	Chap. I.
	2. <i>Of the Tones or Accents.</i>		
	3. <i>Of the Time or Quantitie of Syllables,</i> Chap. 2. 3.		

Chap. I.

Of Spirits and Tones, or Accents.

1. Spirits.

1. A Spirit is the manner of uttering a syllable with a breath; And it is

Sharp, with which a syllable is sharply uttered; as, *Hamus, homo.*

Gentle, or flat, with which a syllable is gently pronounced; as, *Amo, omnis.*

2. Tones.

2. A Tone, or Accent is the manner of pronouncing a syllable by lifting it up, or letting it down; as, *Prohibitatem, vituperare.*

There be three sorts of Accents,

{	1. An Acute, which sharpneth or lifteth up a syllable, & is marked with a thwart stroke ascending towards the right hand (').
	2. A Grave, which flatteth or letteth down a syllable, & is marked with a thwart stroke descending towards the right hand (' ').
	3. A Circumflex, which uttereth a syllable with a longer stay, lifting it up as the Acute, and letting it down as the Grave Accent, and it is marked with a figure made of an Acute and Grave (^).

There be three sorts of Accents,

{	1. An Acute, which sharpneth or lifteth up a syllable, & is marked with a thwart stroke ascending towards the right hand (').
	2. A Grave, which flatteth or letteth down a syllable, & is marked with a thwart stroke descending towards the right hand (' ').
	3. A Circumflex, which uttereth a syllable with a longer stay, lifting it up as the Acute, and letting it down as the Grave Accent, and it is marked with a figure made of an Acute and Grave (^).

There

LIB. IV.

DE PROSODIA.

PROSODIA est quarta pars Grammatices, quæ
restam vocum pronuntiationem tradit.

IV.
Prosodia,

Restâ pronuntiatio est, quæ observat in unaquâque
voce Spiritum, Tonum, & Tempus Syllabarum.

Dicendum { 1. Spiritibus, &
ergò in { 2. Tono, sive, Accentibus. } Cap. 1.
Prosodiâ de { 3. Tempore, sive, Quantitate Syllaba-
rum, Cap. 2. 3.

agit de

Cap. 1:

De Spiritibus & Tonis, sive Accentibus.

1. **S**piritus est ratio { Asper, quo asperè profertur 1. Spiriti-
proferendi syl- } syllaba; ut, *Hamus, homo.* bus.
labam cum spiritu; { Lenis, quo syllaba leniter pro-
fèrtque vel } fertur; ut, *Aino, omnis.*

2. **T**onus, sive **A**ccentus est ratio pronuntiandi syl- 2. Tonis.
labam, eandem elevando vel deprimendo; ut, *Pro-
bitum, vîmperâre.*

Est au-
tem Ac-
centus
triplex, { 1. **A**cutus, qui syllabam acuit, sive attollit,
& notatur virgulâ obliquâ in dextram
ascendente (').
2. **G**ravis, qui syllabam gravat sive depri-
mit, & notatur virgulâ obliquâ in dex-
tram descendente (').
3. **C**ircumflexus, qui syllabam longiori morâ
effert, pariter attollens cum Acuto, &
deprimens cum Gravi, & signatur notâ
ex Acuto & Gravi conflatâ (^).

T 2

TONOTUM

There bee three Rules of Tones or Accents.

1. A word of one syllable beeing short, or long by Position, hath an Acute Accent; as, *Mél, párs*; but if it bee long by Nature, it is Circumflected; as, *Spēs, flōs*.

2. In a word of two syllables, if the first bee long by Nature, and the later short, the first is Circumflected; as, *Lūna, mūsa*; but otherwise it hath an Acute; as, *Bónus, Déus, sōlers*.

3. A word of many syllables, having the last syllable save one long, when a long syllable followeth, it hath an acute in the last syllable save one; as, *Libértas*; but when a short syllable followeth, it hath a Circumflect in the last syllable save one; as, *Amáre, Románus*.

But if it have the last syllable save one short, the syllable before the last save one will have an acute accent; as, *Dóminus, Póntifex*.

The rest of the syllables in words of many syllables have grave accents (though not marked) as *Celebérrimus*.

1. *Obs.* The Compounds of *Facio* have an acute in the last syllable save one; as, *Benefácius, malefácius*.

2. *Obs.* The Compounds of *Fis, fit*, have an acute in the last syllable; as, *Calefit, benefít*.

3. *Obs.* Grammarians do often confound a Circumflect with an acute, becaus it is scarce differenced from it in pronuntiation.

There

Tonorum regulæ sunt tres.

1. Monosyllaba dictio, brevis, aut Positione longa, acuitur ; ut, *Mél, párs* ; at Naturâ longa Circumflexitur ; ut, *Spēs, flōs*.

2. In Dissyllabâ dictione, si prior longa fuerit naturâ, & posterior brevis, prior Circumflexitur ; ut, *Lûna, mûsa* ; in cæteris verò acuitur ; ut, *Bônus, Déus, sôlers*.

3. Dictio Polysyllaba, si penultimam longam habet, sequente longâ, penultimam acuit ; ut, *Libértas* ; sequente verò brevi, circumflexit penultimam ; ut, *Amâre, Românus*.

Sin brevem habet penultimam, acuit antepenultimam ; ut, *Dóminus, Póntifex*.

Cæteræ omnes syllabæ in Polysyllabis gravantur, etsi non notentur ; ut, *Celeberrimus*.

1. Obs. Composita à *Fácio* penultimam acuunt ; ut, *Benefácis, malefácis*.

2. Obs. Composita à *Fis, fit*, ultimam acuunt ; ut, *Calesit, malefit*.

3. Obs. Grammatici circumflexum cum acuto sæpe confundunt, quòd ab eo vix prolatione discernitur.

There bee five things which alter the Rules of the Accents.

I. *Difference*, for which sake

1. Som words are Circumflected in the last syllable, as the Ablative case of the first Declension *Musâ*, whereby it may differ from the Nominative, and Vocative *Musa*. Thus *ergô* for *caussâ* differ's from *ergô* the Conjunction.

2. Som have an acute accent in the last syllable, as many Adverbs, to difference them from other parts of Speech; viz. *Unâ*, *aliquâ*, *putâ*, *ponè*, &c. which in the end of a sentence have an acute accent, but in the beginning or middle thereof a grave accent.

3. Som have an acute in the syllable before the last syllable save one; as, *Déinde*, *déorsum*, *quínimo*, *intereâloci*, *nihilôminus*, *quâtenus* &c. when they are not several words; as are *Intérea loci*, *nihilo minus*, *pâte ténius*, &c.

N. B. An accent is now seldom marked, except for difference sake, for then it is noted not onely in the last syllable, but also in the last syllable save one, and in that which is before the last save one; as, *occido*, *occído*.

II. *Transposition*, or mis placing words. For when Prepositions bee set after their cases, they have a grave accent, as, *Transstra pèr* & *remos*. *Te penès imperium*.

III. *Attraction*, when the last syllable of the word going before doth draw unto it the accent of the Inclivative Conjunction; as, *Luminâque laurûsque Dei*.

But when there is an apparent Composition, the accent is not altered; as, *itaque*, *indique*, *hiccine*.

IV. *Concission*, when words are cut off by Syncope, or Apocope, for then they keep the accent of the whole word; as, *Virgili* for *Virgilii*. *Arpinâs* for *Arpinâtis*. So also *hâc*, *illûc*, for *hâcce*, *illûcce*; and the Compounds of *dic*, *duc*, *fac*; as, *Benedic*, *redûc*, *benefâc*.

V. *The*

Quinque sunt quæ Tonorum regulas perturbant, five Tonos mutant.

I. *Differentia*, cujus causâ

1. Quædam dictiones Circumflectuntur in ultima; ut, Ablativus primæ Declinationis *Musæ*, quo differat à Nominativo & Vocativo *Musæ*,. Sic ergò pro causâ differt ab ergò Conjunctione.

2. Quædam acuuntur, ut Adverbia plurima, nè videantur esse aliæ partes Orationis; viz. *Unà, ali-quò, putà, ponè, &c.* quæ in fine sententiarum acuuntur, in consequentia verò gravantur.

3. Quædam Antepenultimam suspendunt; ut, *Déinde, deorsum, quínimo, intereáloci, nihilóminus, quâ-tenus, &c.* cum non sunt orationes diversæ; ut sunt, *Interea loci, nihilo minus, pube ténus, &c.*

N. B. Accentûs nota nusquam ferè jam apponitur, nisi differentię causâ, tunc enim signatur non tantum in ultima, sed etiam in penultima, & antepenultimâ; ut, *occido, occido.*

II. *Transpositio*. Præpositiones enim postpositæ suis casibus gravantur; ut, *Transstraper & remos. Te penès imperium.*

III. *Attractio*, cum scil. ultima syllaba præcedentis dictionis attrahit sibi Accentum Encliticæ Conjunctionis; ut, *Luminâque lawisq; Dei.*

I. *Obs.* ubi verò manifesta est Compositio, non variatur tonus; ut, *itaque, undique, hiccine.*

IV. *Concisio*, cum dictiones per Syncopen aut Apocopen castrantur; tunc enim tonum retinent integræ dictionis; ut, *Virgili pro Virgilii. Arpinâs pro Arpinâtis.* Sic hûc, illûc, pro hûcce, illûcce; & Composita à *Dic, duc, fac*; ut, *Benedic, redûc, benefac.*

V. *The Idiome*, or the proprietic of the language. For Greek words, if they com whole to the Latines, (*i. e.* if they bee expressed with the very same letters) they keep their own accent ; as, *Metamorphosis*, *Orthographia*.

But if they becom altogether Latine, they keep the Latine accent ; as, *Georgica*, *Philosophia*, *idolum*.

N. B. If the proper accent of a strange word bee unknown, it will bee most safe to pronounce it according to the Latine accent.

2. Those syllables which are common are pronounced short in Prose, *i. e.* where a mute and a liquid do follow a short vowel ; as, *Celebris*, *Cathedra* ; otherwise they are pronounced long ; as, *Unius*, *illius*, *ubique*.

3. An Interrogation doth alter the accent ; as, *Siccine ais Parmenò ?*

Chap. 2.

Of the Quantitie of the First and Middle Syllables.

3. Time, or
Quantitie.

Time, or Quantitie, is the measure of pronouncing a Syllable, or the space of tuning a Vowel, whereby wee measure how long it is in pronouncing.

According to **S** Short, which hath one time, or which is quickly pronounced ; as, *Lēgērē*, whose time is thus marked (*˘*).
Time, or Quantitie, a **S** Long, which hath two times, or which hath the space of two short times ; as, *Āndirēt*, whose long time is thus marked (*-*).
Syllable is said to bee

According

V. *Idioma*, sive linguæ proprietas.

Diſtiones enim Græcæ, ſi integræ ad Latinos veniant, (i. e. ſi iisdem planè literis proferantur) ſervant tonum ſuum; ut, *Metamórphoſis*, *Orthographía*.

Sin prorsus Latinæ ſiunt, Latinum quoque tonum ſervant; ut, *Geórgica*, *Philofóphia*, *idólum*.

N. B. 1. Si ignoretur proprius peregrinæ vocis tonus, tutiſſimum fuerit juxta Latinum accentum illam enuntiare.

2. Syllabæ communes (i. e. ubi muta cum liquida ſequitur vocalem brevem) in proſa oratione corripuntur; *Célebris*, *Cáthredra*; in aliis verò diſtinctionibus producuntur; ut, *Unius*, *illius*, *ubique*.

3. Interrogatio etiam tonum transfert; ut, *Sicine aís Parmenó?*

Cap. 2.

De Tempore, ſive Quantitate Primarum & Mediarum Syllabarum.

TEmpus, ſive Quantitas, eſt ſyllabæ pronuntiandæ 3. De Tem-
meſura, ſive ſpatium modulandæ vocalis, quo pore, ſive
ſcil. moram ejus in pronuntiando metimur. Quantitate.

Secundùm **B**revis, quæ unum habet tempus, ſive
quæ celeriter pronuntiatur, ut, *Lēgērē*,
Tempus, cuius tempus breve ſic notatur (˘).
ſive Quan- **L**onga, quæ duo tempora habet, ſive
titatem, Syl- quæ ſpatium duarum brevium exigit;
laba dicitur ut, *Aūdīrēnt*, cuius tempus longum
ſic notatur (-).

Secun-

According to the order which they have in words, Syllables are nam'd

<p>First, Middle, Last,</p>	<p>which have the</p>	<p>first</p>	<p>place in a word.</p>
		<p>middle</p>	
		<p>last</p>	

The quantitie of the first syllables is known eight manner of waies : by

- I. Position.
- II. A Vowel before a vowel.
- III. A Diphthong.
- IV. Derivation.
- V. Composition.
- VI. Preposition.
- VII. Rule.
- VIII. Example, or Autoritie.

But the Middle Syllables have besides these a particular way of beeing known, which you may see IX.

I. According to Position,

1. A Vowel set before two Consonants, or a double consonant in the same word, is long ; as, *Vēnus, āxis, patrīzo*. But the Compounds of *jugum* make *i* short ; as, *Bijugus*.

2. And if a Consonant doth close the foregoing word, and the word following beginneth with a consonant, the vowel foregoing shall bee long ; as, *Majōr sūm quān cui pōssūt fōrtuna nocere*.

3. A short vowel in the end of a word, when the word following beginneth with two consonants, sometimes, but seldom is made long ; as, *Occultā spolia, & plures de pace triumphos*.

4. A short vowel before a mute, with a liquid following is common, *i. e.* long or short ; as, *Et primò volūcri similis, mox vera volūcris*.

But a long vowel is not changed ; as, *Arātrum, Simulācrum*.

II. A Vowel before another in the same word is short ; as, *Dēus, nīhil*.

But

Secundum ordinem suum quæ habent in dictionibus syllabæ dicuntur { Prima, } { primum } locum in
 { Media, } { medium } dictione
 { Ultima, } { ultimū } quavis occupant.

I. Positione.

II. Vocali ante vocalem.

III. Diphthongo.

IV. Derivatione.

V. Compositione.

VI. Propositione.

VII. Regulâ.

VIII. Exemple, seu Autoritate.

Primarum syllabarum quantitas octo modis cognoscuntur, viz.

I.
Primarum.

Mediarum verò peculiaris est cognoscendi modus quem videre licet IX.

I. Juxta Positionem.

1. Vocalis ante duas consonantes, aut duplicem in eadem dictione longa est; ut, *Vēntus, āxis, patri-*
zo. Sed Composita à jugum corripunt; ut, *Bijugum.*

2. Quòd si consonans priorem dictionem claudat, sequente item à consonante inchoante, vocalis præcedens longa erit; ut,

Majōr sum quā cui possit fortuna nocere.

3. Vocalis brevis in fine dictionis, sequente à duabus consonantibus inchoante, interdum, sed rariùs producit; ut,

Occulta spolia, & plures de pace triumphos.

4. Vocalis brevis ante mutam sequente liquida, communis redditur; ut,

Et primò volūcri similis, mox vera volūcris.

Longa verò vocalis non mutatur; ut, *Arātrum, simulacrum.*

II. Vocalis ante alteram in eadem dictione brevis est; ut, *Dēus, nihil.*

Sed

The Latine Grammar.

But 1. Genitive cases in *ius*, make the last syllable save one common; as, *Unius, illius*. Except that *i* in *alterius* is alwaies short, and in *alius* alwaies long.

2. In the fifth Declension *e* berwixt a double *i* is long; as, *Faciei*.

3. *Fi* in *Fio* is every where long, but where *e* and *r* follow it both together; as,

Omnia jam fient, fieri quæ posse negabas.

4. *Obe* hath the first syllable doubtful; *ēheu* alwaies long.

5. A Vowel before another in Greek words is long; as, *Dicite Pierides*; and in Possessives; as, *Æneia nutrix*.

But the quantitie of Greek syllables is better to bee found from the Greeks.

6. In forrain words the quantitie is doubtful; as, *Michaël, Abraham*.

III. Every Diphthong is long; as, *Æurum, Musæ*. And syllables that are Contracted; as, *Cōgo, nūl*.

But *præ* before a vowel is often made short; as, *Ver præit astatem*; and but seldom long; as, *Domino præiret Arion*. *a* in *Maoris* is doubtful.

IV. Derivatives have the same quantitie that their Primitives have; as, *amator* of *amo*. Yet there bee som excepted

1. Which are derived from them that bee short, and are long; viz.

<i>Vox, vōcis,</i>	} of {	<i>Vōco.</i>	} of {	<i>Fucundus,</i>	} of {	<i>Fūvo.</i>
<i>Lex, lēgis,</i>		<i>Lēgo.</i>		<i>Vōmer,</i>		<i>Vōmo.</i>
<i>Rex, rēgis,</i>		<i>Rēgo.</i>		<i>Lāterna,</i>		<i>Lāteo.</i>
<i>Sēdes.</i>		<i>Sēdeo.</i>		<i>Tegula,</i>		<i>Tēgo.</i>
<i>Fūnior,</i>		<i>Fūvenis.</i>		<i>Mācero,</i>		<i>Mācer.</i>
<i>Hūmanus,</i>		<i>Hōmo.</i>		<i>Pēnuria,</i>		<i>Pēnus.</i>

Sed 1: Genitivi in *ius*, penultimam habent communem; ut, *Unius, illius*. Licet *i* in *alterius* semper sit brevis, in *alius* semper longa.

2. In quinta declinatione *e* inter geminum *i* longa fit; ut, *Faciēi*.

3. *Fi* in *Fio* ubique longa est, nisi sequatur *e* & *r* simul; ut,

Omnia jam fient, fieri quæ posse negabas.

4. *Ohe* primam syllabam ancipitem habet; *ēheu* semper longam.

5. Vocalis ante alterum in Græcis dictionibus subinde longa fit; ut, *Dicite Pterides*; & in Possessivis; ut, *Æneia nux*.

Sed Græcarum quantitas à Græcis rectius addiscenda est.

6. In peregrinis quantitas est ambigua; ut, *Michaël, Abraham*.

III. Omnis *Diphthongus* longa est; ut, *Æurum, Musa*. Syllabæ item *Contractæ*; ut, *Cōgo, nīl*.

Sed *præ* ante vocalem sæpius corripitur; ut, *Ver præit æstatem*; rarius producitur; ut, *Domino præiret Arion*. & in *Matris* est anceps.

IV. *Derivata* eandem cum *Primitivis* quantitatem fortiuntur; ut, *amator* primâ brevi ab *amo*. Excipiuntur tamen quædam

1. *Deducta* à brevibus, quæ producuntur, viz.

<i>Vox, vōcīs,</i>	}	<i>Vōco.</i>	}	<i>ſucundus,</i>	}	<i>ſūvo.</i>
<i>Lex, lēgis,</i>		<i>Lēgo.</i>		<i>Vōmer,</i>		<i>Vōmo.</i>
<i>Rex, rēgis,</i>		<i>Rēgo.</i>		<i>Lāterna,</i>		<i>Lāteo.</i>
<i>Sēdes,</i>		<i>Sēdeo.</i>		<i>Tēgula,</i>		<i>Tēgo.</i>
<i>ſūnior,</i>		<i>ſūvenis.</i>		<i>Mācero,</i>		<i>Mācer.</i>
<i>ſūmanus,</i>		<i>Hōmo.</i>		<i>Pēnuria,</i>		<i>Pēnus.</i>

2. *Deducta*

2. Which are derived of them that are long, and are short, viz.

Dux, dūcis,	} of	Dūco.	Frāgor,	} of	Frān-
Dīcax,		Dīco.	Frāgīlis		go.
Fīdes,		Fīo.	Nōto, tā,		Nōtu.
ārena, ārista,		āreo.	Nāto, tā,		Nātu.
Pōsui,		Pōno.	Dīsertus,		Dīffero.
Gēnuī,		Gīgno.	Sōpor.		Sōpro.

And som others of both sorts.

V. Compound words have the quantitie of the Simple; as, Pōtens, impōtens. Sōlor, consōlor.

1. Except	Innūba,	} of Nūbo.	Cognitum,	} of Nōtum.
	Pronūba.		Agnitum,	
	Dejēro,	} of jūro.	Restitutus,	} of Stātutus.
	Pejēro,		Perstitutus,	

2. Also the Compounds of Dīco, that end in dīcus; as, Maledīcus.

3. Ambītus the Noun hath *i* short, Ambītus the Participle hath *i* long.

4. Idem in the Masculine gender hath *i* long, in the Neuter *i* short.

5. In words that are Compounded

1. With Verbs, the former part ending in *e* is short; as, Valēdīco.

2. With Particles, *bi*, *tri*, *tre*, *du*, the same are short; as, Bīceps, trīceps, trēcenti, dūcenti.

3. With Nouns, the former part ending in *i*, *y*, *u*, is short; as, Tardigrātus, Polydorus, cornūpetra. Except quīvis and som others.

6. These words make long the last syllable of their simples, which is common, viz. ubīque, ubīlibet, ibīdem, quāndōque, quāndōcūque, but do in quāndōquīdem is short.

VI. Of the Prepositions,

1. A, de, ē, se, pra, and those that end in *a*, are long, except a vowel follow; as, Unda dehīscens.

2. Pro the Latine syllable is long, except in these words,

2. Deducta à longis, quæ corripuntur, viz.

Dux, dūcī,	}	Dūco.	}	Frāgor,	}	Frā-
Dīcax,		Dīco.		Frāgilis,		go.
Fīdes,		Fīo.		Nōtos as,		Nōtu.
ārena, ārista,		āreo.		Nāto, as,		Nātu.
Pōsui,		Pōno.		Dīseruus,		Dīssers.
Gēnuī,		Gīgno.		Sōpor,		Sōpio.

Atque alia nonnulla utriusque generis.

V. Composita simplicium quantitatem sequuntur; ut, Pōtens, impōtens. Sōlor, consōlor.

I. Exci- piuntur tamen	}	Innūba,	}	à Nūbo.	Cognitum,	}	à Nōtum.		
		Pronūba,			Agnitum,				
		Dejēro,			Perstiturus,			}	à Statu- rus.
		Pejēro,			Resisturus,				

. Item Composita à Dīco in dīcus; ut, Male-
dīcus.

*3. Ambītus Nomen corripitur, ambītus Participium producitur.

4. Idem Masculinum producit i, Neutrum verò corripit.

5. In Compositis

1. Cum Verbis, prior pars vocis in e definens corripitur; ut, Valēdīeo.

2. Cum particulis, bi, tri, tre, du, eadem corripuntur; ut, Bīceps, trīceps, trēcenti, dūcenti.

3. Cum Nominibus, prior pars exiens in i, y, u, corripitur; ut, Tardigradus, Polydorus, cornūpeta, excipe quīvis & pauca alia.

6. Hæ voces ultimam syllabam simplicium, quæ communis est, producant, viz. Ubique, ubilibet, ibidem, quandōque, quandōcūq, sed do in quandōquidē corripitur.

VI. Ex Præpositionibus.

1. A, de, è, se, præ, & quæ in a definunt, ubique producantur, nisi vocali sequente; ut, Unda dēhīscens.

2. Pro Latina longa est, præterquam in istis,
Pro-

words, *Pröcella*, *pröfugus*, *prötervus*, *prönepas*, *pröneptia*, *pröfanus*, *pröfiteor*, *pröfundus*, *pröfiscor*, *pröfari*, *pröpero*, *pröfugio*, *pröfectö*, *pröpello*, *pröpulso*. But

1. { *Propago*, *gas*,
and
Propago-ginis, } have *pro* doubtful.
2. *Pro* the Greek syllable is short ; as, *Pröpheta*, *prölogus*, *Prömetheus*, &c: but in *propino* it is doubtful.
3. *Di* is long, except in *Dürimo*, and *düsertus*.
4. The rest of the Prepositions bee short, if position do not hinder ; for *re* in *refert* it is good, cometh of *res*, and is therefore long.

VII. There bee } 1. Of Preterperfect tenses and
two Rules, } Supines of two syllables.
 } 2. Of Preterperfect tenses that
 } double the first syllable.

1. Every preterperfect tens & supine of two syllables hath the first syllable long; as, *Lēgi*, *ēmi*, *mötum*, *lätum*.
Except

1. Six preterperfect tenses ; *Fīdi*, *bībi*, *dēdi*, *scīdi*, *tūli*, *stēti*.
2. Nine supines ; *Dätum*, *sätum*, *cītum*, (of *cico*) *ītum*, *litum*, *quītum*, *sītum*, *rätum*, *tūtum*.
2. Preterperfect tenses that double the first syllable of their Present tens, have* their first syllable short ; as, *Pēpendi*, *mömmordi*, *spöpon-di*.

VIII. The quantitie of such syllables as com not under the rules aforegoing is to bee known by the *Example* and *Autoritie* of Poëts ; and this is the most certain and most general way,

1. Becaus every rule resteth upon the autoritie of the Antients.
2. Becaus the quantitie of many syllables is not known but by examples.
1. These words have their first syllable common,

viz.

Pröcella, *pröfugus*, *prötervus*, *prönepos*, *pröneptis*,
pröfamus, *pröfiteor*, *pröfundus*, *pröfificor*, *pröfari*, *pröpero*,
pröfugio, *pröfecto*, *pröpello*, *pröpulso*. Sed

1. { *Propago*, *gas*,
 &
Propago, *gñis*, } *pro* habent *ancipitem*.

2. *Pro Græca* corripitur; ut, *Pröpheta*, *prölogus*,
Prömetheus, &c. Sed in *propino* *anceps* est.

3. *Di* producitur, nisi in *dirimo*, & *disertus*.

4. Reliquæ *Præpositiones*, si *positio finat*, corripuntur; nam *re* in *refert pro* *utile est*, à nomine *res* est, ideóque producitur.

VII. *Regula* { 1. De *Præteritis* & *Supinis* dissyllabis.
 est duplex, { 2. De *primam Præteriti* geminantibus.

1. Omne *Præteritum* & *Supinum* dissyllabum *primam* habet *longam*; ut, *Lēgi*, *ēmi*, *mōtum*, *lātum*.

Excipiuntur tamen,

1. Sex *Præterita*, *Fīdi*, *bībi*, *dēdi*, *scīdi*, *tūli*,
stēti.

2. Novem *supina*, *Dātum*, *sātum*, *cītum* (à *cīeo*)
ītum, *lītum*, *quītum*, *sītum*, *rātum*, *rūtum*.

2. *Primam Præteriti* *geminantia*, *primam* itidem *brevem* habent; ut, *Pēpendi*, *mōmordi*, *spōpondi*.

VIII. *Quarum syllabarum* *quantitas* sub *prædictas* *rationes* non cadit, à *Poëtarum* usu, *Exemplo*, atque *Autoritate* petenda est; atque hæc ratio est omnium *certissima* & *generalissima*,

1. Quia *regula* *omnis* *autoritate* *veterum* *nittitur*.

2. Quia *multarum* *syllabarum* *modulus* non nisi *exemplo* *cognoscitur*.

1. Hæc *primam* *syllabam* habent *communem*;

viz. Britannus, Bithynus, Cacus, Cosyra, Crathys, Creticus, Curetes, Fidene, Gradivus, Hinulus, Hymen, Italus, liquor, liquidus, Lycas, Orion, Pachinus, palatium, Pelion, Pyrene, rudo, Sychaus, Sycanius, &c.

2. And these their middle; Batavus, connubium, ficedula, malea, Pharsalia, Sidenius, &c.

3.
Middle.

IX. Middle syllables are partly known the same way that the first, and partly 1. by the increase of the Genitive case, and 2. the Analogie of the Conjugation.

1. The increase of the Genitive case is, when a Noun hath more syllables in the Genitive case singular, then it had in the Nominative, and according to it, the last syllable save one of Nouns increasing

1. Sharp, is long.

2. Flat, is short.

2. The Analogie of Conjugation is, when Verbs follow their common Rule of Conjugating, and according to this

a	{ the character or note of the	First	{ Conjugation is	long.
e		Second		long.
e		Third		short.
i		Fourth		long.

But in Do and its Compounds, when they are of this Conjugation, a is short; as in *dāmus circumdāmus, dābis circumdābis, dāre circumdāre*.

The Syllables *rimus* and *ritis* in the Preterperfect tense of the Subjunctive mood are short; as, *Amaverimus, amaveritis*; but long in the Future tense; as, *Amaverimus, amaveritis*.

Latine Adjectives in *inus* make (i) long; as, *Cladesinus, mediastinus*. Except these following, *Diutinus, crastinus, pristinus, perendinus, hornotinus, serotinus, Oleaginus, saginus, cedrinus, carbasinus*, and others that signifie matter, or that are com of the names of metals, and end in *inus*; as, *Chrysalinus, myrrhinus*, &c. which are derived of Greek Nouns.

viz. *Britannus, Bithynus, Cacus, Cosyra, Crathys, Creticus, Curetes, Fidenæ, Gradivus, Hinulus, Hymen, Italus, liquor, liquidus, Lycas, Orion, Pachinus, palatium, Pelion, Pyrene, rudo, Sychæus, Sycanius, cum quibusdam aliis.*

3. Hæc verò mediam; *Batavus, connubium, Ficedula, malea, Pharsalia, Sidonius, &c.*

IX. *Mediæ syllabæ* partim eâdem ratione quâ primæ, partim etiam 1. ex incrementis Genitivi, atque 2. Conjugationis Analogiâ cognosci possunt.

3.
Mediarum:

1. *Incrementum Genitivi* est quando Nomen plures habet syllabas in Genitivo singulari, quàm in Nominativo; juxta hoc, penultima Nominum crescentium

1. Acutè, longa est.

2. Graviter, brevis est.

2. *Analogia Conjugationis* est quando verba sequuntur communem regulam conjugandi; & juxta hanc,

a	} index	Primæ	} Conjugationis	longa	} est.
e		Secundæ		longa	
e		Tertiæ		brevis	
i		Quartæ		longa	

Sed in *Do* & ejus Compositis, quando primæ sunt Conjugationis, *a* brevis est; ut, *Dāmus, circundāmus, dābis circundābis, dāre circundāre.*

Syllabæ *rimus* & *ritis* in Præterito modi Subjunctivi sunt breves; ut, *Amaverimus, amaveritis*; in Futuro verò longæ; ut, *Amaverimus, amaveritis.*

Adjectiva in *inus* Latina penultimam producant; ut, *Clandestinus, mediastinus, &c.* Præter hæc sequentia, *diutinus, crastinus, pristinus, perendinus, hornotinus, ferotinus, oleaginus, faginus, cedrinus, carbasinus, &c.* reliqua materialia, sive à metallorum nominibus formata in *inus*; ut, *Chrysellinus, myrrhinus, &c.* à Græcis deducta.

Chap. 3.

Of the Quantitie of the last Syllables.

And last
Syllables.

The last Syllables are reckoned according to the order of the letters with which words do end; thus,

A are long ; as, *Amā*, *contrā*, *ergā*.

Except,

1. *Putā*, *itā*, *quā*, *ejā*.

2. Likewise all cases in *a*, besides Vocatives in *a*, of Greek Nouns in *as* ; as, *ō Æneā*, and the Ablative case of the first Declension ; as, *Musā*.

3. Numerals in *ginta*, which have *a* common ; as, *Triginta*, *quadráginta*.

E are short as, *āb*.

Except,

1. Hebrew words ; as, *Jacōb*.

C are long ; as, *āc*, *sīc*, and *hīc* the Adverb.

Except,

1. *Lāc*, *nēc*, *donēc*, which are short.

2. *Fac*, and the Pronoun *hic* are common. as also its Neuter Gender *hoc*, so that it be not of the Ablative case.

D are short ; as, *ād*.

1. Except Hebrew words ; as, *David*.

E are short ; as, *Marē*, *penē*, *legē*, *scribē*.

Except,

1. Nouns of the Fifth Declension in *e* ; as, *Fidē*, *diē*, *rē*, with the Adverbs that com of them ; as, *Hodiē*, *quarē*.

2. *Famē*, now of the Third Declension short, was heretofore of the Fifth long.

3. The

Words that end in

Chap. 3.

De Ultimarum Syllabarum Quantitate.

Ultimæ syllabæ numerantur juxta ordinem literarum finalium; sic,

3.
Et ultimarum syllabarum.

Aproducuntur; ut, *amā, contrā, ergā.*

Excipe,

1. *Putā, itā, quā, ejā.*

2. Item omnes casus in *a*, præter Vocativos in *a*, à Græcis in *as*, ut, *ô Æneā*, & Ablativum primæ declinationis; ut, *Musā.*

3. Numeralia in *ginta*, quæ *a* habent communem; ut, *Triginta, quadraginta.*

B brevia sunt; ut, *ab.*

Excipe,

1. Hebræa; ut, *Jacōb.*

Cproducuntur; ut, *ac, sic, & hic* Adverbium.

Excipe,

1. *Lāc, nēc, donēc*, quæ contrahuntur.

2. *Fac*, & Pronomen *hic* sunt communia, item & ejus Neutrum *hoc*, modò non sit Ablativi casus.

D brevia sunt; ut, *ad.*

1. Excipe Hebræa; ut, *David.*

E brevia sunt; ut, *Marē, penē, legē, scribē.*

Excipe,

1. Voces Quintæ Inflectionis in *e*; ut, *Fidē, diē, rē*, cum Adverbiis inde enatis; ut, *Ho-diē, quare.*

2. *Famē*, quæ nunc Tertiæ Inflectionis brevis, olim quintæ longa fuit.

The Latine Grammar.

Words that end in

3. The second person singular of the Imperative mood, of the Active voice, of the second Conjugation ; as, *Docē, movē, manē*.

But *e* in *Cave, vide, salve, and vale* is sometimes short.

4. Monosyllables in *e* ; as, *Mē, tē, cē*, except *quē, nē, tē*, the Inclivative Conjunctions.

5. Adverbs in *e* derived of Adjectives ; as, *Doctē, valdē, and fermē, ferē* : yet *benē* and *malē* are short.

6. Words that in Greek are writ with an *Eta*, or *e* long, as, *Anchisē, cetē, tempē*.

Iare long ; as, *Dominī, amarī*.

Except,

1. *Mibi, tibi, sibi, ubi, ibi, uti* for *ut*, and *cui* a word of two syllables, which are common.

2. *Nisī*, and *quasī* which are short, as are also the Vocative cases of Greek Nouns, whose Genitive singular endeth in *es* ; as, *Pallidī, Daphnī*.

L are short ; as, *Animāl, mēl*.

Except

1. *Sāl* and *Sōl*.

2. Hebrew words which are writ in Greek with a long vowel ; as, *Michaēl*.

N are long ; as, *Pæān, Hymēn, nōn*.

Except

1. *Forsān, forsitān, ān, tamēn, attamēn, veruntamēn*.

2. Words cut off by Apocope ; as, *Mēn', vidēn'*.

3. *In* with its Compounds ; as, *Exīn, subīn, &c*.

4. Nouns ending in *en*, whose Genitive case singular hath *in* is short ; as, *Carmēn, pestēn, tibicēn*.

5. Greek

3. Secundæ personæ singulares Imperativorum Activorum secundæ Conjugationis; ut, *Docē, movē, manē.*

Sed *e* in *Cave, vide, salve, & vale* quandoque etiam corripitur.

4. Monosyllaba in *e*; ut, *mē, tē, cē*, præter *quē, nē, vē*, Encliticas Conjunctiones.

5. Adverbia in *e*, ab Adjectivis deducta; ut, *doctē, valdē*, item *fermē, & ferē*. *Benē* tamen & *malē* corripuntur.

6. Quæ à Græcis per *n* scribuntur; ut, *Anchisē, cetē, tempē.*

I longa sunt; ut, *Dominī, amari.*

Excipe

1. *Mihi, tibi, sibi, ubi, ibi*, uti pro *ut*, & cui dissyllabum, quæ sunt communia.

2. *Nisī, & quasī* quæ corripuntur, ut & Dativi & Vocativi Græcorum, quorum Genitivus in *os* breve exit; ut, *Palladī, Daphnī.*

L corripuntur; ut, *Animāl, mēl.*

Excipe

1. *Sāl, & Sōl.*

2. Hebræa, quæ Græcè scribuntur per vocalem longam; ut, *Michaēl.*

N producuntur; ut, *Paān, Hymēn, nōn.*

Excipe

1. *Forsān, forsitān, ān, tamēn, attamēn, veruntamēn.*

2. Voces per Apocopen castratas; ut, *Mén', vidén'.*

3. In cum Compositis; ut, *Exīn, subīn, &c.*

4. Nomina in *en*, quorum Genitivus in *ē* correptum habet; ut, *Carmēn, pestēn, tibicēn.*

The Latine Grammar.

5. Greek Nouns in *on* by little *o*; as, *Ilion*, *Pelion*, *Caucasōn*.

6. Greek Nouns in *in*, *yn*, and *an*, whose Nominative case is short; as, *Alexin*, *Ityn*, *Maiān*.

O are common; as, *Amo*, *virgo*, *porrō*, *docendo*.

Except

1. Oblique cases in *o*, which are alwaies made long; as, *Dominō*, *servō*.

2. Adverbs derived of Adjectives; as, *Tantō*, *falsō*, &c. But *Sedulō*, *crebrō*, and *mutuō* are common, rather to bee made long.

3. Monosyllables in *o* are long; as, *dō*, *stō*, and *ergō* for *causā*.

4. *Ambo*, *duo*, *ego*, *homo*, *citō*, *modō* with its compounds are seldom read long.

5. Greek words in *o* are long; as, *Sappho*, unless they com of Nominative cases in *ov* from which (*n*) is taken away; as, *Leo*, *Plato*, which for the most part are short.

R are short; as, *Casār*, *torcālār*, *pēr*, *diciēr*.

Except

1. *Fār*, *lār*, *nār*, *vēr*, *fūr*, *cūr*, and *pār* with its compounds. *Cor* is once read long in Ovid. *Molle meum leuibus cōr est violabile telus*.

2. Greek words that end in *er* with *e* long; as, *Aēr*, *cratēr*, except *patēr*, *matēr*.

S have terminations answerable to the number of vowels.

as are long; as, *Amās*, *musās*.

Except

1. Greek nouns, whose Genitive case singular endeth in *dos*; as, *Arcās*, *Pallās*.

2. The Accusatives plural of Nouns encreasing; as, *Heroās*, *Phyllidās*.

es are long; as, *Anchisēs*, *sedēs*, *docēs*.

Except

Words that end in

Finite in

5. Græca in *on* per *o* parvum; ut, *Ilion*, *Pelion*, *Caucasion*.

6. Græca in *in*, *yn*, & *an*, quorum Nominativus est brevis; ut, *Alexin*, *Ityn*, *Maiān*.

O Communia sunt; ut, *Amo*, *virgo*, *porro*, *docendo*.
Excipe,

1. Obliquos in *o*, qui semper producuntur; ut, *Dominō*, *servō*.

2. Adverbia ab Adjectivis deducta; ut, *Tantō*, *falsō*, &c. Sed *sedulō*, *crebrō*, *mutuō*, sunt communia, rutiùs producenda.

3. Monosyllaba in *o* producuntur; ut, *dō*, *stō*, item *ergō* pro *causā*.

4. *Ambo*, *duo*, *ego*, *homo*, *cito*, *modo* cum compositis vix leguntur producta.

5. Græca per *ω* producuntur; ut, *Sapphō*, nisi descendant à Nominativis in *ωv* quibus admittitur; ut, *Leo*, *Plato*, quæ plerunque corripuntur.

R Corripuntur; ut, *Cæsār*, *torculār*, *pēr*, *diciēr*.
Excipe,

1. *Fār*, *lār*, *nār*, *vēr*, *fur*, *cūr*, & *pār* cum compositis. *Cor* semel apud Ovidium producitur. *Molle meum levibus cor est violabile telis*.

2. Græca in *ug* er; ut, *Aēr*, *cratēr*, excipe *patēr* & *matēr*.

S pares cum numero vocalium terminationes habent.

as producuntur; ut, *Amās*, *musās*.

Excipe,

1. Græca, quorum Genitivus singularis in *dos* exit; ut, *Arcās*, *Pallās*.

2. Accusativos plurales nominum crescentium; ut, *Heroās*, *Phyllidās*.

es longa sunt; ut, *Anchisēs*, *sedēs*, *docēs*.

Excipe,

Except

1. Nouns in *es* of the Third Declension that encrease short; as, *Milēs, divēs*. But of these, *Cerēs, abiēs, ariēs, pariēs*, and *pēs*, with its Compounds are long.

2. *Es* of *sum*, with its Compounds, *potēs, adēs, pradēs, obēs*, and *penēs* the Preposition are short.

3. Neuters singular, and Nominatives plural of Greek Nouns that end in *es* not *eis*; as, *Cacoëthēs, Cyclopēs*.

are short; as, *Parīs, panīs, tristīs*,

Except

1. Oblique cases plural in *is*; as *Musīs, dominīs*, and *quēīs* for *quibus*.

2. Words that make long the last syllable save one of the Genitive case increasing; as, *Samnīs, nitīs*.

3. Which are made in *is* of the Diphthong *ei*; as, *Omnīs, Simoīs*.

4. All Monosyllables; as, *Vīs, līs*, besides *īs, bīs*, and *quīs*.

5. *Vellīs* with its Compounds, *malīs, nolīs*, and *ausīs, faxīs*.

6. The second persons singular of the Indicative mood present tense of the fourth Conjugation; as, *Audīs, dormīs*.

7. The second persons of the Future tense of the Subjunctive mood, which are common; as, *dederīs, amaverīs*.

are long; as *Herōs, honōs, dominōs*.

Except

1. *Compōs, impōs*, and *ōs offīs*.

2. Greek Nouns with little *o*; as, *Delōs, Palladōs*.

are short; as, *Famulūs, tempūs*.

Except

Excipe

1. Nomina in *es* tertiæ Declinationis graviter crescentia ; ut, *milēs, divēs*. Sed ex his, *Cerēs, abiēs, ariēs, pariēs*. & *pēs* cum Compositis longa sunt.

2. *Es* quoque à *sum* unà cum Compositis, *potēs, adēs, prodēs, obēs*. & *penēs* Præpositio corripuntur.

3. Item Neutra singularia : & Nominativi plurales Græcorum in *es* breve non *ei* deficientia ; ut, *Cacoëthēs, Cyclopēs*.

is breviter sunt ; ut, *Parīs, panīs, tristīs*.

Excipe

1. Obliquos Plurales in *is*, ut, *Musī, dominīs, & quēis* pro quibus.

2. Producentia penultimam Genitivi crescentis ; ut, *Samnīs, nitīs*.

3. Quæ fiunt in *is* ab *ei* Diphthongo ; ut, *Omnīs, Simōis*.

4. Monosyllaba omnia ; ut, *Vīs, līs*, præter *īs, bīs, & quīs*.

5. *Velis*, cum Compositis, *malīs, nolīs*, item *ausīs, faxīs*.

6. Secundas personas singulares Indicativi præsentis quartæ Conjugationis ; ut, *Audīs, dormīs*.

7. Secundas personas Futuri Subjunctivi, quæ sunt communes ; ut, *dederīs, amaverīs*.

os producuntur ; ut, *Herōs, honōs, dominōs*.

Excipe

1. *Compōs, impōs, & ōs* offis.

2. Græca per *o* parvum ; ut, *Delōs, Palladōs*.

us corripuntur ; ut, *famulūs, tempūs*.

Excipe

Except,

1. The Nominative cases of Nouns that increas long ; as, *Viriūs, fa.ūs.*

2. The Genitive cases singular, the Nominatives, the Vocatives and Accusatives plural of the fourth Declension ; as, *huius manūs, hæ manūs, hæ manūs, ô manūs.*

3. Monosyllables in *us* ; as, *pūs, crūs.*

4. Words which are writ in Greek with *us* ; as, *Panthūs, Clīūs.*

And the name *Jesūs* to bee revered of all good men.

u are long ; as, *Manū, genū.*

y and *ys* are short ; as, *Moly, Tiphy's.*

The last syllable in every Vers is common ; i.e. it may bee either long or short.



Excipe,

1. Nominativos acutè crescentium ; ut, *Vir-
tūs, salūs.*

2. Genitivos singulares, Nominativos, Vo-
cativos, & Accusativos plurales Quàrtæ De-
clinationis ; ut, *hujus manūs, hæ manūs, has
manūs, ô manūs.*

3. Monosyllaba in *us* ; ut, *pūs, crūs.*

4. Quæ à Græcis scribuntur per *us* ; ut,
Panthus, Clius.

Atque piis cunctis venerandum nomen Iēsūs.

producuntur ; ut, *Manū, genū.*

& *ys* corripuntur ; ut, *Moly, Tiphy's.*

Ultima cujusque versūs syllaba habetur
communis.



Appendix

Appendix Grammatices.

Appendix
Gramma-
tices,

agit

De Ordine

H Actenus de vocum Elementis, Accidentibus, Constru-
ctione & Pronuntiatione, quæ quidem, quatuor, quas
jam diximus, *Partes Grammaticæ*, tanquam propriæ
& partialis singularum *subjecta*, constituent, & ipsam
orationem juxta *Regulas Grammaticæ* componen-
dam, (tanquam *subjectum* hujus *Artis*, ut *Logici* dicunt, *adequa-
tum, reale & principale*) conspiciunt.

Nunc verò de *Ordine vocum* pauca subjiciemus. Nam & hoc
etiam ad finem *Grammaticæ* aliquo modo conducit, ut quo or-
dine voces sint collocandæ, ad orationem meliùs eloquendam, aut
scribendam intelligat.

Cap. I.

De Ordine vocum Grammatico.

Dictionum
sive vocum,

O Rdo dictionum est earundem inter se collocatio,
itâ ut alia necessariò præcedat, alia sequatur.

Est autem Ordo tri- plex,	{	1. Gramma- ticus,	{	quem obser- vant	{	Gramma- tici	{	in Oratione componenda.
		2. Oratorius,				Oratores		
		3. Poëticus,				Poëta		

1. Gramma-
tico,

1. *Ordo Grammaticus* sive *naturalis* est quando vo-
ces in oratione juxta naturam suam collocantur,
nullo observato sonorum numero.

Atque hic ordo è sermone vernaculo præcipuè
cognoscitur.

Secundùm hunc ordinem composita oratio *Trans-
latio* dicitur.

In *Translatione* verò sic collocentur voces.

1. Vocativus, vocandi particulæ, & quæ ab illis
pendent.

2. Nominativus, & quæ ab eo pendent.

3. Verbum

3. Verbum principale, & quæ ab eo pendent, viz.
1. Infinitum. 2. Casus Verbi, & quæ ab illis pendent.

Hic ramen observandum,

1. Adverbium Verbo subiungitur.

2. Subiunctivum & Adiectivum, conjungi debent.

Item Præpositio & suus casus.

3. Interrogativa, Relativa, Indefinita, & Partitiva,
Adverbia quædam, & Coniunctiones præcedunt ali-
as voces.

4. Impersonale quandoque incipit orationem.

5. Accusativus ante verbum Impersonale exponi
debet per quod vel ut.

6. Si quid defuerit suppleri debet.

Exemplum Ordinis Grammatici.

Scipio & Læli, artes exercitationesque virtutum
sunt omnino arma aptissima senectutis; quæ cultæ
afferunt fructus mirificos in ætate omni, cum vixeris
multum diuque, non solum quia deserunt nunquam,
ne quidem in tempore extremo ætatis, quanquam id
est maximum; verum etiam quia conscientia vite æst
bene, recordatioque benefactorum multorum est jucun-
dissima.

Cap. 2. De Ordine vocum Oratorio.

Ordo Oratorum est quando voces in oratione juxta
Artem Oratoriam collocantur, observatis qui-
dem certis, sed omnino dissimilibus sonorum numeris.

Juxta hunc ordinem compositæ voces *Prosa* sive
solutam Orationem (quam & *ῥησις* *ῥησις* Orationem
dicimus) constituunt.

In oratione componendâ,

1. Obliquus in principio, Nominativus in mediâ,
& Verbum in fine collocetur.

2. Adiectivum præcedere, Substantivum verò se-
qui debet.

3. Inter

3. Inter Adjectivum & Substantivum aliæ voces interseruntur.

4. Adverbia, Præpositionesque cum suo casu venustius ante Verbum vel Participium suum collocantur.

5. In prosâ versum fugito : citare tamen potes.

6. Principium vel exitum carminis nec principium nec exitum prosæ facito.

7. Principii cura sit major, medii penè nulla, clausulæ verò maxima.

8. In fine & principio periodi commendantur dictiones polysyllabæ, sed clausula varianda est maximè.

9. Artificium numeri nunquam longius senis à fine syllabis observetur.

10. Ex longis omnibus clausula rarior est, rarissima ex omnibus brevibus, at ex temperatione longarum & brevium frequentior.

11. Vocalium in diversis vocibus concursus sit quàm rarissimus.

12. In sublimi stylo adhibendæ sunt longæ syllabæ; in humili verò breves.

Exemplum Ordinis Oratorii.

Apertissima omnino sunt, Scipio & Læli, arma senectutis artes exercitationesque virtutum; quæ in omni ætate cultæ, cum multum diùque vixeris, mirificos afferunt fructus; non solum quia nunquam deserunt, nè in extremo quidem tempore ætatis, quamquam id maximum est; verum etiam quia conscientia bene-actæ vitæ, multorumque bene-factorum recordatio, jucundissima est.

N. B. Neque tamen hæc præcepta sunt ita mordicus tenenda, quin ut puer ex doctissimorum observatione potiora iis apprehendat & in componenda Oratione proprias aures & pulmones consulat.

Itaque

Itaque sex septemve periodos à se compositas semel atque iterum recitet; sic enim experietur orationem suam numerosam esse, vel hiantem & asperam deprehendat.

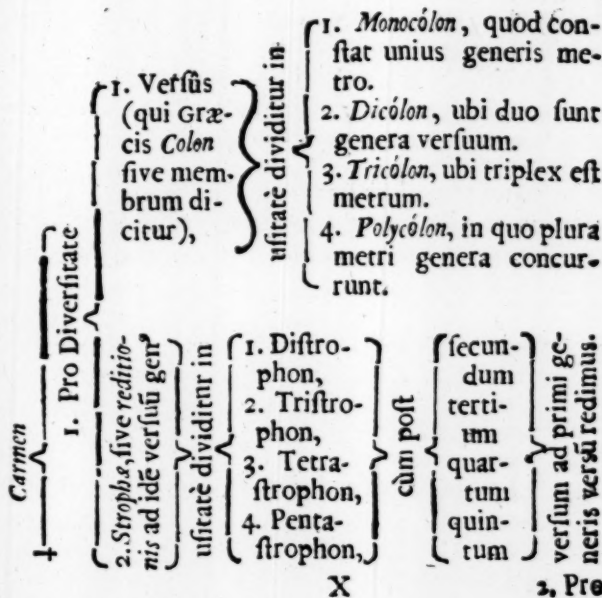
Cap. 3.

De Ordine vocum Poëtico.

Ordo Poëticus est quando voces in oratione juxta 3. Poëtico. Artem Poëticam collocantur, observatis quidem & certis & similibus sonorum numeris.

Juxta hunc ordinem constricta Oratio *Carmen* five *Poëma* dicitur.

Juxta quem
Carmen
constituitur,



2. Pro Ratione	Numeri Versuum,	usitate dicitur	Hemistichon,	quod continet	dimidium versûs.
			Distichon,		duos versûs.
			Tetrastichon,		quatuor versûs.
			Hexastichon,		sex versûs.
			Ereostichon,		annorum numerû.
			Hemeroastichon,		dierum numerû.
			Acrostichis,		cujus initiales, finales, aut mediæ literæ collectæ certum sensum præbent.
Materiæ			Comœdia, Tragœdia, Bucolica, Elegia, Ode, Hymnus, Georgica, Satira, Epigramma, Epitaphium, Epithalamium, Genethliacum, &c.		

In quo dignoscendi sunt.

In *Carmine* verò ritè constituendo summa cura adhibenda est ad dignoscendos pedes, & diversa versuum genera. Ex pedibus enim conjunctis fiunt Versus, & ex Versibus Carmen.

Cap. 4.

De Pedè, & ejus generibus.

1. Pes,

PES est duarum syllabarum pluriùmqve constitutio, ex certâ temporum sive quantitatum observatione.

Pes

Pes est	1. Simplex, atque is aur	1. Dissyllabus, qui constat ex duabus syllabis. 2. Trissyllabus, qui constat ex tribus syllabis.	1. Simplicis.
Dissyllabi pedes sunt quatuor	Spondus, Pyrrhichius, Trochæus, Iambus,	qui constat ex	2. Compositus, qui constat ex simplicibus pedibus conjunctis.
			duabus longis. a
			duabus brevibus. b
			priore longâ, & posteriore brevi. c
Trissyllabi sunt octo	Molossus, Tribrachius, Dactylus, Anapestus, Bacchius, Antibacchius, Amphimacer, Amphibrachius,	qui constat ex	priore brevi, & posteriore longâ. d
			tribus longis. e
			tribus brevibus. f
			primâ brevi, reliquis duabus brevibus. g
			primis duabus brevibus, postremâ longâ. h
			primâ brevi, reliquis duabus longis. i
			primis duabus longis, postremâ brevi. k
			primâ longâ, mediâ brevi, ultimâ longâ. l
ut, a Virius. b Dēus. c annus. d amans.			primâ brevi, mediâ longa, ultimâ brevi. m

ut, e Magnâtes. f Dōminus. g Scribēre. h Pīerās. i Hōnēstās. k Audīre. l Chāritās. m Vēnīre.

Pedes compositi, potius pedum conjunctiones, quàm Pedes à quibusdam vocantur, atque ab aliis omittuntur, tanquam non multum ad institutum Grammatici pertineant. Hos tamen tetrasyllabos nihilominus adjecimus, propter aliquem eorum usum in Carminibus illis quæ ab his nomen acceperunt, viz. Choriambicum, Ionicum, &c.

Pedes igitur composui præcipui sunt 18.	Proceleusmaticus,	qui constat ex	duobus Pyrrhichiis.	a
	Dispondeus,		duobus Spondeis.	b
	Choriambus,		trochæo & Iambo.	c
	Aniſpaſtus,		Iambo & Trochæo.	d
	Diambus,		duobus Iambis.	e
	Dichoriambus,		duobus Trochæis.	f
	Ionicus à maiore,		Spondeo & Pyrrhichio	g
	Ionicus à minore,		Pyrrhichio & Spondeo.	h
	Epitritus primus,		Iambo & Spondeo.	i
	Epitritus secundus,		Trochæo & Spondeo.	k
	Epitritus tertius,		Spondeo & Iambo.	l
	Epitritus quartus,		Spondeo & Trochæo.	m
	Pæon primus,		Trochæo & Pyrrhichio.	n
	Pæon secundus,		Iambo & Pyrrhichio.	o
	Pæon tertius,		Pyrrhichio & Trochæo.	p
	Pæon quartus,		Pyrrhichio & Iambo.	q

ut, a *Hominibus.* b *Concludentes.* c *Histories.*
d *Alexander.* e *Servitus.* f *Comprobare.* g *Cantabimus.*
h *Venerantes.* i *Salutantes.* k *Concitant.* l *Communi-*
cant. m *Incantare.* n *conficere.* o *Resolvere.* p *So-*
ciare. q *Celestas.*

Ex pedibus autem, *Iambus*, & *Trocheus*, *Spondeus*
& *Dactylus*, *Anapaſtus*, & *Tribrachus* uſitatiffimi ſunt.

Cap. 5.

De Verſuum variis generibus.

1. Verſus,

Verſus eſt oratio iuſto atque legitimo pedum nu-
mero conſtricta.

& eorum
gen

2. Scanſo.

Verſum compoſituro diſcendum eſt, pedibus ipſum
ritè metiri, (ſive in ſuos pedes diſtinguere) quam
Scanſionem ſive Dimenſionem vocant; ut,

Pàrte nec | invide | o ſine | me liber | ibis in | urbem.

Hæi mihi | quod domi | nō | nōn licet | ire in | o.

Scanfioni accidunt hæc Figura; viz.

Cui acci-
dunt,
1. Cæsura.

1. Cæsura, quum ita secatur vox ut posterior ejus pars initium sit pedis sequentis; ut,

Sic canibūs catūlōs simīlēs sic matrībūs hēdōs.

Species ejus sunt quatuor,

1. Triemimeris, ,	} cum post	{ primum secundum tertium quartum	} pedem relin- quitur syl- laba; ut,
2. Penthemimeris,			
3. Hephthemimeris			
4. Eneemimeris,			

1 2 3 4
Illē lā|tūs nū|ē|ūm mōl|i fūl|tūs hū|cīn|hō.

Ob Cæsuram, syllaba brevis in fine dictionis aliquando extenditur

post	{ 1 ^{um} 2 ^{um} 3 ^{um} 4 ^{um}	} pedem, ut	Pē|tōrī|būs inhī|āns spī|rāntī| cōn|sū|it | ēxtī|,
			Omniā | vīncit ā|mōr | nōs cē|dāmūs ā|mōrī|.
			Ostēntāns ār|tē m pāri | tēr ār|cūmqūē sō|nāntēm.
			Illē lā|tūs nū|ē|ūm mōl|i fūl|tūs hū|cīn|hō.

N. B. Invenustus est versus qui Cæsura caret; ut,

Urbēm | fōrtēm | nūpēr | cēpī | fōrtiōr | hōstīs.

2. Synalæpha est elisio quædam vocalis ante alteram in diversis dictionibus; ut,

2. Synalæ-
pha.

Sērā nīmīs vīt' est | crāsīnā | viv' hōdī|ē.

At heu, ô, & io nunquam intercipiuntur; ut,

At hīs iō Arē|thū|ā, iō Arē|thū|ā vō|cāt.

Interdum etiam Synalæpha negligitur; ut,

Et sūc|cūs pēcō|rī et | lūc sūb|ducitūr | āgnīs.

Tēr sūnt cōnā|tī īm|pōnērē | Pēnō | Ossām.

Aliquando fit in fine versus; seu, potius in principio sequentis; ut,

Omniā | Mērcūrī ō simī|līs vō|cēmquē cō|dōrēm|quē

Et crīnēs flātōs.

3. Ethlipsis est quoties m cum suâ vocali perimitur, proximâ dictione à vocali exorlâ; ut,

3. Ethlipsis.

Mōnstr' | bōr|rēnd' | īn|fōrm' | īngēns cū | lūmēn ā|dēmī' est.

Olim elidebatur S; ut,

Arbōrī|būs vē|tērēs dē|cīdērē | fāl|cībūs | rāmōs.

Synæresis 4. *Synæresis* est duarum syllabarum in unam contraction; ut,

*Sēm tēn|tō fūē|rīnt * ālvāriā | vīmīnē | tēxtā.*

* *pro alvearia.*

Fit autem frequentius in his dictionibus, *Dii, Diis, iidem, iisdem, deinde, deinceps, semianimis, semibomo, seminusus, deest, deero, deerrit, antecubulo, anteit, cui, & Genitivis nominum in eus; ut, Uliſſeus, Uliſſei, cum multis aliis.*

Dizæresis 5. *Dizæresis*, est ubi ex unâ syllabâ dissectâ fiunt duæ; ut,

Dēvūerūt fūōs ēvōlūiſſē fūōs. pro evoluisse.

Systole 6. *Systole* est quæ longam syllabam corripit; ut,

Mārī lōgā dēcēm mē|ērūt fūſtidiā mē|ſēs.

Diaſtole 7. *Diaſtole* est quæ brevem syllabam producit; ut,

In quēm rēcīdūmūs quēcquīd mōrtālē crēmur.

Atque hæc si reperitur in ultima dictionis syllabâ *Cæsura* frequentius dicitur; ut,

Omnīā | vīcīt ā|mōr ēr | nōs cē|dāmūs ā|mōrī.

Versuum genera sunt { 1. *Depositionis,*
&
2. *Metri.*

Depositionis 1. *Depositio* est terminatio scansionis, ex quâ versûs abundantiam, plenitudinem, aut defectum cognoscimus.

Secundum hanc versûs dicitur,

1. *Acatalecticus*, sive *perfectus*, cui nihil aut superest aut deest; ut,

Mūſe | Jovīs | sūn|ſi ſiā.

2. *Catalectic*, sive *semimutilus*, cui in fine deest syllaba; ut,

Mūſe | Jovīm | cānō|ſiānt. —

3. *Brachycatalectic*, sive *mutilus*, cui in fine pes deest; ut,

Mūſe | Jovīs | gnata. | - -

4. *Hypercatalecticus*, sive *exuberans*, in quo una, aut duæ syllabæ superflunt, ut;

Mūsæ | jōrō | rēs sūnt Mīnēr (vs.)

Mūsæ | jōrō | rēs Pālādīs (lugent.)

2. *Metrum* est legitimus pedum numerus, qui mensuratur.

Quoad *Metrum* versus dicitur.

Secundū
quod est,

1. <i>Dimeter</i> ,	duobus, estque	1. <i>Adonius</i> , sive <i>Adonicus</i> , qui constat ex dactylo & spondæo; ut, <i>Gaudia | pelle.</i> <i>Pellē | mōrēm.</i>	1. <i>Adonicus</i> .
2. <i>Trimeter</i> ,	tribus, estque	2. <i>Archilochius dactylicus</i> , qui constat ex duobus dactylis, & syllabā; ut, <i>Dīcūtē | jūstīlām.</i> 3. <i>Alcmanius</i> , qui constat ex tribus dactylis & syllabā; ut, <i>Dīcūtē | jūstīlām mōnīlām.</i>	2. <i>Archilochius dactylicus</i> .
qui constat pedibus		4. <i>Glyconicus</i> , qui constat è spondæo & duobus dactylis; ut, <i>Tandēm | rēgiā | nōbīlis.</i>	4. <i>Glyconicus</i> .
3. <i>Tetrameter</i> ,	quatuor, estque	5. <i>Pherecratius</i> , qui constat è spondæo, dactylo & spondæo; ut, <i>Nīgrīs | aquērā | vērīs.</i> Hic versus aliquando pro priori spondæo habet trochæum; ut, <i>Prōdē | s nōvā | nūptā.</i> Aliquando Anapæstum; ut, <i>Sīmīlī | jūrgit āb | ōrrū.</i>	5. <i>Pherecratius</i> .
		6. <i>Æsclepiadæus</i> , qui constat ex spondæo, dactylo, & syllabā longā, & duobus deinde dactylis; ut, <i>Macē | nās ātā | tīs | edītē | rēgībūs.</i>	6. <i>Æsclepiadæus</i> .
		7. <i>Sapphicus</i> , qui constat ex trochæo, spondæo, & duobus demum trochæis, ut, <i>Jām sātīs tēr'rīs nūcīs | itquē | dīrā.</i>	7. <i>Sapphicus</i> .

3. Phaleu-
cius,9. Elegia-
cus.10. Heroi-
cus.11. Iambi-
cus.

4. Pentameter,

5. Hexameter,

qui constat pedibus

quinque, estque

sex, estque

Post tres versus Sapphicos, Adoni-
cus addi solet.

8. *Phaleucius*, qui constat ex Spondeo,
dactylo, & tribus tandem trochæis ;
ut,

Quō pō diffūgi | as pā | vens Mā | bili.

Nostrum | non poteris la | tere | nasum.

9. *Elegiacus*, qui constat dactylo vel
spondeo, cum syllabâ longâ ; & duo-
bus tandem omnino dactylis, cum
syllabâ item longâ ; ut, (amor.

Rēs est | sōllici | tī | plēnā tī | mōris

Hēimibī | quōd dōmī | nō | nōn | licet | irē tūō

10. *Heroicus*, qui constat quatuor pri-
mis locis è spondeo vel dactylo, quin-
to dactylo, & sexto spondeo ; ut,

Tyrē | tū pātū | la rēcū | bāns fūb | tēgmī-

(nē fāgī

Sylvē | strēm tēnū | i Mū | sīm mē | tārīs

(ā | vēnī.

Reperitur etiam spondeus aliquando
in quinto loco ; ut,

Chārā Dē | ūm sōbō | lēs mī | gnī Jōvīs |

(incē | mētūm.

Est & Heroicus Tetrameter qui con-
stat ex quatuor postremis Hexame-
tri pedibus ; ut,

Aūt Ephē | ūm bīmā | rīs vē Cō | rīnchī.

11. *Iambicus*, qui constat è pedibus
Iambicis ; ut,

Sūis | ēt ip | sā Rō | mā vī | sībūs | rūt.

Est

Est autem hic versus

1. *Purus*, sive *Legitimus*, qui constat è solis Iambis ; ut,
Phāsē | lūs | i | lē, quē | vīdē | tīs hōs-
(pūrēs.
2. *Impurus*, qui aliquot in locis recipit pedem diversum Iambo ; ut,
fūs ēst | in ar | mīs, op | pūmīt | lēgēs
(īmōr.
3. *Scæzon*, sive *Choliambus*, i. e. claudicans Iambus, qui in sexto loco Spondæum, & in quinto Iambum retinet ; ut,
Nēc | jēn | tē | lā | brā | prō | lūi | Cābā | līnō.

N. B. Recipit Iambicus interdum (ob majorem gravitatem exprimendam) in locis imparibus (i. e. primo, tertio, & quinto) pro Iambo tribrachum, spondæum, dactylum, anapæstum ; atque in locis paribus (i. e. secundo & quarto) quandoque tribrachum, spondæum rariùs, ultimum verò locum rarò mutat ; & saltem binos pedes Iambos perpetuò sibi servat.

Hic versus etiam diducitur in duo genera usitiora

1. *Dimetrum*, sive *tetrametrum*, qui constat ex quatuor pedibus quémque metimur

Per dipodiam, i. e. geminā pedem more Græco ; ut,
O carminum | dulces notæ.
Per monopodiam, i. e. singulos pedes more Latino ; ut,
O cārmīnām | dūlcēs | nōtæ.

6. Hepta-

11. Archilo-
chius He-
ptameter.

6. Heptameter,

qui constat pedibus

icpic, éltque

12. Archilochius Heptameter, qui constat quatuor primis pedibus Heroicis & tribus tandem trochæis; ut,
Sôlvit̃r | âcr̃s hy lēms grā | tā vīcē | vē-
(rīs | ēt Fāvōnī.

2. Trimeterum five senarium, qui senis constat pedibus, quémque metimur,

Per dipodiam; ut,
Qūi nōs | dāmnañt | sūnt hīstrī-
(ō nēs māmīmī.
Vel
Per monopodiam; ut,
Qūi nōs | dāmnañt | sūnt hī | strī-
(ō nēs māmīmī.

Plura qui querit, Autores qui de Arte Poetica su-
sius scripserunt, otiosior consulat.

Et discas oportet, & quod didicisti agendo confirmes.
Sen. Epist.

Doctissimorum enim virorum usus pluris faciendus, quàm
omnes omnium Grammaticorum Canones. Daresius.

Artifices, solus, qui facit, usus erit. Ovid



A Synopsis or short view of the Latine GRAMMAR.

I. <i>Orthographie</i> , which teacheth how to spell words, <i>Lib. I.</i> It treateth —	1. Of Letters, <i>Chap. 1.</i> 2. Of Syllables, <i>Chap. 2.</i> 3. Of Right Utterance, <i>Chap. 3.</i> 4. Of Points in Sentences, <i>Chap. 4.</i>
II. <i>Eymologie</i> , which treateth of the <i>Eight parts of Speech</i> , & their Accidents, <i>Li. II.</i>	1. In general, <i>Chap. 1.</i> 1. Case, <i>Chap. 3.</i> 2. Gender, <i>Chap. 4.</i> the Rules to know which are — 1. General, { 1. Of Substantives, { 1. Proper, <i>Chap. 5.</i> 2. Common, <i>Chap. 6.</i> 2. Of Adjectives, <i>Chap. 10.</i> not increasing, <i>Ch. 7.</i> increasing, { Long, <i>Ch. 8.</i> Short, <i>Ch. 9.</i> 2. Special, Of Nouns 3. Declension { the first, <i>Chap. 11.</i> the second, <i>Chap. 12.</i> the third, <i>Chap. 13.</i> the fourth, <i>Chap. 14.</i> the fifth, <i>Chap. 15.</i> To which belong the manner of declining Adjectives, <i>Chap. 16.</i> 4. Comparison, <i>Chap. 17.</i> To these belong the Rules of Heteroclits, which are { Variant, <i>Chap. 18.</i> Deficient in — { Case, <i>Chap. 19.</i> Number, <i>Chap. 20.</i> Redundant, <i>Chap. 21.</i> 2. its Kinds, <i>Chap. 22.</i> 2. Of a Pronoun, <i>Chap. 23.</i>
A	3. Of a Verb, and its { Accidents, <i>Chap. 24.</i> Form of the Conjugation { first, <i>Chap. 25.</i> second, <i>Chap. 26.</i> third, <i>Chap. 27.</i> fourth, <i>Chap. 28.</i> Hitherto,

qui
em;

tri-
mi.

tri-
mi.

on-
icis

uē-
ōnī.

fu-

The Latine
Grammar
teacheth the
Art or Skill
to write or
speak Latine
right: It is
divided into
four parts:

nes.

am

.

A

A short view of the Latine GRAMMAR.

A

B

Hitherto belong 1. The Rules to know	1. The Preterperfect Tenses 2. The Supines	Of Verbs in O	1. Regular { Simple, <i>chap.</i> 29. Compound, c. 30. Simple, <i>chap.</i> 31. Compound, and the Preterperfect Tense of Verbs in <i>or, e, h</i> . 32. 2. Irregular, <i>Chap.</i> 33. 3. Defective, <i>Chap.</i> 34.
2. The forming of	Irregular Verbs, <i>Ch.</i> 35. the Verb <i>Sum</i> , <i>Ch.</i> 36.		
3. Impersonals and Derivatives, <i>Chap.</i> 37.			
4. Of a Participle, <i>Chap.</i> 38.			
5. Of an Adverb, <i>Chap.</i> 39.			
6. Of a Conjunction, <i>Chap.</i> 40.			
7. Of a Preposition, <i>Chap.</i> 41.			
8. Of an Interjection, <i>Chap.</i> 42.			

1. Concordance, <i>Ch.</i> 1. containing the Rule	the	first second third	Concord. §. 1. §. 2. §. 3. Case of the Relative, §. 4. Question and Answer, §. 5.
---	-----	--------------------------	---

1. Of Nouns,	1. Substantives, <i>Chap.</i> 2 §. 6. 2. Adjectives, <i>Ch.</i> 3 §. 7. with a	Ge. Da. Ac. Ab.	§. 7. §. 8. §. 9. §. 10.
--------------	---	--------------------------	-----------------------------------

* The Ablative Case absolute, §. 11.	2. Of Pronouns, <i>Chap.</i> 4.	3. Of Verbs, <i>Chap.</i> 5. with a { Norm. §. 12. Gen. §. 13. Dat. §. 14. Acc. §. 15. Abl. §. 16.	
* Passives, §. 17.			

2. Of Government	Verbs having divers Constructions. §. 18. the Infinitive Mood. §. 19. the Gerunds. §. 20. <i>Di.</i> §. 21. Supines. §. 24. <i>Ds.</i> §. 23. Time. §. 26. <i>Dum</i> §. 23. Space. §. 27. Place. §. 28. Impersonals. §. 29. 4. Of
------------------	--

III. *Synaxis*, which teacheth the due joyning words together, *Lib. III.* by way of

B

A short view of the Latine GRAMMAR.

A

B

4. Of Participles. *Chap. 6. §. 30.*

5. Of Adverbs, $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Cases} \\ \text{Chap. 7. with Moods.} \end{array} \right\} \S. 31.$

6. Of Conjunctions, $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Couple Words.} \\ \text{Chap. 8. which Govern Moods.} \end{array} \right\} \S. 32.$

7. Of Prepositions. *Chap. 9. §. 33.*

8. Of Interjections. *Chap. 10. §. 34.*

To $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Etymologie} \\ \text{Syntaxis} \end{array} \right\}$ belong Figures $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Of a Word. Chap. 11. §. 35.} \\ \text{Of Constructio. Ch. 12. §. 36.} \end{array} \right.$

IV. *Prosodie*, which teacheth the right Pronuntiatio of Words, *Lib. IV.* by observing their $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Spirits and Tones. Chap. 1.} \\ \text{Quantitie of Syllables} \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{First \& Middle, Chap. 2.} \\ \text{Last. Chap. 3.} \end{array} \right. \end{array} \right.$

To Grammar (after a manner) pertaineth that which is said concerning the *Order of Words*, which is $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} 1. Grammatical, Cap. 1. \\ 2. Rhetorical, Cap. 2. \\ 3. Poetical, Cap. 3. touching which wee consider the sorts of \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Feet. Cap. 4.} \\ \text{Verses, Cap. 5.} \end{array} \right. \end{array} \right.$





Ch

C

Li

1

2

3

4

Li

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

1

2

A TABLE of the Heads of the
Latine-Grammar.

Chap.	Pag.	Chap.	Pag.
O F Grammar, and its Parts. 2.		16 Of the Declining of Adjec- tives. 64.	
LIB. I. Of Orthographie. 2.		17 Of Comparison. 68.	
1 Of Letters. 4.		18 Of varying Heteroclitis. 74.	
2 Of Syllables. 8.		19 Of Heteroc. that want case. 78.	
3 Of Right Utterance. 12.		20 Of Heteroclitis that want Number. 80.	
4 Of Points in Sentences. 14.		21 Of Redundant Heteroclitis. 86.	
LIB. II. Of Etymologie. 16.		22 Of the Kindes of Nouns. 90.	
1 Of the eight Parts of Speech, and their general Accidents. 16.		23 Of a Pronoun. 94.	
2 Of a Noun, and its proper Ac- cidents. 20.		24 Of a Verb, and its Accidents. 106.	
3 Of Case. } 22.		25 Of the form of the first Con- jugation. 112.	
4 Of Gender. }		26 Of the form of the second Con- jugation. 116.	
5 Of the general Rules of Pro- per Names. 26.		27 Of the form of the third Con- jugation. 120.	
6 Of the general Rules of Com- mon Names. 28.		28 Of the form of the fourth Con- jugation. 124.	
7 Of the first Special Rule. 30.		29 Of the Preterperfect tenses of Verbs Simple. 128.	
8 Of the second Special Rule. 34.		30 Of the Preterperfect tenses of Compound Verbs. 136.	
9 Of the third Special Rule. 38.		31 Of the Supines of Simple Verbs. 142.	
10 Of the Genders of Adjectives 42.		32 Of the Supines of Compound Verbs, and of the Preterperfect tens	
11 Of the first Declension. 44.			
12 Of the second Declension. 50.			
13 Of the third Declension. 52.			
14 Of the fourth Declension. 60.			
15 Of the fifth Declension. 62.			

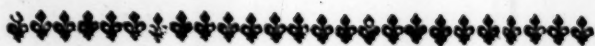
A Table of the Heads, &c.

	Chap.	pag.
Tense of Verbs in or.	145.	
33 Of certain Verbs Irregular.	148	
34 Of Verbs that want certain Moods and Tenses.	154.	
35 Of forming verbs Irregular.	160.	
36 Of forming the Verb Sum.	170	
37 Of Verbs Impersonals and Derivatives.	172.	
38 Of a Participle.	176.	
39 Of an Adverb.	182.	
40 Of a Conjunction.	183.	
41 Of a Preposition.	192.	
42 Of an Interjection.	196.	
LIB. III. Of Syntax.	198.	
1. Of Concordance.	198.	
2. 3. Of the Government of Nouns.	214.	
4. Pronouns.	124.	
5. Verbs.	125.	
6. Participles.	158.	
7. Adverbs.	260.	
8. Conjunctions.	264.	
9. Prepositions.	268.	
10. Interjections.	272.	
11 Of the Figures of a Word.	274.	
12 Of the Figures of Construction.	276.	
LIB. IV. Of Prosodie.	282.	
1 Of Spirits, Tones, or Accents.	282.	
2 Of the Quantitie of the first and middle Syllables.	288.	
3 Of the Quantitie of the last Syllables.	301.	
Appendix Grammatices.	310.	
1 } De Ordine { Grammatico	310.	
2 } Vocum { Oratorio.	311.	
3 } Poëtico.	313.	
4 De Pede, & ejus generibus	314.	
5 De Versuum variis generibus.	316.	

8.
4.
i-
6.
2.
15.
2.
irst
8.
last
01.
10.
10.
11.
13.
14.
bus.
16.

Pro

Y Y Pro



*Pro Puerorum in Studiis pio progressu,
Precatio quotidiana.*

Domine Pater, Cœli ac Terræ effector, qui liberaliter tribuis sapientiam omnibus eam à te cum fiducia petentibus: Exorna (quæsumus) ingeniorum nostrorum bonitatem, quam cum cæteris naturæ viribus nobis infudisti, lumine divinæ gratiæ tuæ; ut non modò quæ ad cognoscendum te & Salvatorem nostrum Dominum Jesum valeant, intelligamus; sed etiam totâ mente, & voluntate persequamur, & indies benignitate tuâ, tum doctrinâ, tum pietate proficiamus; ut qui efficis omnia in omnibus, in nobis resplendere dona tua facias, ad gloriam sempiternam Majestatis tuæ. *Amen.*

Pater noster, qui es in cœlis, Sanctificetur Nomen tuum: Adveniat regnum tuum. Fiat Voluntas tua, sicut in cœlo, sic & in terra. Panem nostrum quotidianum da nobis hodie. Et dimitte nobis debita nostra, sicut & nos dimittimus debitoribus nostris: Et ne nos inducas in tentationem; Sed libera nos à malo. Quia tuum est Regnum, Potentia, & Gloria, in secula seculorum. *Amen.*



A P R A Y E R to bee used every day, for
Children's good proceeding at their
B O O K S.

O Almighty Lord and merciful Father, maker of Hea-
ven and Earth, which of thy free liberallitie givest wile-
dom abundantly to all that with faith and full assurance ask
it of thee: Beautifie by the light of thy heavenly grace
the towardness of our wits, the which with all powers
of nature thou hast powred into us; that wee may not one-
ly understand those things which may effectually bring us
to the knowledg of thee and the Lord Jesus our Saviour,
but also with our whole heart and will constantly follow
the same, and receiue daily increas through thy bountifull
goodness towards us, as well in good life as learning; so
that thou which workest all things in all creatures, maist
make thy gracious benefits shine in us, to the endless glory
and honour of thine immortal Majestie. Amen.

Our Father which art in heaven, Hallowed be thy
Name; Thy Kingdom com, Thy will be don in
Earth as it is in Heaven. Give us this day our daily
bread: And forgive us our trespasses, as wee forgive them
that trespass against us; And lead us not into temptation:
But deliver us from evil, For thine is the Kingdom, the
Power, and the Glorie, for ever and ever, Amen.

FINIS.

BESIDES this present Grammar, there is newly reprinted a book of this Autor, entituled *Terminationes, & Exempla Declinationum & Conjugationum*, intended for the first Form for young Learners.

And *Propria quæ Maribus, Quæ Genus*, and *As in Præsentis*, englished and explained; for the use of young Grammarians; intended for the second Form.

Also *Terentii Comædiæ sex à R. Wintertono* recognite.

Likewise there is lately reprinted for the help of such as are studious in the Greek Tongue, *Possellii Apophthegmata Græco-Latina*.

All which several School-Books are to be sold by *John Saywell*, at his Shop, at the Sign of the Grey-hound in little Britain, without *Aldersgate, LONDON*.

MUSEVM
BRITAN

M^r Hooles Grammar, in
{ Latine,
&
English.

M^r Hooles Grammar

129

is
or,
na-
rft
nd
for
ded
ono
the
eek
na.
to
the
in,



make me his age

Thom

157

Paras erat difformi
quod p[ro]p[ri]o p[ro]p[ri]o
ante in[ter]m[en]t[um]

debat[ur] a deo

170. 5/18/09 m

6/19/09 m

7/1/09 m

7/15/09 m

7/22/09 m

7/29/09 m

8/5/09 m

8/12/09 m

8/19/09 m

8/26/09 m

9/2/09 m

9/9/09 m

9/16/09 m

9/23/09 m

Beatus est

et non erubescit

W

Ludo to play
then you
yes more I will read more

